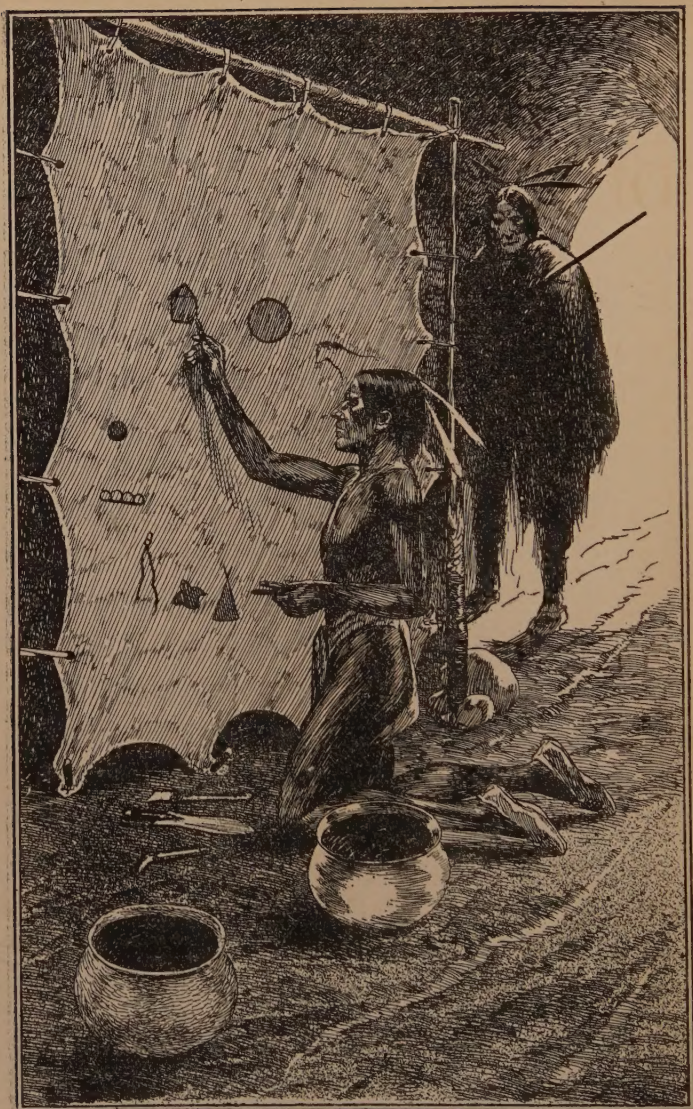


Dorothy Ann Geyer,
Room 33 North Hall,
State Normal School
Slippery Rock,
Pa.



PICTURE WRITING
One of the earliest forms of history.

STORY OF OUR CIVILIZATION

BY

H. A. GUERBER

AUTHOR OF "MYTHS OF GREECE AND ROME,"
"STORY OF THE GREEKS," "LEGENDS
OF SWITZERLAND," ETC.



NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

COPYRIGHT, 1926

BY

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

**PRINTED IN THE
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA**

Dedicated
TO
LOUISE GUERBER,
MY BELOVED NIECE

PREFACE

What does our American life owe to foreign nations in the past? Children from eleven to thirteen years of age will achieve, in searching out the answer to this question, a broadened outlook, stimulating in itself and in its preparation for future courses in the social sciences. This text for the European Background course, in giving an elementary idea of the march of human progress, shows how the torch of civilization has been handed on from generation to generation, and from nation to nation.

Because children of this age are most keenly interested in stirring events and in people, the story of our civilization, as told here, concerns itself chiefly with action and with the personalities of leaders. By weaving an approximately continuous narrative of human endeavor and achievement, instead of giving disconnected blocks of various national histories, it is hoped that this text will satisfy youth's innate craving for a story "beginning at the beginning" and running on as smoothly and consecutively as possible to a logical conclusion.

In the paragraphs headed "Our Debt" will be found brief summaries by way of review. In connection with these, pupils may be expected to find examples of our debt in their daily life, surroundings, and books. Thus they will gain a general idea of man's development, become aware of the background of their national civilization, and learn to give "honor to whom honor is due."

H. A. G.

MARCH, 1926

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTION	3

PRIMITIVE MAN

II. THE WORLD IN THE BEGINNING	6
III. THE DISCOVERY OF FIRE	11
IV. FURTHER INVENTIONS OF PRIMITIVE MAN . .	15
V. FIRST RECORDS	19

EARLY CIVILIZATION

VI. WONDER WORKERS IN CLAY	24
VII. THE GIFT OF THE NILE	29
VIII. HOW TYRIAN PURPLE AND GLASS WERE DIS- COVERED	36
IX. THE GRAVEYARD OF EMPIRES AND NATIONS . .	41
X. CRETE AND ITS MINOTAUR	45
XI. EGYPT'S WONDERS	49
XII. THE ISRAELITES	54
XIII. ISRAEL IN EGYPT	57

SOME MEDITERRANEAN NATIONS

XIV. THE EARLY GREEKS	62
XV. GREEK ATHLETICS	65
XVI. EGYPT'S GLORY	69
XVII. THE TROJAN WAR	72
XVIII. GREEK REPUBLICS AND COLONIES	76
XIX. KING SOLOMON	78
XX. THE FOUNDING OF ROME	80

CHAPTER	PAGE
FOUR CITIES RISE; TWO ARE DESTROYED	
XXI. THE END OF NINEVEH AND BABYLON . . .	83
XXII. A JOURNEY AND THREE WISE MEN . . .	87
XXIII. SOLON'S JOURNEYS	92
XXIV. SOME NOTED KINGS	95
PERSIAN AND SPARTAN WARS	
XXV. GREECE AND THE PERSIANS	97
XXVI. THE AGE OF PERICLES	100
XXVII. THE AGE OF PERICLES (<i>Continued</i>) . . .	105
XXVIII. ALCIBIADES	108
ROME AND MACEDONIA	
XXIX. ROME FROM KINGDOM TO REPUBLIC . . .	113
XXX. THE GAULS	117
XXXI. PHILIP OF MACEDON	122
XXXII. STORY OF ALEXANDER	123
XXXIII. STORY OF ALEXANDER (<i>Continued</i>) . . .	127
XXXIV. ALEXANDER'S SUCCESSORS	130
PUNIC WARS AND CAESAR	
XXXV. PUNIC WARS	135
XXXVI. NEW ROMAN PROVINCES	139
XXXVII. ROMAN ROADS AND WARS	143
XXXVIII. CAESAR IN GAUL	148
XXXIX. THE DEATH OF CAESAR	153
THE BEGINNING OF CHRISTIANITY	
XL. THE BIRTH OF CHRIST	157
XLI. GREAT CITIES DESTROYED	160
XLII. CHRISTIANITY IN EUROPE	164
XLIII. THE TERRIBLE HUNS	167
XLIV. MOHAMMED	171

CONTENTS

xi

CHAPTER

PAGE

THE MIDDLE AGES

XLV. STORY OF CHARLEMAGNE	174
XLVI. CASTLES	179
XLVII. LIFE IN THE MIDDLE CLASS	183
XLVIII. ENGLAND UNITED	186
XLIX. THE YEAR ONE THOUSAND	189

DISCOVERIES, CONQUESTS, CRUSADES

L. THE NORMAN CONQUEST OF ENGLAND . . .	192
LI. PILGRIMS AND PILGRIMAGES	197
LII. THE FIRST CRUSADE	200
LIII. THE THIRD CRUSADE	203

FREEDOM AND WAR

LIV. SWISS INDEPENDENCE	207
LV. THE CORNER STONE OF ENGLISH LIBERTY . .	210
LVI. THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR	214
LVII. TIMES OF TROUBLE	218

INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES

LVIII. GREAT DISCOVERIES	222
LIX. WANTED: A SEA ROUTE TO THE EAST . . .	227
LX. JOURNEYS AND DISCOVERIES	233
LXI. MORE DISCOVERIES	239
LXII. THE REFORMATION	245
LXIII. EARLY SETTLEMENTS	250
LXIV. ELIZABETHAN ENGLAND	253

THE THIRTEEN COLONIES

LXV. FIRST ENGLISH COLONIES IN AMERICA . . .	258
LXVI. THE PURITANS	263
LXVII. NEW COLONISTS	269
LXVIII. THE LAST COLONY	272

CHAPTER	PAGE
GREAT MEN AND REVOLUTION	
LXIX. WASHINGTON AND FRANKLIN	278
LXX. WHAT LED TO THE REVOLUTION	282
LXXI. THE MINUTE MEN	286
LXXII. DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE	292
LXXIII. TREACHERY IN OUR MIDST	297
THE CONSTITUTION	
LXXIV. THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT	302
LXXV. THE FRENCH REVOLUTION AND WASHINGTON'S PRESIDENCY	307
LXXVI. THE LOUISIANA PURCHASE	314
LXXVII. WINNING OUR PLACE IN THE WORLD	317
LXXVIII. PROGRESS	322
LXXIX. USEFUL INVENTIONS	325
LXXX. THE TIME OF GREAT CHANGES	328
GOLD AND SLAVERY	
LXXXI. CALIFORNIA	333
LXXXII. WHAT HAPPENED IN THE FIFTIES	337
LXXXIII. LINCOLN'S EARLY CAREER	341
LXXXIV. THE CIVIL WAR BEGINS	344
LXXXV. END OF THE CIVIL WAR	348
RECONSTRUCTION AND IMMIGRATION	
LXXXVI. RECONSTRUCTION	352
LXXXVII. OUR CENTENNIAL	355
LXXXVIII. MORE IMPROVEMENTS	358
TWO WARS AND CONCLUSION	
LXXXIX. SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR	362
XC. THE PANAMA CANAL	364
XCI. THE GREAT WAR	368
XCII. SUMMARY	376
INDEX	385

LIST OF MAPS

	PAGE
The Tigris-Euphrates Valley	24
Egypt	31
Palestine	55
Greece and Asia Minor	73
The Roman Empire at Its Greatest Extent	141
Charlemagne's Empire	175
Columbus' First Voyage	232
Routes of Explorers	237
North America in 1713	274
North America in 1763	285
Europe in 1923	375
Summary Map for the Story of Our Civilization .	378-379

STORY OF OUR CIVILIZATION

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

Good and Bad Traits. You are often told that you look like your father or mother, that you act like an uncle or aunt, and that you get your bent for music, drawing, building, housekeeping, or farming from some member of the family with a talent for the same thing. If the likeness is some *good* quality, you proudly say that you owe a great deal to your ancestor. You also try to make that good quality stronger and more noticeable. In a similar way you may be told that you have inherited some bad quality. Then you strive to overcome it.

Clothing. If your clothes could talk, you would learn that cotton thrives in so many lands around our globe that every nation can now use it. The wool in the garments you wear once grew on a sheep's back. Your shoes, belts, and gloves were made of hide, which had to be tanned before it could be used to advantage. Neckties and hair-ribbons could tell about silkworms, hatched in warm countries from eggs as small as pin-heads. After eating fresh mulberry leaves night and day for about four weeks — stopping their meal only to change skins four times — those tiny worms, grown as big as caterpillars, suddenly cease eating, climb up twigs and begin spinning a double thread. In about three days a silkworm wraps itself up into a cocoon

of nearly a thousand yards of fine silk. This cocoon is thrown into hot water to kill the worm and prevent its hatching into a butterfly, three weeks after the spinning ceases. Then the silk, which is of a light buff, pale green, or bright yellow color, is wound off the cocoons, spun, dyed, and finally woven into materials.

Food and Surroundings. On the breakfast table there is coffee from Arabia, Java, or Jamaica; sugar from Cuba, Porto Rico, or New Orleans; milk from a Jersey or Holstein cow; and other things from various places. In your houses are articles which have come from many directions, and which may have belonged to other people before they were yours. If you live in the country, you learn to care for plants and animals, so that they may do their best for you. If your home is in the city, you learn how to manufacture and sell things, and how to ship them to all parts of the world. Good food, pure air, cleanliness, sunshine, and exercise all help to make you grow rightly.

Families' and Nations' Debt. There is also another kind of debt you owe. Men and women, when old enough to marry, establish new homes, for one roof could not long shelter a whole family. Because the new home thus started is made up of individuals from other families, it is indebted to many persons and things in the past. As a member of your family, you owe a great deal to other families. Like a big family, a nation gets good or bad from other nations, as well as from its own citizens. Our country has been peopled by men and women who have come from other countries, or whose parents, grandparents or great-

grandparents did so. Thus our country's debt to other countries is really your debt, for you are a citizen of this country.

Why we love Our Country. We love our parents because they love us, take care of us, and make us happy. We love our country because it affords us safe and comfortable places to live in, because we have a share in making the laws which govern it, because we can make it a free, prosperous, and respected country, and because we admire the great men who built it up from small colonies to a nation of over a hundred million inhabitants.

Our Purpose. We want in these pages to find out what men and nations owe to each other, and what our United States owes to other nations in the past. The more we learn about it, the more we shall love our country, and the harder we shall try to do something to make it proud of us.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

Book of Knowledge, The Grolier Society, New York.

GUERBER, H. A., *Yourself, and Your House Wonderful*, John Winston Co., Philadelphia.

1. Calculate how many members of a family there would be in one hundred and fifty years, if all married, and at the end of thirty years each had three children.

2. Of what nationality were your ancestors and when did they come to America?

3. What do you think you will do when you grow up?

PRIMITIVE MAN

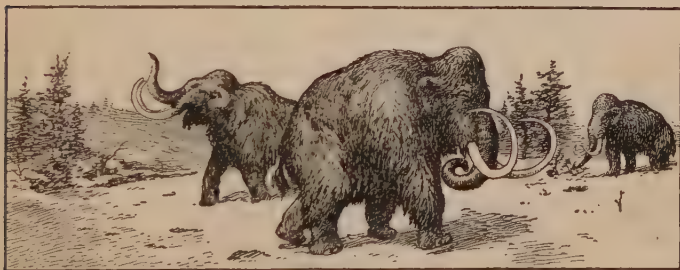
CHAPTER II

THE WORLD IN THE BEGINNING

Tradition and History. To find out our debt to the men and nations of the past, we have to visit many lands, and go back many years. Men knew at first only what their parents told them about the past. Because stories change in passing from mouth to mouth, such accounts—called traditions—are never reliable. Real history, therefore, begins when written records of events were made.

The Eras A.D. and B.C. Christian countries reckon time by counting the years before and after Christ's birth. We live in the Christian Era, or the Year of Our Lord (Latin, Anno Dñm'i-nī, abbreviated to A.D.). From the birth of Christ we count *forward*, dividing the years into centuries or groups of one hundred. The first century A.D. runs from 1 to 100, the second century from 101 to 200; so the twentieth century is from 1901 to 2000. To count the years before Christ (abbreviated B.C.), Christian countries count *backward* from His birth. Historical records go back so far, that we can learn about things that happened seventy centuries ago! If we add to these accounts the tales handed down by tradition, we can talk about things which occurred in various parts of the earth during more than one hundred centuries!

The Earth and Its Animals. Had you flown like a bird over the earth at the beginning of that time, you would have seen endless stretches of forest and marshes but no cultivated lands. These forests and marshes were peopled by wild animals of different kinds, some of which no longer exist. We should not even know they had once been on earth were it not for the drawings and models, made by primitive (early) men, and for deposits of their bones found in many places. The



THE MAMMOTHS

Bones of mammoths are found in America, too, and in Siberian glaciers well preserved remains have been found.

mammoths—like elephants, but three times larger than those in the circus—were plentiful then, but vanished long ago, just as the buffaloes have gone from our plains.

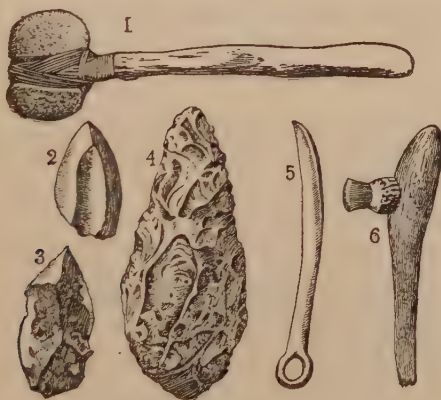
Man and His Religion. Man belongs to the animal kingdom, but is superior to other creatures because he has a better brain to think with, deft hands to work with, and because he walks erect and hence sees farther around him. Having a better brain, man soon noticed that he was different from other living things, such as plants and animals. Being able to think, prim-

itive man concluded that thunder and lightning, wind and fire, the sun, moon, and stars, were great Powers. So he implored them not to hurt him and offered them food, his most precious possession. Death, too, was so mysterious, that he worshipped his ancestors. He even tried by gifts to appease the angry spirits of the bears and lions he slew. Primitive man's gods were many, but he finally decided there must be a chief in the spirit-world, as there was a head to each family or tribe. This great power he called God. To please his God, man did things which he called good. The things which would displease his God he called bad. In this way, little by little, he developed a sense of right and wrong, or what we call a conscience.

Vegetable Food. Primitive man had a hard struggle to obtain shelter, clothing, and food, for a man has to be pretty active to collect all the berries, fruit, grain, and roots he can eat. Observing herb-eating animals and birds, men found that they too like many of the same things to eat. Then some early man may have smashed a bird's egg, licked his fingers, and thus discovered that eggs were good to eat. Another, being very hungry, and finding a dead animal, may have reasoned: "I like the berries and honey which the bears eat, I wonder if I would like lions' food? I'll taste it." Thus, man learned to eat raw meat, tearing it with his strong teeth like a wild beast. And, living by the edge of the water, he gathered clams, mussels, and oysters, and learned fishing from fish-hawks and bears. As primitive man was often famished, he was apt to overeat when he found a big supply of food, leaving skin, bone, and sinews, for which he only later

found use. It was only when he had more food than he wanted, that he supplied his wife and children with a meal, for he was not born unselfish, and had not yet learned to defend and protect those weaker than himself. So women looked out for themselves and for their little ones, because mother-love is as old as the human race. But as soon as children could walk, they began to hunt for food for themselves.

The Stone and Flint Ages. With the bones of early men and animals, rough stone tools and weapons have



EARLY WEAPONS

(1) A stone bound to a handle; (2 and 3) arrow or dart points; (4) a spear-head; (5) a dagger; (6) a scraper.

been found, showing that man first used ordinary stones to kill game, then tied stones with sinews to branches, and thus made heavy clubs. Sharp stones, shells, and bits of bones were soon used as knives, scrapers, and spears. When man discovered that flint can be shaped by chipping, he made a *great* discovery,

and when he ground and polished his flint knives and spear-points by rubbing them on other stones, he made another. In museums or private collections are stone implements, and young Americans can still find Indian spears and arrowheads in fields near home.

Bow and Arrow. Some genius, observing that certain kinds of wood snap back sharply when bent, invented slings and bows. These he fitted first with wooden and later with bone or flint-headed arrows. Provided with such weapons, men ceased to eat dead game, became their own hunters, secured food more easily, and began to provide for their families.

Clothing. Your face and hands, used to exposure, seldom need protection. Although savages claim their "bodies are all face," they like warmth. Men first burrowed under dry grass and leaves, then covered themselves with the skins of animals held together by thorns and fish-bones, or fastened by sinews run through holes. Clean skins being pleasanter than dirty ones, they presently scraped off the flesh, washed the skins, rubbed and stretched them until they became soft, and finally fashioned real garments.

Our Debt. From primitive men and women we have inherited our powers of observation, patience, courage, perseverance, mother-love, a sense of right and wrong, and the first ideas of worship. We also owe to them the first notions of food, clothing, and shelter.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

McINTYRE, *The Cave Boy of the Age of Stone*, D. Appleton and Co., New York.

DOPP, K. S., *The Early Cave Man*, Rand McNally Co., Chicago.

DOPP, K. S., *The Tree Dwellers*, Rand McNally Co.

1. In what century is each of these dates? 84 A.D., 103 A.D., 57 B.C., 6000 B.C., 401 A.D., 920 A.D., 323 B.C., 1925 A.D.

2. What three things must you have to keep on living? Do animals have these three things provided by Nature? How did man use what Nature provided to better advantage than the animals?

3. Find some events in the story of early man that prove the statement "Necessity is the mother of invention." Could you also prove that sometimes "Accident is the mother of invention"?

4. Make some imitation of primitive weapons.

CHAPTER III

THE DISCOVERY OF FIRE

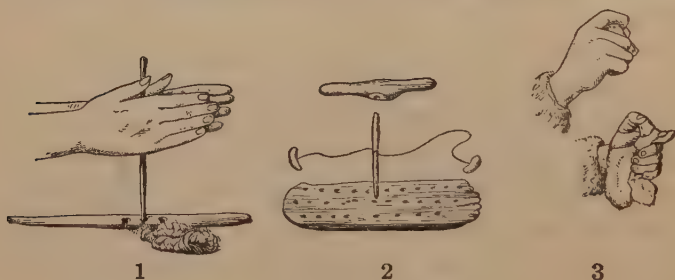
Fire. Primitive man's greatest discovery, fire, was made so long before any records were kept, that our only information about it is given in fire-myths. The sun, moon, stars, lightning, and volcanoes, were the sources of light and heat men first knew. Because all animals fear fire, fire-myths declare it was brought down from heaven to earth, for the use of man only. To him it proved such a boon that he worshipped it!

The Greek Fire-Myth. An old Greek tradition is that the gods, wishing to reserve fire for themselves, gave other gifts to a giant, bidding him distribute them wisely among beasts, birds, and fishes, reserving the best for man, a creature he was to model of clay in the gods' image. But the giant distributed these gifts so lavishly that he had nothing left to give man! Knowing that with fire, man could keep warm, defend himself against wild animals, and become superior to other living beings, he stole up to heaven, seized a glowing brand, hid it beneath his cloak, and, darting down to earth, gave fire to man!

Lightning Fire. We have all watched the lightning furrow the clouds, and some of us have seen a thunderbolt strike a dead tree and set it ablaze. Primitive

man, nearing such a fire, found its heat and light wonderful. He presently learned that, though fire burns, it is otherwise useful. Lightning first kindled all his fires. Then he discovered he could keep them burning by frequently adding fuel. Still, however watchful he was, his fires often went out through neglect, or were put out by rain and snow.

Spark Fire and Fire-Sticks. In breaking up stones to use for ammunition, or in chipping flint for arrow-



FIRE MAKING

(1) A stick twirled rapidly in a hole; (2) board with holes and a stick, to be twirled by the string or handle; (3) striking sparks from flint.

heads, primitive man made sparks fly. One of these, falling on dry moss or bark, set it ablaze beneath his very eyes, thus showing him how fire can be kindled from sparks struck from certain stones. Some other man, rubbing dry sticks together to polish or scrape them, or twirling a stick around in a knot-hole, discovered that friction (rubbing) produces heat and fire. All over the world savages still get fire in this way in a few seconds.

Roasting. Having a fire, some man may have acci-

dentally dropped a piece of meat on the coals and rescued it with a sharp stick. Being too hungry to waste it, he started to eat it, although blackened and covered with ashes. Discovering thus that meat is improved by cooking, he found he could avoid the gritty ash-taste by hanging meat over the fire, holding it over the coals on a pointed stick, or using a spit.

The Story of Roast Pig. An amusing story is told of a Chinese boy, who, playing with fire, set his father's hut ablaze. He escaped without harm, but a mother-pig and her little ones were burned. Fearing his father's anger, this boy, as soon as the fire died down, turned over the charred pig-remains, hoping to find at least one baby pig alive. In doing this he burnt his fingers, and stuck them, sticky with bits of crackling, into his mouth! To his surprise he tasted something so good, that, forgetting the smart, he licked them all. Then suddenly realizing whence the good taste came, he pounced upon the meat and ate until his father caught him feasting! Because people hitherto had eaten their meat raw, the sight of roasted flesh sickened the father. He was about to thrash his son, when he, too, burnt his fingers, stuck them into his mouth, and also tasted something delicious! As every one else ate raw meat, father and son kept their discovery secret, and to enjoy such feasts, burned down their hut whenever they had young pigs! Their neighbors wondered why fire destroyed their hut so often, until some one discovered what they were doing, tasted roast-pig, and burned down his house, too. The Chinese, who love to do things always the same way, might have gone on burning down their huts whenever

they wanted roast-pork, had not someone discovered how to roast sucking-pigs over an out-door fire.

Boiling and Baking. From broiling over a fire, to baking under the ashes (by covering food with ashes, leaves, or clay), proved another stage of progress. Then some one discovered you could heat stones and cook on them, or drop them into water to heat it. Primitive women invented the first oven, by building fires in wee houses of stone or clay, raking out the coals when the houses were thoroughly heated, and putting food in the fire's place. Thus they practiced fireless-cooking somewhat as we do now.

Taming Animals. Some primitive child, finding young kids, or little cubs, brought them home as play-things, and fed and petted them, until they grew tame and became companionable. Animals thus domesticated, supplied families with milk, meat, wool, and furs.

Our Debt. We owe fire, the art of cooking, basket and pottery-making, and the domestication of animals, to primitive man and woman's powers of observation and invention.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

GUERBER, *Myths of Greece and Rome*, pp. 25-28, American Book Co., New York.

LAMB, C., *Essays, Dissertation on Roast Pig*.

1. Ask a Scout Master to take a class out and show how a fire can be made without matches. How may fires be started by Nature? Why should all primitive people worship fire as part of their religion? Do people use fire in religion now?

2. Some one has said that the invention of fire was the greatest of all inventions. What is the difference between discovering fire and inventing fire? Find as many ways as possible in which fire changed the life of primitive man. List some of the ways we use fire today. Could you live comfortably without fire?

CHAPTER IV

FURTHER INVENTIONS OF PRIMITIVE MAN

Dangers. Living in caves, hollow-trees, or on tree-platforms, primitive families were exposed to attacks from wild beasts. While men were out hunting, lions, tigers, wild-cats, or bears, might kill their wives and children. To protect their families some men rolled huge rocks in front of their caves, although this made the interior dark, shut out the air, and kept the inmates prisoners.

Lake-Dwellings. Fishing from a floating log, primitive man got his first idea of boating. Then, he bound several logs together to form a raft, whereon he later decided to build a hut. But winds and currents send rafts adrift, and as every wild creature can swim, animals could board them. To prevent his raft from drifting, early man drove stakes into the mud. Then, seeing the tops of these stakes stick out above the water, one man built a platform on *top* of them, letting it project far enough to prevent wild beasts from climbing upon it. On such platforms, huts were presently erected, and small tree-trunks were made to serve as gang-planks to the shore. When the man was away, or wanted to sleep in peace, the trunk was pulled back, leaving too wide a space between shore and platform for animals to leap across. Families thus felt safe, for if other men came to attack them in rude boats fashioned from hollow logs, even women and children could push them off their platform! We know about the "Lake-Dwellers" of many countries,

because wooden piles turn to stone in certain kinds of water. At the foot of such piles, buried in mud,



LAKE DWELLINGS

Later lake dwellings, with a permanent bridge to the shore.

have been found broken pots and tools, as well as some whole ones. Lake-Dweller ornaments have also

been recovered, and fragments of cloth, showing that women spun flax, and probably wool, and did plain and fancy weaving, as well as the kind called serge. There were Lake-Dwellers in Venezuela (vēn-e-zwē'la) when the Western Hemisphere was discovered.

Countries. At first individual families picked out dwelling-places where they could procure pure water, and a goodly supply of food and fuel. They were not anxious to have others settle near them, because that meant fewer berries and nuts, and less grain for themselves. But, after man began to eat meat, and food was more plentiful, families kept together, until they formed groups, or communities, ruled by the father or chief.

Emigration. When a country cannot support all of its population some of the people emigrate (leave home) to go and dwell elsewhere. The young and strong generally start forth, singly or in groups, in search of new places, where other communities are begun. These emigrants carry away with them all the knowledge of the home group, as well as the traditions heard by the family fire. They emigrate (go out) from their country to immigrate (enter) into another. Every immigrant entering our land brings with him all he learned in his native country.

Language. The language of early men was like that of babies, who manage to make themselves understood by sounds before they can talk. Man made his own words—as babies do—needing very few at first, because he had few wants or things. A proverb says: "Necessity is the mother of invention," so primitive man made things and words as the need of them arose.

Ever since the beginning, languages have been growing, and will continue doing so as long as man exists. Communication being difficult, early emigrants seldom visited their old homes. Meanwhile both home people and emigrants kept on making and doing new things, to which each group gave different names. Thus languages began to differ, until, after many centuries they became so unlike, that only a few words in each can be traced back to the "mother tongue." Even today, English differs a little in various sections of our big country.

The First Human Family. Learned men, tracing family resemblances in languages, think there was once a large family, in Central Asia, or Central Europe, which sent out emigrants north, east, south, and west. These in their turn sent out others, until the whole earth was peopled. Those early wanderers already knew many important things, and had made many inventions, which — somewhat improved — are useful to us all.

Our Debt. In addition to ideas of religion, clothing, shelter, and fire mentioned in the previous chapters, we owe to primitive man our first notions of safety, of changing place in search of food, of language, of weaving, and of boating.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, J., *Ten Boys Who Lived on the Road From Long Ago to Now*, pp. 7-22, Ginn and Company, Boston.

1. What dangers did primitive men fear and how did they protect their families?
2. Why and how do people emigrate?
3. Where is the Cradle of the Human Race supposed to have been situated?

CHAPTER V

FIRST RECORDS

Metals. Some copper is found in lumps on the surface of the ground, and being soft — like lead, gold, and silver — can be pounded into shape. Primitive man finally discovered how to melt and mold such metals. But copper tools bent and grew blunt, until one part of tin was added to nine of copper, thus producing the hard metal called bronze. Later on, in the Iron Age, man discovered a way to heat iron ore, hammer it into shape, and finally temper it into steel. Newer and better methods of working metals are still being invented, in our Age of Steel.

Ornaments. Because savages love to adorn their persons, primitive hunters kept the teeth, claws, horns, and tusks, of animals they killed. These, pierced and strung, formed necklaces, bracelets, ear and nose-rings, or head ornaments. Primitive women strung bright berries, or pretty shells, and while gathering berries, nuts, and roots, discovered natural dyes.

With these they painted themselves and their pottery, dyed splints and grasses for their baskets, besides flax



ARTICLES OF ADORNMENT

(1) Part of a wild-cat jaw bone and teeth, pierced; (2) a horse tooth pierced; (3 and 4) teeth with holes for suspension.

and wool, which they wove into garments. During the metal ages they decked themselves with copper, gold, silver, and bronze ornaments.

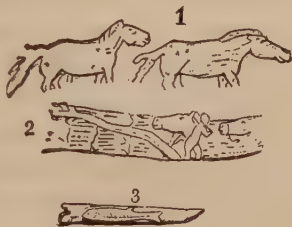
Musical Instruments and Signals. A child, idly blowing into a hollow stalk or bone, invented the first whistle. Conch shells or bamboos supplied the first trumpets. A bit of skin stretched over a piece of hollow wood formed the first drum; and the twanging of tightly stretched bow-strings suggested the first stringed instrument. To summon men when herds of game or shoals of fish promised large supplies of food, people first signalled by shouts, then by means of trumpets and drums. Fires were also used as signals — headland and mountain-tops being places for beacons. Such signals also assembled people for tribal dances, performed by young men, and accompanied by young women on rude musical instruments. American Indians still hold War Dances, Fire Dances, Ghost Dances, Snake Dances, as well as the Hunting Dances in which they illustrate the tracking, surrounding, attacking, killing, skinning, and cooking of the game.

Records and Monuments. Besides keeping hunting trophies, primitive man marked the sites of triumphs over beasts or foe, by notching trees, piling up stones, or setting slabs of rock on end. Stone heaps were also piled on graves, to prevent wild beasts from digging up corpses. Some tribes buried their dead, others burned them, exposed them on platforms, laid them in stone or clay coffins, or sent them floating in canoes down rivers or out to sea. Having discovered he could mark on slate-stone, man progressed — as a baby does — from vague uncertain marks and lines to definite characters,

giving them the names of things he wanted to represent. Thus man began to draw pictures, and made clay models of animals, which have been found on the walls and in the dark recesses of the caves. These beginnings of the arts of drawing, painting, modeling, and carving, form a rough picture-writing, which informs us that primitive man counted by means of his fingers and toes. So did our American Indians.

Women. In primitive times, a man and his children sometimes belonged to the woman's clan. Each tribe had a special mark or "tō'tēm," and people belonged to the Bear, Turtle, or Bī'son Clan, as the case might be. Women were heads of the family, home-builders, fire-tenders, teachers; providers of all food not resulting from the hunt; inventors of tools and utensils; tanners, weavers, potters; and even sowers and tillers of the soil, for they discovered that by cultivating and enriching the ground, by draining and irrigating it, harvests were much more plentiful.

Transportation. Women also transported everything, on their heads, or in their arms. To keep their hands free to work, they made leather or basket-work cradles, so they could carry their babies on their backs, or hang them upon tree-branches out of harm's way. Women also invented hod-like baskets with straps, and



EARLY DRAWINGS

(1) Primitive man drew on bone or rocks the horses he saw; (2) bone drawing of man and horse; (3) bone drawing of fish.

snow and land sleds whereon to move heavy burdens more easily.

Nomads (Wanderers). In early times, besides the Hunters and the Sea People, who wandered from place to place, seeking game and fish and leaving behind them heaps of bones and shells mixed with broken pottery and tools, there were the Shepherd People, who followed their flocks and herds (sheep, goats, cows, and pigs) in search of water and new pastures. These Nō'mads lived mainly from the produce of their flocks, because they did not remain long enough in one place to plant, sow, and reap. Having plenty of milk, they learned to make butter and cheese, slaughtered an animal whenever they wanted meat, and fought only to defend their flocks.

Trade. The Nomads, however, were glad to exchange milk, butter, and cheese, for the game of the hunters, the catch of the fishermen, the grain of the tillers of the soil, the spears and arrowheads of the flint-chippers, and the tools and weapons of metal workers. At first all trade was by barter (exchange) only, but later people used rare shells, gold, silver, and precious stones, as money.

Hospitality and Civilization. Early people soon developed certain notions of right and wrong. For instance they respected each other's families and possessions. They did not kill female animals whose young would perish without their mother's milk. And they treated as sacred any stranger, who, throwing down his weapons, seated himself by their fire. Such strangers were given shelter, food, and any aid needed, because hospitality (receiving a stranger like

a member of your own family) was a sacred duty. Thus even before real history begins, the human race had travelled a long way along the road of progress, which still stretches on endlessly ahead of us. Although still savages, they had learned to respect the rights of others, the first step in real civilization.

Our Debt. To our other debts to primitive man, we can add from our reading of this chapter, the following: first ideas of metal working, ornaments, music, signalling, records, trade, and most important of all, a respect for the rights of others.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, J., *Old Greek Stories*, American Book Co.

1. How many metals can you name? How many can you recognize? §
2. Name three very hard metals and three soft ones.
3. How did the nomads live? What did they live upon? How did they get these things?

EARLY CIVILIZATION

CHAPTER VI

WONDER WORKERS IN CLAY

Early Settlements. There are places where the climate is so agreeable and the soil is so rich, that people settling there thrive wonderfully. Some colonies of the great human family sought just such places, and found them along the great rivers of China and India. Others, reaching the Tigris-Euphrates (Tī'gris-



THE TIGRIS-EUPHRATES VALLEY

yū-frā-tēz) Valley, near the Persian Gulf, found date-palms, grapes, wheat, and rice, growing wild in the rich, black soil.

The Tigris and Euphrates Rivers. The people in this lower valley did not know that the Tigris is about nine hundred miles long, and the Euphrates double that length. These rivers, bringing soil down from the Taurus (Tô-rūs) mountains, built up the plain between them, which is called Mēs-o-po-tā'mī-a (Land between the waters), or the Middle Land. This valley is so well protected, by mountains

north and east, by the Arabian desert west, and by the Persian Gulf south, that its settlers were able to multiply rapidly. Then families formed communities and built cities, governed by priest-kings.

Old Fireside Tales. These settlers told their children about their former home, adding that since their arrival in this valley, a man-fish, who came up out of the sea, taught them how to cultivate the land, dam the rivers, irrigate by canals, and collect food-plants in gardens. Most nations claim — like the Mesopotamians — to have come from the east, and, because Nomads instinctively travel with the sun, the general trend of emigration has been westward. Other nations — like the Aztecs in Mexico — have also stated that they were visited by a man “rising up from the sea, who after teaching them wonderful things, vanished into it.” This probably means that chance seamen, from more civilized places, taught primitive tribes the common arts practiced in their country.

Irrigation Plants. The first dams and ditches were like those which children build. Little by little they improved, until the time came when the Middle Land’s system of irrigation was so perfect, that the whole country was like a garden. Even now, after more than two thousand years of neglect, these canals, choked by desert sand, are found in such good condition, that many only need to be cleared out to be of use once more. That done, the Middle Land will again become fertile and can help feed the world.

Dwellings. People who settle want good homes. Date-palms — the only big trees in that region — were too precious to cut down. No stones are found there,

so the new-comers had to use clay. At first they molded it into uneven-shaped cakes which dried in the sun. As such bricks easily crumble, they soon fired some shaped like ours. Later on they glazed and enamelled bricks so wonderfully, that no better work



PRIMITIVE DWELLING

Built of sun-dried bricks thatched with reeds or palm leaves.

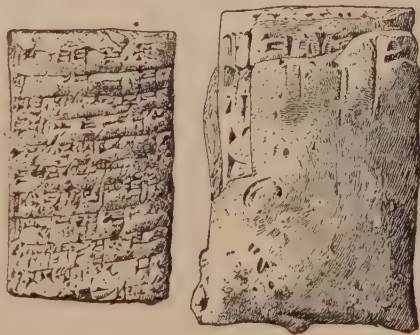
in that line is done now. Natural springs of bitumen (bī-tū'měn) (asphalt) supplied a good substitute for mortar. Reeds and bamboos served as rafters, and palm-leaves as thatch, until the art of constructing brick domes and stairways was discovered. The Middle Land dwellers made even their coffins of clay, either by drawing huge jars over the head and feet of corpses, and sealing them together with bitumen,

or by making them like bath-tubs with dish-like covers. Such coffins are still dug up in that region, and, when opened, reveal human ashes, mixed with trinkets worn by people who died some seven thousand years ago.

Pottery. The finest clay served for pottery, which they finally shaped quite round by means of the potter's wheel, which they invented. Such pots, pans, and jars were decorated, fired, glazed, and enamelled so perfectly, that some of them rank among works of art in our museums. By handling clay so constantly, the Middle Land dwellers—who had written and drawn on perishable palm-leaves—discovered that finger or other marks were indelible once the clay was fired. This fact gave some genius the idea of using clay as we do paper.

Clay Books and Letters. The writing of these Middle Land people consisted of wedge-shaped characters, made by a small tool, pressed into

freshly-molded clay cushions or tablets. These tablets, once baked, could be destroyed only by grinding them to pieces, for heat, cold, or dampness does not change them. After baking, some tablets were coated with fresh clay, stamped with the same characters and fired



CLAY BOOKS

Clay writing on tablets. The clay envelope at the right is broken open, showing the written tablet.

again. So, if anyone claimed the outer writing was incorrect, the clay envelope was broken, and the inside compared with it. Such coatings were also used as letter envelopes and a few letters have been found still unopened! By means of these tablets, we learn a great deal about the Middle Land dwellers whose private and business letters, parcel-post tags, school books, story books (one contains the story of "Cinderella"), dictionaries in several languages, laws, and banking accounts are now read by learned men.

Temples. To raise temples and palaces above the soil — kept damp by constant irrigation — these people built huge platforms of sun-dried brick faced with kiln-dried bricks to prevent their decay, and erected buildings on top of these platforms. Men of our times, who have excavated (dug up) the remains of such constructions, tell us those temples consisted of square buildings, built one on top of another. Each building was smaller than the one below, with which it was connected by inclined planes or outer staircases. The topmost building was the shrine of their principal god, the sun, while those below served as dwellings, libraries, and storehouses for priests. The most famous of all these Middle Land temples is the one the Bible calls "The Tower of Babel" (Bā'bēl), in whose ruins clay tablets, bricks stamped with the name of the builder, and interesting ornaments and utensils, have recently been found.

Measuring Time. The Middle Land priests were fed by the people's contributions to their Temple; so, not being obliged to plant and reap, they had leisure to study many things. Living in high towers, in a

country where the sky is generally clear, they noticed where and when the sun, moon, and stars rose and set, and thus learned to measure time as we do still. They insisted on a "day of rest for the soul" every week, measured time by hour-glasses and sun-dials, and kept a record of eclipses for over a thousand years.

Our Debt to Mesopotamia. We owe to Middle Land dwellers the discovery of brick-making, the inclined plane and the staircase; the potter's wheel, the first attempts at printing (in clay), our first notions of as-trōn'o-my, our first time-pieces, and many improvements in agriculture.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

EVANS, *Cinderella* (Any Fairy Book version of it).

1. Name and describe the two large Mesopotamian Rivers.
2. How did the people build their houses and temples? Try to build a doll house like that.

CHAPTER VII

THE GIFT OF THE NILE

The Nile Colony. Another interesting branch of the human family, travelling farther westward, reached the Sea of the Setting Sun (Med-i-ter-rā'ne-an), whose coast it followed southward to the Isthmus of Su-ez. This "Bridge of Nations" connected Africa and Asia, until cut by the Suez canal in 1869. In Egypt, this colony found a triangular plain, built up by the river Nile. Longer than both Mesopotamian

rivers put together, the Nile rises in southern Africa, in huge lakes, which overflow during the spring thaws and heavy downpours of the tropical "rainy season." Owing to this, the Nile, which receives no tributaries after entering Egypt, overflows its banks in June, until its muddy waters cover the narrow valley, hedged in on both sides by desert-crowned cliffs.

The Delta. Near the sea these cliffs cease, and the low land spreads out like a fan, where the Nile discharges its waters into the Mediterranean by many mouths. The triangular plain, which the Greeks called Delta, because it was shaped like their letter D, was also flooded every year. From June to September the dry Egyptian soil got a thorough drenching, the waters lingering long enough to drop all their muddy sediment on the soil, thus enriching it each year. Because it rains about once in ten years in Egypt, the fertility of the country depends entirely upon the Nile's yearly overflow, its deposits of mud, and the water which its industrious inhabitants store in reservoirs for future use, or pump up from the river to water their gardens or fields. As the land is covered with water four or five months in the year, the Egyptians built their houses and villages on mud-hillocks, and raised all their roads above water level. One can, therefore, travel dry-shod in Egypt, even during the yearly in-un-da-tion (the summer flood).

The Shape of the Land. If you look at a map you will see that the Nile — Egypt's main highway — resembles the long twisty stem of a lō'tus (Nile lily), ending in a huge blossom (the Delta), whose petals are outlined by the river's many mouths. The Nile is also

like a long thin arm stretching northward, and ending in a wide open palm with out-spreading fingers, whose tips dip into the Mediterranean. On either side of the river, and for many miles south of its cataracts (rapids), stretches first the fertile or "black land" of Egypt, and then the Desert, the unproductive "red land" of the ancients. Thus, sea and desert protected the Egyptians, who, left to themselves for many years, developed into a most interesting nation.



EGYPT

The Valley of the Nile.

Twin Sources of Culture. Nobody now knows which is the older, Mesopotamia or Egypt, since both boast histories several mil-len'ni-ums (thousand years) long, without counting their traditions and remains, which go back to the Early Stone Age. Thanks to favorable location and climate, both people thrived wonderfully and made such progress, that they are rightly called "The Twin Sources of the World's Culture" and "Cradles of Civilization." For many centuries neither people knew anything about the other, although they were only five hundred miles apart, "as the crow flies." This was because the short road between them lay across the Arabian Desert, which they dared not cross. Later, when visiting the

Egyptians, the Mesopotamians followed the Euphrates to the foot of the mountains. Then they turned westward, and, crossing the fertile land of Syria (sĭr'i-a) came to the Mediterranean Sea, whose lovely coast they followed southward, until they reached Egypt.

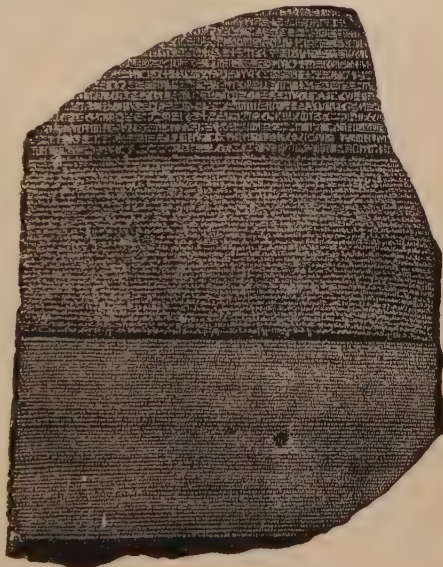
Egyptian Occupations. Like the Middle Land people, the Egyptians fished, hunted, tended their flocks, tilled the ground, made pottery, bricks, and other useful articles. They also worshipped the sun — under a different name — and the Nile, which enabled them to grow dates, grapes, wheat, barley, peas, beans, radishes, carrots, beets, turnips, lettuce, cucumbers, melons, garlic, and onions, as well as the cotton and flax, to spin, weave, and fashion into garments.

Egyptian Buildings. Because food was easily procured in abundance, because the climate was so mild that little clothing was needed, and because it was always dry, the Egyptians had time and energy to spare. So they built wonderful reservoirs, canals, tombs, pyramids, and temples, although they themselves lived in plain mud-houses which had to be renewed often. This was, however, a very simple process. The house was knocked down, the rubbish pounded flat, and the new dwelling erected on top of the mound. In digging there, one therefore finds layer upon layer of remains of cities, villages, and houses.

Egyptian Writing. The Egyptians had a picture-writing (hieroglyphics — hĭ-er-o-glif'iks) which may have been invented before that of any other nation. It can still be seen on their monuments, where for hundreds of years no one could read it! Then Napoleon's soldiers (1799) dug up the "Rosetta Stone,"

whereon the same inscription was written in three ways. As the last, in Greek, was easily read, a Frenchman patiently learned to read the other two, the de-mōt'ic (common) and the hieroglyphic, or royal Egyptian. That enabled us to read the hieroglyphics. Since then, learned men have been translating Egyptian inscriptions for us, which tell us more and more about the people.

Papyrus (pa-pī'-rus). The Egyptians carved in stone, painted on animal skins — rubbed smooth and called parchment — but most often wrote on papyrus, whence comes our word paper. This material came from the papyrus-reed, which then grew plentifully along the Nile and its canals. By running a knife down sections of reed, various layers were peeled off. Still sticky with sap, the layers were overlapped, side by side, and pounded *together*, until long strips were made. Because the layers had been part of a round stem, they curled up, like birch bark, so the Egyptians fastened rods at either end, whereon to roll them up.



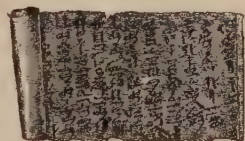
THE ROSETTA STONE



THE NILE PAPYRUS

Nile scene with temples, statues, birds, and papyrus, which supplied the Egyptian paper.

They wrote on each section, as we do on a page, and rolled and unrolled their books as they read them, instead of turning pages. But papyrus is so brittle, that far fewer papyrus rolls or books now exist than clay tablets.



A PAPYRUS ROLL

Sections of papyrus were glued together and written upon. Each section was a page, and the book unrolled in reading.

Science. Living, like the Mesopotamians, on a plain, with cloudless skies overhead, the Egyptians also watched the stars, discovered the same things about them, knew the four points of the compass, and became good astronomers. Egyptians also divided the year into months, weeks, days ($365\frac{1}{4}$), hours, minutes, and seconds, and invented geometry, so as to survey their lands afresh after each flood. From their cliffs they quarried huge blocks of stone, weighing many tons. This work was done by means of wooden wedges, which, once set in place, were soaked with water until, swelling, they split a block or slab away from the solid mass. They handled these stone blocks by means of levers and pulleys, and by the use of inclined planes. While sun- or kiln-dried bricks seemed good enough for their own houses, their greatest monuments were built of quarried stones, brought down the Nile. Over a thousand miles long, below the cataracts, and generally a mile wide, this river was their only means of communication from one end to the other of the country.

Our Debt to Egypt. We owe many things to Egypt, in agriculture and in invention, but its special gifts to the world are geometry and the art of stone quarrying and building.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

"Stories of the Ancient World" (Reprint from *St. Nicholas*).

1. Where is Egypt? What kind of people lived there?
2. What kinds of houses, temples, and pyramids did they build?
3. How did we learn to read Egyptian writing?

CHAPTER VIII

HOW TYRIAN PURPLE AND GLASS WERE
DISCOVERED

The People Between. When Mesopotamian travelers, leaving the Sea of the Rising Sun (Persian Gulf), and reaching the Sea of the Setting Sun (Mediterranean) turned southward, they found, wedged in between the Leb'a-non Mountains and the sea, a strip of fertile land, about one hundred and fifty miles long, and from ten to fifteen miles wide. A colony from the East, settling here, tilled the soil, fished, and built boats of Lebanon cedar. These settlers were so wide-awake, so industrious, and deft-fingered, that they soon wove better cloth, and made finer pottery, weapons, and ornaments, than anyone else.

Maritime Trade. As their land was later known as Phoenicia (fe-nish'ĩ-a) (Land of Palms), we will call it so from the first. Its population soon became so great, that the narrow strip of land could no longer supply food enough for it. So seamen, loading their ships with cedar-wood and manufactured wares, began trading up and down the coast and with the isles which dot the Mediterranean, to obtain food and materials to

manufacture. During these journeys they coasted all around this sea, and in time, ventured through the Pillars of Hercules (her'ku-lez) (Strait of Gibraltar) into the "Great Sea" (the Atlantic Ocean), to trade with the inhabitants of the British Isles and even with the tribes on the shores of the Baltic Sea.

Goods from Many Lands. From Spain, the Phoenicians brought copper and silver; from England, iron and tin; and from the Baltic, amber. In many places they established trading stations, which became large and important cities (such as Cadiz [kā'diz] and Carthage). In an old book we learn how these Phoenician sailors traded with African savages. On arriving, they unloaded their wares, laid them out in orderly fashion along the beach, then returned to their ships and raised a great smoke. The natives, seeing this, came down to the shore with their wares, gold-dust, ivory, ostrich plumes, etc., and spread out opposite the Phoenician goods whatever they were willing to give in exchange. Then they withdrew to a distance, and the Phoenicians returned. If satisfied with what the savages offered, the Phoenicians carried it to their ships and sailed away, leaving their own wares behind. If not satisfied, they went back to their ships and waited until the natives either carried off their own goods or offered more. "Neither party dealt unfairly with the other or took what he should not."

The Alphabet. Phoenician sailors soon carried on such a brisk trade, that their ships were constantly coming and going over the sea. As many articles were entrusted to them to exchange, they had to keep accounts. Some say they borrowed their writing from

the Mesopotamians, others from the Egyptians. However that may be, both of these writings proved so difficult, that the Phoenicians invented an alphabet of

Phœnician	Old Greek	Roman and English
Α	Α Α	A
Ε	Ε Ε	E
Ρ	Ρ Ρ Ρ Ρ	R
Σ	Σ Σ Σ Σ	S

OUR ALPHABET

The chart shows how four of our letters developed from those the Phœnicians used.

twenty-two letters, which they taught to the people they traded with in the ancient world. These, in their turn, changed this alphabet to suit their own languages. A few of our English letters still bear a strong family likeness to those of the Phœnicians. Thus, you see, the Phœnicians taught Europeans the alphabet.

Tyrian Purple. The ingenious Phœnicians dyed their weaves a vivid red color, named Tyrian (tĭr'ĭ-ăn) purple from Tyre (Tĭr), their chief city. This color was so rich and rare that it was used by kings and queens, whose "royal purple (red) robes" are often mentioned. It may interest you to hear how this wonderful dye is said to have been discovered. Driven by hunger, a shepherd and his dog came down from the mountains to the seashore, and began devouring shell-fish. Suddenly the shepherd saw what he took for blood, dripping from his dog's mouth! Thinking the poor animal had cut himself badly on the shells he was crunching, the master examined him, only to discover it was not blood, but color from a wee sack in the murex (mussel). This sack contains a few drops of creamy fluid, which — exposed to air — turns green, blue, red, purple, and, in contact with

water, a bright crimson. The discovery of this dye made the Phoenicians gather murex-shells wherever they found them, and carry them to Tyre. There, the precious dye was extracted, and there huge heaps of shells can still be seen.

Discovery of Glass. While Tyre was noted for its "purple," Sī'don — another Phoenician town — became equally famous for its glass, also discovered by accident. We are told that sailors, having disposed of their cargo, ballasted their returning ship with stones. Landing on a sandy beach to cook a meal, and finding no stones whereon to rest a pot over the fire, they brought a few from their boat. These stones (a kind of lime), melting in the heat, flowed down on the fine sand, and, mixing with it, hardened into what looked like wriggly green worms! The astonished sailors, touching them gingerly, found a brittle and transparent substance. This first discovery was so improved upon by the Phoenicians and Egyptians, that they made even finer glass than we manufacture now.

Articles of Trade. Tyrian dye, Sidō'n-ian glass, bronze weapons, and tempered steel blades, were only a few of the Phoenician specialties. They traded in ivory, bone, leather, furs, ostrich-feathers, gums, gems, papyrus, toilet-articles, pottery, and salt-fish. Their wares, found in tombs and ruins in all parts of the ancient world, show how very far from home these traders ventured, steering by the "Phoenician Star" (North Star).

The Canaanites. South of the Phoenicians, between their land and Egypt, were the Canaanites, who, un-

able to rival the Phoenicians at sea, became land-traders. To transport goods to and fro between the coast and points far inland, they used long strings of donkeys and camels, called caravans. They protected these heavily-laden animals from wild beasts and robber-bands by travelling well-armed. Before long they had regular routes, and, thanks to the camel, the "ship of the desert," they soon went straight across to the Persian Gulf. Along the desert caravan routes were a few oases, where thriving cities later arose. Because the Canaanites (Kā'nān-îtz) and Phoenicians taught the people they visited many useful things, they are often called the "Missionaries of Civilization."

Our Debt. We owe to Canaanite traders the invention of many useful articles. The chief gifts of the Phoenicians are: navigation, exploration, colonization for trade, manufacture (glass, dye, and arms), commerce, and, most important of all, the alphabet.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

"Stories of the Ancient World" (Reprint from *St. Nicholas*).

1. Which would you rather carry on, a maritime or a land trade? How would you transport your goods?
2. What was Tyrian purple? How was it said to have been discovered?
3. How was glass discovered, and who made the best?

CHAPTER IX

THE GRAVEYARD OF EMPIRES AND NATIONS

Length of Histories. A "United States History," such as you study in school, is generally quite a thick book, although the history of our nation — from 1775 — covers so short a time. Even if you begin with Columbus' discovery (1492), American History does not cover five centuries! As the histories of Egypt and Mesopotamia extend over more millenniums than ours does centuries, you can imagine what a fat volume either of them makes. To find out what these ancient people taught others, all we need now is a few peeps at them.

Empires and Nations. In both countries, first heads of families and then chiefs of tribes ruled. As communication improved, cities arose which were governed by priest-chiefs. Finally one priest-chief became head over all the rest, or king. Mesopotamia and Egypt each consisted of three distinct regions. These were called in Asia: Chaldea (kāl-dē'ă), Babylonia (bāb-ī-lō'nī-a), and Assyria; and in Africa: Upper, Lower, and Middle Egypt. When real history begins, Chaldea — nearest the Persian Gulf — had conquered and enslaved the former inhabitants of that region, and boasted several large cities besides Ur. Then Babylonia, further north, built its capital Babylōn on the Euphrates; and Assyria, nearest the mountains, later had as its main city Nineveh (nīn'ē-vě) on the Tigris. These three kingdoms conquered and ruled the whole region in turn, making it an Empire.

The Ruins. A king is head of a kingdom, and generally rules over one nation only. But an Empire is composed of several divisions, over which there is a chief-king, or Emperor. Every time one king conquered another, he ruined his foe's cities and enslaved his people. Some of these cities—like Babylon—were ruined and rebuilt several times. Others, like Nineveh, were not rebuilt. Ruined cities were, little by little, completely covered by drifting sand, upon which grew sparse grass and bushes. This gave them the appearance of small hills, and before long no one remembered what lay beneath them. We now know those "hills" are the giant graves of buried cities, temples, and palaces, because many precious things have recently been dug up from them and placed in museums. As there is now no other trace of the great empires and peoples of those times, that country has been rightly called the "Graveyard of Empires and Nations."

Babylon. By studying, and digging into the mounds now covering Babylon's walls, temples, and palaces, excavators know that Babylon—the greatest city in the old world—was very large. It obeyed the ancient code of laws of Hammurabi (hām'ōō-rā'bē), one of its early kings. It also set the fashion for the ancient world, as Paris does now for the modern world. It traded in pottery, tissues, perfumes, and cosmetics. It sent caravans across the Arabian desert, and ships—via the River and the Arabian Gulf—to India and Africa.

Babylonian Customs. We are told that strangers, visiting Babylon, noticed curious customs there. For

instance, sick people were brought out on the market-place, where every passer-by was expected to stop, inquire what was the matter, and suggest the remedy which had cured him, if he had ever suffered in the same way. Another odd thing was the Babylonian



THE MARRIAGE MARKET

The most beautiful girls were sold to the highest bidder. Then the homely and sickly girls were provided with a dowry and sold.

Marriage Market, where all girls of a certain age were auctioned off as wives to the highest bidders. When all the good-looking and intelligent ones had been sold, the stupid, homely, sickly, or deformed girls were offered, with a sum of money taken from the marriage fund raised by the sale of their handsome sisters. Thus all the girls in Babylonia, attractive or unattractive, were provided with husbands!

Nineveh. At the time of its greatest glory, Nineveh, like Babylon, was surrounded by "cliff-like fortress walls," a hundred feet high, so wide that three chariots could drive abreast along the top of them.

Many parts of the city were of brick, but it was near enough to the mountains to obtain huge timbers for rafters and tremendous blocks of stone for building. From such blocks the Assyrians built temples and palaces. Their sculptors carved wonderful decorations in low relief (bas-relief) for the walls of these buildings, and massive man-headed winged bulls weighing up to thirty tons to guard the palace entrances. Guardian spirits were supposed to dwell in these bulls, which the sculptors always represented with five legs, so placed that when you view these images from the front, or the side, you can see only four legs!

Cylinders. Much of our information about this region and its rulers comes from the cylinders, or seals, of the different rulers, nobles, and great merchants. Made either round — like tiny rolling-pins — or six or eight-sided, these cylinders of baked clay, carved stone, engraved metal or glass, were rolled by their owners over soft clay tablets, leaving a clear impression of the writing on them. When the clay tablet was baked, this stamp could not be changed. Some kings had every brick in their buildings thus stamped with their name, and with boastful statements of the great things they were doing! Such cylinders can be seen in most large museums.

Our Debt. Besides our debt to Mesopotamia, mentioned in Chapter VI, we owe to her the first written laws, many notions of building, sculpture, commerce; countless clay records, cylinders, and other treasures, now preserved in our museums. Their traders made their inventions known in all the new world.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

"Stories of the Ancient World" (Reprint from *St. Nicholas*).

1. Name the divisions of Mesopotamia, and their principal cities.
2. Describe some queer Babylonian customs.
3. Describe the Nineveh palaces, the winged bulls, and the clay cylinders.

CHAPTER X

CRETE AND ITS MINOTAUR

Crete. While many kings followed one another in Egypt, while people in the Tigris-Euphrates Valley built Tower Temples and obeyed the laws of Hammurabi, while the Chinese formed a nation, while the Hindus (hĭn-dōōz) began to keep records, and while the Phoenicians diligently traded, many islands of the Mediterranean became homes for venturous emigrants. Crete (krēt), for instance, was early occupied by people who were considered the wisest of their time.

The Minotaur. Returning travelers told queer tales about Crete. One was about the Minotaur (mĭn'ō-tôr) (Mĭ'nōs' bull), said to be part man and part bull, to fight like a man, and to eat human flesh! To pen this monster, King Minos bade a famous architect build a labyrinth (lăb'ĩ-rĭnth) whence none could escape. Not wishing to remain in this labyrinth forever, the architect made wings for himself and for his son, by sticking feathers with wax on wooden frames. Although the father cautioned the son not to fly too near the sun, lest its heat melt the wax and loosen the feathers, the lad rose higher and higher. Suddenly the wax melted, the feathers dropped, and the youth fell into the sea!

The father, however, by flying low, reached Sicily (sĩs'ĩ-li), where it is claimed he invented the axe, the level, sails for ships, and moving statues. Whether this architect was really a bird-man (aviator), or whether the ancients fancied sail-boats flew, nobody can now tell.

Theseus. This story further stated that Minos — to supply his bull with enough food — forced the defeated A-thē'nĩ-āns, in Greece, to send him yearly fourteen youths. Theseus (thē'sūs), son of the Athenian king, hoping to find a way to kill the monster, begged to be one of the Minotaur's victims. His father reluctantly let him go, telling him, in case of success, to change the black sails of his ship to white ones. On arriving in Crete, the Minotaur's victims were always feasted and entertained. So, after a fine banquet, Theseus and his companions were led to King Minos' throne-room, — which can still be seen. Part of the entertainment consisted in dancing, on a terrace, near a grand flight of steps, leading up to the palace. The best dancer proved to be the king's daughter. When she saw Theseus among the prisoners, she fell in love with him, visited him in his prison at night, and gave him a ball of twine and a sword. She bade him tie the end of the twine to the entrance of the labyrinth, unwind the ball as he advanced, and after killing the monster with his sword, make his way safely out again by rolling up the twine.

The Escape. Thus Theseus slew the monster, freed his captive companions and escaped in his ship, taking with him the king's daughter! But, because he abandoned her on an island, the gods made him

forget to replace his black sails with white ones. His old father, Aegeus (ē'jūs), seeing a black-sailed vessel enter port, concluded his son was dead, and in despair



THESEUS AND THE MINOTAUR

The fight in which the Minotaur was killed by Theseus, using the sword given by the princess.

threw himself into what has ever since been called the Aegean (ē-jē'ăn) Sea.

Minos' Palace. King Minos' palace, with its throne-room and store-rooms — wherein are jars for wine and oil many feet high and bigger around than hogsheads

—proves that his people had furnaces, bath-rooms, and sewers! But, after being used by the Cretans (krē'tānz), these "modern improvements" were forgotten for centuries, and had to be discovered again! Destroyed by fire, two or three thousand years before Christ, Minos' palace remained buried until our times. Everyone therefore thought the Labyrinth and Minotaur were mere fairy-tales. Part of the story, of course, is made up, but it must have been difficult for strangers to find their way in a palace of one thousand rooms. Besides, any sailor witnessing a bull-fight for the first time, — as represented on the palace walls, — was likely to tell strange tales about it on his return home!

Our Debt. The old world learned from the Cretans many things about metal working, weaving, straw-hat and pottery manufacture, household improvements, painting, and modelling. Of these, the Cretans left interesting remains, which have only recently been discovered.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Old Greek Stories*, American Book Co.

HAWTHORNE, *Tanglewood Tales*, *The Minotaur*.

GUERBER, *Myths of Greece and Rome*, pp. 253-262, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 22-24, American Book Co.

1. Where is Crete and what is the Minotaur story?
2. How was Theseus punished for abandoning the Princess?
3. What has been found recently which proves the story of the Labyrinth partly true?

CHAPTER XI

EGYPT'S WONDERS

The Pharaohs. Egyptian ruins and inscriptions reveal that thirty-one dynasties (families) of kings, called Pharaohs (fā'-rōz) in that country, ruled in Egypt between the dawn of history and the Christian Era. The first Pharaoh on the list gathered all the people of the lower Nile Valley under his rule, and began the canals and dykes which helped to make Egypt so fertile. The oldest book in the world, the Egyptian "Book of the Dead," dates back to his time. Because it was a "Guide for the Dead," copies of it have been found in ancient tombs.

Egyptian Gods. The Egyptians worshipped some seventy gods, some of whom were represented with the body of a man and the head of a bird, cat, or dog, because many animals were sacred in Egypt. The most fantastic of their dī-vin'ī-ties was the Sphinx (sfīnks), a creature with the body, paws, and tail of a lion, and the head of a king, queen, or ram. Whole avenues of such stone Sphinxes can still be seen, leading up to the ruined Egyptian temples. The oldest and biggest of all, near Cairo (kī'rō), is carved out of a solid rock, and pieced out with masonry for its tail and claws. It is one hundred and ninety feet long, seventy feet high, and gazes out over the desert sands as if it could see and hear wonderful things. For many years, no one suspected it crouched over a small temple, whose entrance lies far beneath its fore-

paws. The doorway is generally concealed by sand-drifts, constantly piled up afresh by the desert winds.



THE SPHINX

Near the Pyramids of Gizeh lies the Sphinx with its human head. Between the front paws is the entrance to the little temple.

The Apis-Bull. Early in their history, the Egyptians began to believe that their chief god dwelt in a black bull with certain white marks. This bull was stabled in their finest temple, given the best food, groomed by priests, hung with costly tapestries, and

exhibited from time to time to its worshippers. When an Ā'pīs Bull died, his body was carefully laid in a huge stone coffin, which was placed in an under-ground cemetery, which many people still visit. The god, at the bull's death, was supposed to enter into a new-born calf, bearing the sacred marks. Wailing priests sought diligently all over Egypt for this bull-calf, and when found led it to the temple in triumph.

The Great Pyramid. Egypt's Golden Age for art and literature was under the Pharaohs of the Fourth Dynasty (dī'nās-tī). They are also the builders of the Great Pyramids, one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. The biggest of the three Pyramids at Gizeh (gē'zě), near Cairo, was intended to serve as a tomb for one of these Pharaohs. Its huge stone blocks were brought down the Nile on rafts, and hauled up from the water by a roadway which it took ten years to build! From a square stone base, covering thirteen acres, the Great Pyramid rises to a height of four hundred and eighty feet. One hundred thousand workmen labored twenty years to erect it, receiving no pay save their food (bread, garlic, and onions), and were cruelly lashed by overseers when they did not work hard and fast enough. A pyramid tomb was continued, layer after layer, as long as its builder lived. When he died, if the Egyptian "judges of the dead" deemed him worthy of occupying such a place, his embalmed body was laid in a small inner chamber of the pyramid, whose openings were then closed. Then the pyramid was finished. That is to say that a triangular piece called apex (ā'pěks) was placed on top, and slabs of polished granite were cut and fitted

on each step. So, from apex to base, a finished pyramid was as smooth as glass, and no one could climb it. The Pharaoh who built the biggest pyramid (upon whose stones his name was scribbled many times by his workmen), was *not* buried in his tomb, because he proved unworthy! Still the tomb was finished, and it was only centuries later, when the Turks began to pull it down for building materials, that its inner passages and empty chambers were discovered. None of the seventy Egyptian pyramids, still remaining, are now perfect. All have lost most of their polished casing, and so many blocks have been pried away, here and there, that, closely viewed, pyramids look like rough,



AN EGYPTIAN ARM CHAIR

Carved legs, beautifully decorated back and sides, inside and out, soft seat, in perfect condition.

giant-stairways. As their polished apexes are also gone, the platforms, where these once rested, afford wonderful views of the Desert and the Nile Valley.

Cliff Tombs. Later Egyptian kings instead of building pyramids, had tombs hewn into the cliffs. These tombs consisted of well hidden entrances, long passageways, and chambers decorated with vividly colored paintings. These represent the farmer ploughing, sowing, tilling,

reaping; the baker kneading and baking; and bricklayers, masons, carpenters, and embalmers at work. Beautifully preserved, these paintings show us the life

of the people, so we know what kind of clothes they wore, what tools they used, what entertainments they gave, and, as some funeral chambers have been found furnished with beds, chairs, down-cushions, and embroidery-stands, we know exactly how they lived. Tu-tan-kha'men's tomb, found in 1923, is a fine example of Egyptian art.

Egyptian Beliefs. Because the Egyptians believed the soul came back to visit the body, they embalmed their dead with spices and preserving fluids. The body, now called a mummy, was laid in a coffin shaped like a person, with brilliantly painted face, ornaments, and garments. This case was enclosed in another, and laid in a stone coffin, or placed on a sort of platform in the tomb. As the soul might be hungry, food was placed near it, and excavators (ěks'ka-vā-těrz) have found in Egyptian tombs wheat so well preserved, that it is *said* to have grown and borne fruit, after being buried several thousand years! Jars of tomb honey have attracted hosts of flies and bees, who sipped it as greedily as if it were fresh!

Our Debt to Egypt. Tourists still visit Egypt in great numbers to see the Sphinx, the Pyramids, the temples, the tombs, the Pharaoh mummies, and the sculptures in the Cairo Museum. The world owes to the Egyptians many of its early notions of medicine, surgery (they performed operations for appendicitis (ă-pěn-dĩ-sĩ'tis), embalming, agriculture (they used incubators (ĩn'kū-bā-těrs), irrigation, glass-manufacture, geometry, and astronomy. They taught the world to make chairs, bedsteads, work-stands, tables, footstools, etc.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

"Stories of the Ancient World" (Reprint from *St. Nicholas*).

1. What name was borne by Egyptian kings and what gods did they worship?
2. Describe how a pyramid was built, what it was for, and how it appeared when finished.
3. What are the cliff tombs? Mummies?

CHAPTER XII

THE ISRAELITES

The Israelites. We now begin to hear of the Israelites (Iz'rā-ĕl-ĭtz), (Jews, Hebrews, or Children of Israel), the nation that was to teach morals and religion to mankind. About 2000 B.C. the patriarch (pā'trĭ-ărk) Abraham (said to be Adam's tenth descendant) was settled at Ur, in Chaldea. Eastern people love stories, so Abraham must often have told the Chaldeans of the Creation, Fall, Deluge, and Confusion of Tongues. He also probably heard the Chaldean versions of the same events. We know the stories both people told are somewhat alike, because of the similarity between those in the Bible and recently-found Chaldean accounts of these events.

The Call. Abraham owned immense herds and flocks. Wandering from place to place in search of pasture, he dwelt in a tent, so at night he could easily study the stars in the blue Mesopotamian sky. The Bible says Abraham, obeying the commands of God, set out with his wife, his nephew, Lot, and all his live

stock, for the land of Canaan, which God promised should belong to his descendants.

Story of Lot. One of the great events in Abraham's family history in the "Promised Land," is the story of Lot. The Bible tells us that after Lot settled in the Jor'dan Valley, a Mesopotamian king warred against five of his city-king neighbors. Having triumphed, the Mesopotamian plundered the cities, and was carrying off into captivity the five kings and Lot, when Abraham surprised the victorious army.



PALESTINE

He rescued the prisoners, got much booty, and as thank-offering gave one-tenth of it to a priest of God. Thence arose the custom of giving a tithe (one-tenth) of one's wealth to the church.

The Dead Sea. Soon after Lot's return to Söd'-öm, the people of that city and of Göm-ör-räh became so wicked that they refused to show hospitality to strangers. In punishment, they and their cities were destroyed by fire, while Lot and his family—warned by

angels—escaped. Where these cities once stood now lies the Dead Sea, one thousand feet below the Mediterranean. Its waters are even more salty than those

of the Great Salt Lake (Utah), so no fish can live in them.

The Bible. In Bible stories you can learn how God saved Ish'mā-ēl from dying of thirst to become the ancestor of the Ish'mā-ēl-ītes (Bedouins [bēd'ōō-īnz], or Desert Outcasts). These men either guided or attacked the caravans passing through the Promised Land and Arabian Desert on their way between Babylon and the Mediterranean.

Our Debt to the Hebrews. To the Hebrews we owe our ideas of the God we worship. Also the Old Testament — which is their Sacred Book as well as ours — with all its wealth of religious and moral teaching, its books of history, stories, law, poetry, and wisdom. It is said the Bible has done more to teach people how to live rightly and to educate them in every way, than any other book in the world. At first it was carefully copied by hand, now it is printed in every known language, and millions of copies of it are issued every year.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

"Stories of the Ancient World" (Reprint from *St. Nicholas*).

BALDWIN, *Old Stories of the East*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Chosen People*, pp. 27-35, American Book Co.

1. What people taught us religion? What stories were told them of the Creation, the Fall, the Deluge, the building of the Tower of Babel?

2. Tell the story of Lot.

3. If you had an income of ten cents a week, how much would a tithe amount to in a year?

CHAPTER XIII

ISRAEL IN EGYPT

The Shepherd Kings. In the third millennium before Christ, during the rule of the twelfth dynasty of Pharaohs, Egypt was invaded by "Shepherd Kings." They probably came from the country north of the Taurus Mountains, where remains of their sculpture are still found. Sweeping through Phoenicia and Canaan, they entered Egypt, where they destroyed much, and ruled four hundred years, allowing the Pharaohs to govern parts of the country *under them*.

Adventures of the Children of Israel. Meanwhile the Children of Israel were feeding their flocks in the Promised Land. There, the story tells how Abraham was asked to sacrifice his son Isaac (i'zak) on the hill where later stood the Great Temple. You know how Isaac was saved, how his wife came from Mesopotamia, how his twin sons quarreled, and how the younger fled to his mother's old home. There he dwelt twenty-one years and acquired four wives, eleven sons, and huge flocks. Then he returned home, made friends with his brother, lost his favorite wife when his twelfth son was born, and excited the jealousy of his other children by his preference for Joseph.

Joseph. It was while the Shepherd Kings were ruling Egypt, that Joseph, who was sold by his jealous brothers to a passing caravan, had his exciting adventures. While prime-minister to one of these Shepherd Kings, he invited his father to settle in the province of Gō'shēn, where the Israelites lived and multiplied

during the next four hundred years. Then one Pharaoh grew strong enough to drive the Shepherd Kings out of the country. But, although he ousted them, he allowed their guests, the Israelites, to remain in the land, because they were clever workmen, and hence useful to him.

The Wall of Brick. The Bible says one of the next Pharaohs forced the Children of Israel to make bricks



MAKING BRICKS

The Children of Israel worked as slaves. This drawing in the Egyptian style shows how they made bricks.

for a huge wall between Egypt and Canaan. This wall had massive towers, with store-houses at intervals, so that troops could be stationed there to prevent further invasions. The Israelites, who did most of this work, were neither paid nor given straw to mix with their clay. Besides, they were poorly fed, and whipped if they laughed while at work, because the Egyptians believed that "man has a back and obeys only when it is beaten."

Moses. In spite of ill-treatment, the Israelites had many children, so Pharaoh, afraid they might rebel

and drive him out of his kingdom, ordered all newborn boys killed. You remember the story of Mō'sēs, whom his mother hid until he was nearly a year old, and then placed in a cradle among the papyrus reeds, at the spot where Pharaoh's daughter generally came to bathe? This princess found and adopted Moses, had him nursed in the palace by his own mother, and educated by the most learned Egyptian priests. Thus Moses became one of the wisest men of his time.

The Exodus. Knowing he belonged to the Children of Israel, and seeing one of his fellow-countrymen abused by an Egyptian overseer, Moses killed the cruel man. Then he fled in terror, and was earning his living as a shepherd, when God bade him lead the Israelites out of Egypt into the Promised Land. This is the exodus (ěk'sō-dūs), (the going out) of the Israelites.

The Decalogue. They crossed the Red Sea and wandered in the desert, until they reached the foot of Mount Sinai. There, Moses went up to the top of the mountain, whence he came down, bearing the Ten Commandments (the Decalogue [děk'ă-lög], or Ten Words of God), which are repeated here in an easily remembered rhyme:

1. Thou shalt have no God but Me.
2. Before no idol bend thy knee.
3. Take not the name of God in vain.
4. Nor dare the Sabbath Day profane.
5. Give both thy parents honor due.
6. Take heed that thou no murder do.
7. Abstain from words and deeds unclean.

8. Nor steal though thou art poor and mean.
9. Nor make a wilful lie or love it.
10. What is thy neighbor's dare not covet.

Besides the Ten Commandments, Moses gave them a code of lesser laws, regulating what they should do in every case.

The Desert. After receiving the Mō-sā'ic Laws, many of which Hebrews still obey, the Israelites wandered forty years in the desert. There they murmured so bitterly against God, who had made them leave their homes and the "flesh-pots" of Egypt for the desert mǎn'na, that they were punished by not being allowed to see the Promised Land. Moses, having also disobeyed God, was only allowed to *see* the land from a mountain-top where he died and "was buried by angels."

The Judges and Prophets. The Israelites now entered the Promised Land, whence they would have driven its former inhabitants, had they kept the Ten Commandments. But, disobeying them, they had much trouble, and their Twelve Judges had to fight a great deal. God sent, besides these Judges, great teachers called Prophets, because they "spoke the words God put in their mouths," and warned the people of what was about to happen. Samuel, one of these Prophets, as well as the last Judge of Israel, learned, even as a child, to say: "Speak, Lord, Thy servant heareth."

Our Debt. We owe the Ten Commandments to the Children of Israel, who, although they sometimes disobeyed them, passed them on to the rest of the world.

We also owe to them the Pentateuch (pěn'tà-tūk) (five books, *i.e.*, Gen'ě-sis, Exodus, Le-vit'ĩ-cus, Numbers, Deuteronomy [dū-těr-ōn'ō-mĩ], the writings of the four Great Prophets, Isaiah [ĩ-zā'ya], Jěr-ě-mĩ'āh, E-zē'kĩ-ěl, and Daniel), and those of the twelve Lesser Prophets. These books, with a few others, form the Old Testament.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Old Stories of the East*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Chosen People*, pp. 37-39, 44-51, 51-60, 64-82, American Book Co.

1. How long did the Shepherd Kings rule Egypt, and what became of them?

2. Who became Pharaoh's prime minister and how did he influence our story?

3. Tell the story of Moses.

SOME MEDITERRANEAN NATIONS

CHAPTER XIV

THE EARLY GREEKS

Early Greece. Greece, one half as large as New York State, is a mountainous peninsula, with so many bays, that no place in it is more than forty miles from the sea, or more than ten miles from the mountains. In its many fertile valleys, located between steep mountains and shore, people settled in the Early Stone Age.

Greek Love of Beauty. In their beautiful sunny home, these people were born with such a love for beauty, that they saw it in everything around them. They soon imagined the sun, moon, sea, and earth, were in charge of special gods. These they described as wonderfully handsome men and women, endowed with many virtues — but also with many human feelings. For Greek gods quarreled, fought, were jealous, and behaved badly in many ways. Still, the lively imagination of the Greeks made up such interesting tales about them, that people have talked about them ever since, and still read these stories with delight.

Story of Europa. Everything in the Greek world was connected with one of these tales. For instance, they told about a beautiful girl, Europa (ū-rō'pā), who, playing on the Phoenician shore, was seen by the God of the Sky who fell in love with her. He changed

himself into a white bull, so tame and gentle, that Europa sprang upon his back. To her surprise, the bull galloped off with her, and arriving at the sea,



EUROPA

Jupiter, in the guise of a bull, captures a Phoenician girl, whom he landed in a country called Europe in her honor.

plunged into its waves and landed her—not in Asia—but on a new continent, to which he gallantly gave her name Europa (Europe). This girl's brothers, sent to bring her home, one by one gave up the quest. Finally the last, Cadmus (kăd'mŭs), arrived

in Greece where he had wild adventures—one with a dragon, which you will like to read—before he built the city of Thebes.

The Story of Athens. Athens, the capital of Greece, was also founded by a Phoenician, and when the God of the Sea wanted the city to bear his name because he had brought the Phoenicians across the waters, the Goddess of Wisdom retorted that they would never have *thought* of founding a city, had she not inspired them. The God of the Sea and the Goddess of Wisdom then asked the other ten gods to decide their quarrel, so these divinities decreed the new town should bear the name of the one who bestowed on its inhabitants the most useful gift. The God of the Sea thereupon created the horse, which could be

harnessed to a war-chariot or plough, ridden, driven, and used in many ways. The Goddess of Wisdom (Ā-thē'nē) created the olive-tree, whose wood, twigs, leaves, fruit, and fruit-stones, can all be put to good use. As fruit-trees are great boons to mankind, the gods agreed her gift was the best. So the new city was called Athens and placed under Athene's protection. Living in a delightful climate and getting all they needed without much trouble, the Athenians wanted beautiful lines, harmonious colors, and sweet sounds. So they cultivated poetry, music, pottery-making, and finally, sculpture and painting. Striving to make each object they worked upon more perfect, they became great artists, and made such beautiful things that no one has since been able to surpass them.

Story of Invention of Portraiture. A pretty story claims that the Greeks invented the art of portraiture in this way. A potter had a talented young apprentice to decorate the vases he made. The potter's daughter, loving the artist, often watched him at work. One moonlight night, the young man called to announce he had just been summoned to war. As he was talking, the bright light threw his profile sharply on the wall. The girl, seeing it, seized a paint brush and quickly traced the outline of her lover's features. The next day, her father, objecting that the youth's face was not flat, filled in the outline with potter's clay, which he modelled and colored until it was lifelike! Ancient Greeks colored their statues, a few of which still bear traces of paint.

Heroic Age. The time between the founding of Thebes, Athens, Ar'gös, Mycenae (mī-sē'nē), and

Sparta (the five most famous cities in Greece), and that when the Greeks became known to other ancient people, is called the Heroic Age. If you like thrilling stories, just read those of the heroes Jā'son, Perseus (pě'r'sūs), Œdipus (ěd'ĩ-pūs), and Hercules (hě'r'kū-lēz). Theseus, the brave slayer of the Minotaur, was also one of these heroes, and had many other exciting adventures. He became King of Athens, where a temple, raised in his honor, can still be seen.

Our Debt. We owe to Greece a love of beauty, and Classic Mythology (mĩ-thŏl'ō-jĩ), which has furnished subjects for some of the finest dramas, poems, statues, and paintings in the world.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Old Greek Stories*, American Book Co.

BALDWIN, *The Golden Fleece*, American Book Co.

HAWTHORNE, *Tanglewood Tales*, *The Dragon's Teeth*.

GUERBER, *Myths of Greece and Rome*, pp. 45-48, American Book Co.

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys* (See end of Chapter 4), pp. 44-78, Ginn.

1. Where did the Greeks live? What distinguished them from other people?
2. To what does Europe owe its name?
3. Who named Athens? How was portraiture invented?
4. What is the Heroic Age? Name some heroes.

CHAPTER XV

GREEK ATHLETICS

Physical Training. The Greeks, realizing that the human body, when as perfect as God intended it to be, is most beautiful, wanted their children to be as

strong and graceful as possible. In Sparta, the law-giver Lycurgus (lī-kûr'gūs), ordered all new-born babies examined by a committee. If deformed or sickly they were not given back to their mothers, but left to die. Healthy children were brought up out of doors, on plain food, pure air and water, and plenty of exercise. At seven years of age, boys were handed over to the State to be trained as athletes and warriors. Summer and winter they wore the same garment, and slept on the ground, or on such beds as they could make from rushes. They were trained in gymnastics and sports, and had simple food, for which they often had to forage. That was because the Spartans knew their men, in war time, had to secure their own food. You see, with no roads or real means of transportation except by sea, it was difficult, not to say impossible, to feed an army. Young Spartans were taught the evil effect of too much eating or drinking, by seeing slaves surfeited (given too much food and drink) in their presence. Spartan mothers, bidding good-bye to warrior sons, used to hand them their shields, saying: "Come back with it, or on it!" That meant that a man should not drop his weapons and run like a coward, but face the foe, die, and be brought home, lying on his shield, like a hero!

Greek Games. Girls, too, were trained in gymnastics and running. Their torch races — where each girl tried to put out the other girls' lights and keep her own burning until she reached the goal — must have been very amusing. Men and boys had gymnastic tests and races, and, not content with exhibiting their skill at home, eagerly attended various Games, held in different parts of Greece, in honor of gods or heroes.

These public games, which people visited in throngs, consisted at first in displays of physical strength. But, as the Greeks became more civilized, public game-places became centers where poets recited their verses, historians read their works, orators made famous speeches, musicians played and sang, sculptors exhibited their statues, painters their pictures, and where mental as well as physical culture was encouraged in every way. Those who won prizes at these Games were awarded crowns of wild olive, or sometimes laurel, instead of any material reward, the honor of winning being considered enough.



THE FOOT RACE

An athlete wins the Olympian foot race and is acclaimed by his companions and the flute players.

Olympic Games. The greatest of all these Games, held every four years at Olympia, began in the second millennium, and were so well known, that after 776 B.C.

the Greeks and the greater part of the ancient world counted time by Olympiads (ō-līm'pī-ădz). They went on doing so until Christianity existed in all parts of the civilized world (394 A.D.). At these games the Spartans generally proved the best athletes, for they trained mainly the body, and spoke so little and briefly, that "laconic speech" still stands for brevity. Still, they practiced dancing and music, because those arts are useful to athletes and warriors. The Athenians shone mainly as poets, dramatists, historians, orators, painters, sculptors, and architects. Because the works their great men created have never been equalled, they still rank as models or classics.

Our Debt. We owe to the Greeks the first idea of systematic physical training, of public games, of classic literature, and the fine example of striving for the sake of succeeding in what we undertake, rather than for a material reward.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, pp. 44-78.

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous People*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 11-40, American Book Co.

1. Describe the Spartan training for boys and girls, and give your opinion about it.
2. When did the Greeks begin to count by Olympiads, and when did they stop?
3. What were the rewards given in the Greek games? Why were they prized?

CHAPTER XVI

EGYPT'S GLORY

The Vocal Memnon. We now return to Egypt, where a Pharaoh of the 18th dynasty erected a temple with two colossal seated statues of himself on either side of its portal. Although the temple is gone, these two statues still stand where he placed them. There are certain kinds of stone and sand which make peculiar sounds when heated by a tropical sun after being cooled by heavy dews. Because one of these statues made such sounds, people claimed it represented Mem'non, God of Dawn. When this "vocal Memnon" became silent, after it had been badly cracked by an earthquake, Egyptian priests, hiding near it, imitated its former sounds to awe visitors!

Rameses the Great. A short time after Moses' death, the greatest of the Pharaohs of the 19th dynasty, Rām'ē-sēs the Great, ruled Egypt. He became king when very young and reigned sixty years. As he was handsome, clever, rich, and powerful, his admirers and flatterers persuaded him he was a favorite of the gods, and the greatest ruler that ever lived! Sure no one could equal him, Rameses had his statues placed in the principal temples of Egypt, and scenes of his wars and triumphs carved and painted on their walls. He sent "man hunting" expeditions into Central Africa to secure negro slaves to work for him, and sorely taxed the Egyptian peasants to obtain money enough to build his temples.

Temples. The most famous of the temples Rameses rebuilt were those of Kär'nak and Luxor (lŭk'-sôr), begun by the Pharaohs of the 12th dynasty.



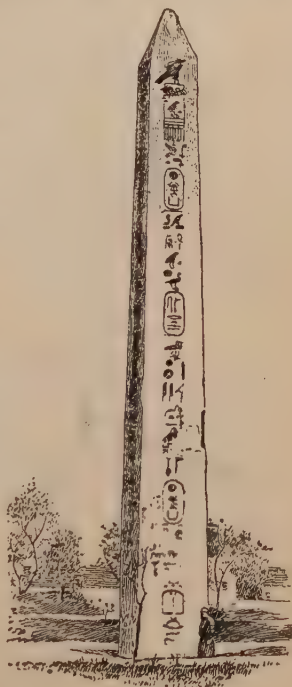
LUXOR TEMPLE

This, one of the finest Egyptian temples, measures 900 feet from back to front. The columns were painted in natural flower colors.

Seven kings had labored at different times to erect the temple of Karnak, but only five hundred years after it was begun did Rameses finish it. He added to it a throne-room, or "hall of columns," where there are one hundred and sixty-four huge pillars, built of stone sections and towering seventy feet high. The capitals (crowns of the columns), which measure sixty-five feet around, represent papyrus buds. These columns are decorated with carvings, which were once brilliantly colored. Among Rameses' many statues, is one which,

overthrown by an earthquake, has remained on the ground, because it is almost impossible to raise such a mass of stone! Rameses' mummy is now in the Museum at Cairo, and the story of how it was found is most interesting. Besides Karnak and Luxor, Egypt has many other temples in a more or less ruined condition. They are located mainly on the west bank of the Nile. There is also a very famous collection of such buildings on an island in the river, and many temples carved out of solid rock, farther up stream.

Obelisks. The Egyptians showed their skill in stone quarrying, by making slender square pillars of a single stone, and adorning them with hieroglyphic inscriptions on each of the four sides. These "öb'ē-lisks" were up to one hundred and eighty feet high, and were generally placed on either side of temple doors. They were so remarkable, that, while a few still remain in Egypt, others have been transported to Constantinople, Rome, Florence, Paris, London, and one (sixty-nine feet high) to Central Park in New York.



OBELISK

This obelisk stood when Jacob came to Egypt, and was the center of a great University, now completely destroyed.

The Phoenix. Egyptians believed that the Phoenix (fē'niks), a marvelous bird, the only one of its kind, lived many, many years. When it was about to die, it collected a heap of sweet-smelling wood. It fanned this heap into flame, and flew into the fire, where it was burned. From its ashes was born a new Phoenix, which also lived to a great age.

Our Debt. We owe to Egyptian architecture the temples of Karnak and Luxor and the obelisks; to Egyptian sculptors, the colossi of Memnon and of Rameses. Egyptian stone-work has served the world as an object lesson.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN: *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

1. Tell about the sand and stones which make a noise.
2. Describe an Egyptian Temple and obelisks.
3. Tell the fable about the Phoenix.

CHAPTER XVII

THE TROJAN WAR

The Iliad. We now come to an event so interesting, that several hundred years after it happened, a famous Greek poet, Hō'mēr, wrote an ěp'ic (heroic) poem about it, called the Il'ĩ-ăd). Parts of this poem were learned by heart in every Greek school, and the names of its heroes were household words. In the story find out why the Greeks said: "as beautiful as Helen," "as brave as a Trojan," "as fiery as Achilles

(â-kîl'ēz)," "as devoted as Pa-tro'clus," "as wise as Nes'tor," "as wily as Ulysses (ū-lîs'ēz)," and "as unfortunate as Pri'am." When you can explain these common sayings, you will know one of the most interesting stories in the world, and you will have read



GREECE AND ASIA MINOR

fragments of a poem which has served as model to poets for nearly three thousand years! Until recently, every one thought the Siege of Troy, as told in the Iliad, was merely a fairy tale. But less than fifty years ago, a rich man, who had read this story when a poor boy of ten, went to the place where Troy is said to have stood, and began to dig. He soon found traces, not of *one* but of *ten* successive cities, and discovered

that one of these was the very Troy of which Homer sang!

The Odyssey. Besides the Iliad, Homer left us another epic, the Odyssey (öd'ĩ-sĩ) (the wanderings of Ulysses), wherein he tells what happened to the Greek heroes on their way home from Troy. We learn that the Greek leader reached his home in Mycenae only to be murdered by his wife and the man she had married, thinking her first husband dead. Then the Greek leader, the female slave he had brought back from Troy, and her little child, were buried in a tomb, which was opened recently, and wherein remains of a man, woman, and child were found. Among the ashes were also a sword blade, some ornaments, a wooden doll, and thin gold masks, such as were then placed over the faces of dead princes! The brother of this leader, having recovered his runaway wife, was delayed in Egypt, where he must have admired the pyramids, temples, tombs, obelisks, and colossi. The Greek king, Ulysses, whose adventures on his way home proved most exciting, is the hero of the poem. For ten years he sailed about the Mediterranean, driven by winds and waves first to Africa and then to Sicily. There he had a blood-curdling adventure with a one-eyed giant, before he was allowed to return home, and drive away the suitors, who were trying to persuade his wife he was dead and that she should marry again.

Homer. In these two poems, Homer, the first and best of epic poets, describes the men and women of his day, their dress, houses, way of living, what they said and did, and thus gives us a complete picture of those times. His poems are so beautiful, that they

are still read with delight by every one who knows Greek, or who reads the translations of talented poets, — all of whom are proud to call themselves Homer's pupils! Poor and blind, Homer is said to have wandered from place to place, guided by a small boy, entertaining people by singing his poems to the accompaniment of his lyre (lir). After his death, seven cities claimed to be his birthplace!

Greek Jealousy. Having returned home, the many Greek kings continued to rule their separate cities, but the great trouble with Greece was, that each city wanted to be first, and was jealous of all its neighbors. This resulted in continual quarreling and much fighting.

Our Debt. We owe to Greece, Homer, the best epic poet, and his poems, the Iliad and the Odyssey. They have furnished subjects for many stories, for priceless statues and paintings, and for some of the greatest tragedies ever played.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

HAWTHORNE, *Tanglewood Tales, Circe's Palace.*

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 41-54, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Myths of Greece and Rome*, 305-336, 337-359, American Book Co.

1. What is the Iliad, and who composed it? What is it about?
2. Who composed the Odyssey? What is it about?
3. How many cities claimed to be the birthplace of Homer?

CHAPTER XVIII

GREEK REPUBLICS AND COLONIES

Athens' Last King. The Greeks believed their gods sometimes spoke to them. They called "oracle (ör'ä-k'l)," the priest or priestess who interpreted the heavenly messages, the place where they were delivered, and also the messages themselves. One famous oracle was at Delphi, where the Sun-god was worshipped. Fighting against another city, Athens once asked this oracle which party would triumph. The oracle, seldom a plain message, was: "The city whose king dies in battle will win." So the king of Athens disguised himself as a common soldier, and when the battle began, rushed forward, first of all, and was slain! The other Athenians, now sure of winning, fought with such fury, that they routed the foe, and, admiring the king who had given up his life, decided that no one should henceforth bear the title of king in Athens!

The Athenian Republic. Instead of a king, the Athenians, in a general assembly elected a magistrate, Archon (är'kōn), to govern their city. Another assembly, composed of the most influential men of their time, judged criminals. When obliged to condemn a man to death, the judges did it on a hill at night, because they felt it would be too painful for a man to be sentenced to die while the sun was shining over their beautiful city! The most important men of Athens were called aristocrats (*aristoi*) and the rest of the people the democrats (*demoi*), words we still use. At first only aristocrats held offices, but little by

little democrats also took part in public affairs. Because Athens formed the *first* republic, her people are considered *founders of the government by the people* in Europe, just as we in the United States are founders of the government by the people in America. But, we merely followed the example of the Athenians, the pioneer republicans of the world.

Great Greece. Most of the Greek city-states — except Sparta — soon followed Athens' example and formed small republics. Still, a few were ruled by aristocrats known as tyrants (tī'rǎntz). Some of these tyrants made such a bad use of their power, that tyrant and tyranny now have a hateful meaning for all liberty-loving people. The cities vied with each other in planting colonies. Some sent emigrants east, some west. Among the famous western colonies was Syracuse (sīr'ā-kūs'), in Sicily, founded in the eighth century B.C. After Syracuse, so many other colonies were founded in Sicily and Southern Italy that that region became known as "Great Greece." Among the most famous of these cities were Neapolis (nā-ä-pō-līs), (the new city, now Nā-ples), Měss-īna, Crō-tōn with its strong man Mī-lō, and Sybaris (sī'bār-īs), whose rich man could not feel a crumpled rose-leaf beneath him without howling with pain! These colonists carried to Italy their native craving for beauty, and all the arts and sciences known in their home town. They so enriched Great Greece, that strangers still go there to admire what is left of the buildings, statues, paintings, pottery, jewelry, etc., due to these Greek colonies.

Our Debt. To Athens we owe the first example of

government by the people, the first popular assemblies for political purposes, and the first real jury. To the Greek colonization of Italy we owe the introduction of Greek arts and sciences into South Central Europe, whence it was to spread westward.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Old Stories of the East*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 81-82, American Book Co.

1. Why did Athens' last king sacrifice himself?
2. Where were Neapolis, Messina, Croton, Sybaris?

CHAPTER XIX

KING SOLOMON

The Ark of the Covenant. Not very long after Jason set out from Greece for the Golden Fleece, and about the time the 20th dynasty gave Egypt wonderful commercial prosperity, Saul, David, and Solomon ruled at Jerusalem. Although David wanted to build a Temple for God in Jerusalem, to hold the Ark of the Covenant (kūv'ē-nānt), he refrained from doing so when told that this honor was reserved for Solomon, his son.

Solomon's Temple. You know how this young king, called upon to govern the Israelites, and given his choice between Wisdom, Power, and Wealth, implored God to make him wise enough to govern rightly. God not only gave Solomon the wisdom he asked for, but bestowed upon him such power and wealth, that he proved the greatest of Jewish kings. He conquered

the most people, extended his rule farthest, and sent sailors to Africa to bring back gold and other treasures. Having these, and a fund collected by David, Solomon hired King Hī'ram of Phoenicia, the cleverest architect of his day, to build the Temple of Jerusalem. The Phoenicians had become such wonderful workmen, that all ancient people sought their aid in building temples or palaces. Hiram made the plans for the temple, had stones as big as trolley-cars brought from the quarries ready cut, had trees felled on Mt. Lēb'ā-nōn and dressed on the spot for rafters, and metal columns, vessels, and hangings of Tyrian purple manufactured in his native city. So exact were his plans, that the materials, when brought to Jerusalem, were put together, and "no sound of hammer or saw was heard!" Hiram is also said to have built the great Temple of the Sun at Baalbec (bāl'bēk), some of whose stones are three times as large as freight cars!

Two Kingdoms. Solomon's reign — the Hebrew People's Golden Age — ended sadly. Under his son, his great realm was divided into the Kingdoms of Jū'dah and Israel. Two tribes only remained faithful to Solomon's successors, who reigned at Jerusalem. The ten other tribes selected a ruler, and made Sa-mā'rī-a their capital. Each of these two Jewish kingdoms boasted some twenty good and bad kings, who often warred against each other. Many interesting stories are told of them in Bible history, as well as of the Prophets who lived then.

Our Debt. We owe to the Golden Age of the Hebrew People several books of the Bible — Proverbs,

Ecclesiastes (ě-klē-zī-as'tēz), the Song of Solomon — and what still remains of the Temple at Jerusalem, whose corner-stone is known as “the Place of Wailing.” To that time we also owe what is left of the Temple of the Sun at Baalbec.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Chosen People*, pp. 149-154, American Book Co.

1. Name the architect of the Temple at Jerusalem and describe the building of it.
2. After Solomon, into how many kingdoms was the land divided?
3. Where did Solomon's wealth come from?

CHAPTER XX

THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Story of Dido. While the Jewish prophets were trying to make their kings repent of their sins and do right, and while Jō'nāh, according to the story, was warning the Assyrians that Nineveh, their beautiful city, would soon be destroyed, Dī' dō, a widowed queen of Tyre, is said to have fled with her treasures to Africa. At the point where the African coast lies nearest Sicily, she begged the natives to sell her land. They refused until she offered a big price for as much earth as an ox-hide would enclose. Thinking this meant only a few shovelfuls of dirt, the people accepted her offer, but were sorely dismayed when the ox-hide, cut into narrow strips, enclosed a large space! Here

Queen Dido is said to have built Carthage about eight hundred years before Christ.

Story of Aeneas. In the beginning of the Christian Era, the Romans, who greatly admired Homer's *Iliad*, wished they too could trace their ancestry to Troy. To gratify this longing, their poet Vĩr'gĩl produced the *Aeneid* (ē-nē'ĩd). It contains the story of Aeneas, a Trojan prince, son of the Goddess of Beauty, who, while Troy was burning, escaped with his father, son, and household gods. The poem tells how, after long sailing, Aeneas was driven by a tempest to Carthage, where he told Dido about the siege of Troy. Aeneas remained with Dido a whole year; then, obeying his gods, sailed away secretly, and Dido, unable to live without him, killed herself. Aeneas soon arrived in Italy, where, after many adventures and hard fighting, he married a princess and settled in Latium (lā'shĩ-ũm). He, his children and grandchildren, are said to have founded cities in Central Italy.



ROMULUS AND REMUS

Story of Romulus and Remus. Many years after Aeneas' death, one of his descendants was a Ves'tāl, — that is to say, a priestess, who promised not to marry

until she had served the Goddess of the Hearth thirty years. This priestess, forgetting her promise, secretly married the God of War and had twin sons. The priests buried the priestess alive (the usual punishment for breaking Vestal vows), and exposed the twins, Rē'mūs and Rōm'ū-lūs, on the bank of the Tiber. There, a female wolf found them, and her cubs being dead, nursed the babes until they were adopted by a shepherd. When grown, Remus and Romulus discovered their origin. Learning their grandfather was a prisoner, they set out at the head of a band of brave youths, killed the usurper (ū-zûrp'ēr) (the man occupying another's place), replaced their grandfather on the throne, and went on in quest of further adventures. Coming to seven hills on the Tiber, the twins decided to found a new kingdom. While quarreling over the name of their future capital, Romulus killed his brother Remus, so he became sole founder, and first king, of Rome (753 B.C.).

Our Debt. We owe to Virgil the Aeneid, the third great epic of the world, with its interesting story of the founding of Carthage and Rome. It also gives an outline of Roman History down to the beginning of the Christian Era.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous People*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Myths of Greece and Rome*, pp. 360-377, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 11-27, American Book Co.

1. Tell the story of the Founding of Carthage.
2. Tell the story of Æneas.
3. Tell the story of Remus and Romulus. Why did Rome have a wolf and two little children as standard?

FOUR CITIES RISE; TWO ARE DESTROYED

CHAPTER XXI

THE END OF NINEVEH AND BABYLON

Israel in Captivity. We now go back to Assyria. By this time the Assyrians were so numerous and well trained, provided with such fine war-engines, battering rams, rolling towers, and stone-slingers (catapults), and were so well protected by fine armor, that they conquered all Western Asia. In spite of the Israelites' brave resistance they too had to pay tribute to the Assyrians. Because they rebelled they were carried off to Assyria as captives (722 B.C.)! The ten tribes of Israel, scattered here and there, worked hard for their conquerors, and mourned for their former homes. They must have all died in Assyria, or become Assyrians, since no trace of the "Lost Tribes of Israel" has been found.

The Medes and Persians. On the other side of the eastern Assyrian mountain-barrier were the Medes (mēdz), who progressed wonderfully as long as they worked hard and lived plainly. But, on growing rich, they became lazy and weak. On the same side of the mountains, but farther south, were the Persians, simple, straightforward, hard-working people, noted as truth-tellers. Cyrus (sī'rūs), son of a Persian king and a Mē-dī'ān princess, was sent, at ten years of age,

to visit his maternal grandfather. He was amazed to see him dressed in long robes, living in a palace, eating rich food and drinking strong wines. When the grandfather proposed to dress his grandson as richly, and feast him at his table, young Cyrus refused, saying long robes would prevent his running and jumping, and rich food would make him fat and sleepy-headed. Besides, if he drank wine he might act as foolishly as his grandfather did when drunk! After this visit,



A HAWK-EYED DIVINITY

This figure was excavated at Nineveh. It represents Ashur, Chief of the Gods, holding a pine cone and a basket.

Cyrus returned unchanged to his simple home and plain living, and became in time an able man. When his father and grandfather died, he ruled both Medes and Persians, who believed laws could never be changed or annulled. Then, raising a large army, Cyrus conquered the tribes east and north of him, and next started out to enlarge his lands toward the west.

The Fall of Nineveh.

Meantime, the Babylonians had suffered greatly from the cruelty of the Assyrians, although still governed by a king of their own dynasty. With the aid of the Medes and Per-

sians, they now attacked Assyria with such fury that they ended its glory and power. Nineveh's last king perished in the flames of his palace, and its temples, walls, and houses were pulled down. So total was the destruction of this fine city (606 B.C.), that a Greek historian, seeing its ruins two hundred years later, vainly asked its name from the nomads of the region.

The Hanging Gardens. After the fall of Nineveh, Babylon again became the center of the ancient world. Its most famous king was Nebuchadnezzar (něb-ū-kād-něž'ār). To please his wife, who came from the eastern mountains and longed to see something besides a flat plain, he had tier upon tier of terraces built, planted with trees and flowers, and watered by many fountains. These were the famous "Hanging Gardens of Babylon," another of the Seven Wonders of the ancient world. Caravans crossing the plain toward Babylon, saw these gardens, towering so high up in the air in the early morning fog, that they seemed to hang in space! No wonder, therefore, that they were talked of far and near.

Nebuchadnezzar. Wonderful stories are told of this King Nebuchadnezzar. Pictures carved on the walls of his ruined palaces, show that some of these stories were true. He was a great warrior, and besides besieging and ruining Tyre, he twice besieged Jerusalem. He also burned down Solomon's Temple, of which only part of the walls now remain, razed the fortifications of Jerusalem, and carried its inhabitants captive to Babylon. There they remained in bondage seventy years, mourning for their old home. Among those Jewish captives were Daniel and his companions, such

promising youths that they were brought up to serve as "king's helpers." Read the Bible stories of Nebuchadnezzar's Golden Statue, of his madness, when for seven years he acted like a beast and ate grass, and of Daniel's explanation of the royal vision!



THE LION OF BABYLON

Nebuchadnezzar built a wonderful palace. Excavations have shown a procession of glazed lions, leading to and from the palace.

The Writing on the Wall. A successor of this haughty Nebuchadnezzar, Bel-shazz'ar, was giving a great banquet in Babylon, when a hand wrote on the wall words no one but Daniel could read and translate. These words warned King Belshazzar that he had been "weighed and found wanting, and that his kingdom would pass away from him." Although much impressed by this warning, Belshazzar continued feasting. Meantime, Cyrus and his army secretly approaching, turned aside the waters of a canal which

passed through the city, and walking along the canal-bed, entered Babylon in spite of its well-guarded walls and tightly-closed gates! Thus the Persians surprised the Babylonians feasting. "That night Belshazzar and all his courtiers were slain." The city was sacked and partly ruined, and Babylonia, Chaldea, Assyria, and all Mesopotamia came under Persian rule (538 B.C.).

Our Debt. Our debt is found in the recovered art treasures from Nineveh, and the Persian example of simplicity, thrift, and truth-telling; also the Hanging Gardens, and the Bible narrative of Nebuchadnezzar and Belshazzar.

Read the book of Daniel.
READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Chosen People*, pp. 187-193, American Book Co.

1. What became of the Israelites?
2. Who were the Medes and Persians, what peculiarity had their laws, and which city did they ruin?
3. What were the Hanging Gardens? Why were they erected?

CHAPTER XXII

A JOURNEY AND THREE WISE MEN

Around Africa. Babylonian sailors and traders doubtless heard in Egypt the wonderful tale told by some Phoenicians, whom a Pharaoh sent to explore the African coast. Sailing through the Strait of Bab-el-mandeb, these explorers steered southward. Three times, when their provisions neared an end, they

landed, sowed wheat, and set out again only when they had harvested enough grain to supply them with bread for a year. While sailing along the African shore, they traded with the natives whenever they could, and kept a record of the interesting things they saw and heard. Presently they noted with surprise that the sun, which set at their right when they left Egypt, was now setting at their left! Three years after their departure, they again reached Egypt, by way of the Pillars of Hercules (Strait of Gibraltar) and the Mediterranean. Thus, you see, about two thousand years before Vasco da Gama sailed around Africa from west to east, the Egyptians found the road from east to west! This circumnavigation of Africa, the longest sea-journey undertaken before Christ, was so completely forgotten, that people of Columbus' time thought it *impossible* to sail around Africa.

The Founding of Byzantium At the time when Nineveh was destroyed, the Greek city-states, like huge hives, sent out swarms of people to found colonies. The sea being so near every city-state, and ships being the only real means of transportation, each colony sailed away from the mother-city, bearing sacred fire from the home altar. Early in Greek history, daughter-colonies located on the islands and along the coasts of the Aegean Sea, the Sea of Mär'mō-rā, and the Black Sea. One of these departing colonies asked the Oracle of Dēl'phī where to settle, and was told: "Opposite the city of the blind!" Sailing off at a venture, the emigrants arrived at the place where the Bosphorus (bōs'pō-rūs) is so narrow you can see both its shores. Gazing at a Greek colony, already established on the

southern shore, and perceiving the beautiful "Golden Horn" directly opposite, one of the passengers cried: "Those people were blind to settle on that side instead of on this." "That was what the oracle meant!" the colonists exclaimed, and landed and founded Byzantium (bǐ-zǎn'shǐ-ŭm) — now Constantinople — in the seventh century before Christ. Emigrating Greeks never forgot Hel'las (Greece), and they taught the people in their new home all they could of Greek religion, discoveries, physical training, and art. They also learned all they could from the people near them and from passing travelers. Thus the Greeks benefited by all the inventions and discoveries of the people who lived before them, and often improved on what their predecessors had done. Unfortunately, however, knowing how clever they were, they considered themselves superior to those who had not had their advantages and opportunities, so were inclined to be boastful, to make fun of others, and to term "barbarians" all who did not speak Greek!

Marseilles. Six years after Nineveh fell, a Greek ship-captain landed in Gaul (gôl) (now France), and was invited by a local chief to a feast given to unmarried men. At the end of the meal, the chief's daughter came in with a cup of wine, silently inspected one man after another, and finally offered the cup to the stranger. He accepted it, and learned, to his surprise and delight, that the beautiful girl had chosen him for her husband! He not only married her, but settling down there, induced his countrymen to join him in founding the city of Marseilles (mär-sälz') (600 B.C.), now France's greatest seaport on the

Mediterranean. The country, where the Greek colony thus settled, had been occupied by men of the early Stone Age and had been invaded by many wandering tribes. Some of these, dark-haired and swarthy of skin, settled near the Pyrenees, others by the seashore; but the last arrivals, the yellow-haired, blue-eyed Gauls, spread all over the country.

Zoroaster. Cyrus and the Persians brought to Babylon the religion taught by their sage, Zō-rō-ās'tēr, which is written in the Zend A-vēs'tā, a Persian Bible. They worshipped the earth, air, and fire, and believed that good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, would assure them immortality and Heaven. In Persia and India there are still many Parsees or followers of Zoroaster.

Story of Buddha. Besides Parsees, there are some four hundred million worshippers of Buddha (bōōd'ā) in Asia, so you should know a little about him. Born a prince in Northern India (600 B.C.), Buddha was so wise that he is called "he to whom truth is known." At twenty-nine Buddha forsook home and a lovely wife, to become a monk in a begging brotherhood. For six years he studied the early Hindu religion, (Brā'man-is'm), fasted, prayed, and resisted the temptations of a demon (evil spirit). One day, seated under a bō-tree (which the Hindus consider the exact center of the earth), he discovered *why* man was born, and thereafter traveled through India, preaching his religion. Although Buddha left no writings, his disciples wrote his life and teachings, which form the Buddhist Sacred Book. They have continued his missionary work to this day. In the first century of our

era, the Emperor of China made Buddhism one of the three State Religions. Since then, the Buddhist religion has spread from India to Ceylon, and from China to Korea and Japan.

Confucius. Just about the time when Solon (see next chapter) died, was born Confucius (kǒn-fū-shī-ūs), the Chinese sage, or teacher. He and Lao-Tze (lǎ'ō-tzû') — another sage of that time — are founders of two Chinese religions (Confucianism and Taoism). These two great teachers believed in family affection, virtuous living, and respect for the gods of Heaven, which the Chinese had worshipped nearly two thousand years. Confucius is also the founder of Chinese classic literature, and author of the “*don't*” Golden Rule: “What ye would not that others do unto you, do ye not to them.” Christ, who lived about five hundred years later, is author of the “*do*” Golden Rule: “Do unto others as ye would that they should do unto you.”

Our Debt. We owe to Egypt the route around Africa. To Greece we owe the founding of Byzantium and Marseilles. The Persians contributed Zoroaster and the Zend Avesta, India contributed Buddha's teachings, and the Chinese those of Confucius.



CONFUCIUS

The most famous sage of China (c. 557–478 B.C.), founder of Confucianism.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn.

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Chosen People*, pp. 206-211, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 21, American Book Co.

1. Tell about the first voyage around Africa.

2. Tell the stories of the founding of Byzantium and Marseilles. Where are they?

3. Who was Zoroaster, and what is his book called?

4. Who were Buddha, Confucius, and Lao-Tze and what people practice their religions?

CHAPTER XXIII

SOLON'S JOURNEYS

Athenian Lawgivers. An Athenian lawgiver made such severe laws, that even small crimes were punished by death. Declaring such laws "written in blood," the people bade wise Solon (sō'lŭn), a descendant of their last king, change them. Solon did so, and decreed that no Athenian should be a slave or own more than a certain extent of land. All the citizens, in a popular assembly, elected their Archon (president), and the four hundred members of their Senate. Lacking newspapers, Athenians discussed public affairs in the market-place, and thus became overfond of making and listening to speeches. Still, trained from early childhood in public speaking, the Athenians produced the finest orators ever heard. Every citizen took part in public affairs, and those who remained neutral in civil strife lost their citizenship.

Solon Visits Croesus. Wishing his new code fairly tested, Solon made the Athenians promise to obey his laws ten years. Then he traveled off to see if he could find better ones anywhere else to bring back to them. Among other places he visited Sār'dīs, in Lydia (līd'ī-ā). Mī'dās, king of that land, had long before discovered particles of gold in the rivers of his kingdom. He gathered so much precious metal that it was rumored his very touch turned everything into gold! One of his successors, Croesus (krē'sūs), was reputed so wealthy, that the expression "as rich as Croesus," still forms a part of every civilized language. Liking to be admired and envied, Croesus exhibited his treasures to Solon, asking whether the sage did not consider him the most fortunate of men? As Solon knew riches alone cannot make a man happy, and that no one knows what the future holds in store, he wisely answered: "Call no man happy until he dies!" Doubtless he showed more interest in Ē'sōp, a deformed slave, than in all Croesus' wealth. This Esop had a wonderful talent for remembering stories, and for making up clever fables, such as "The Lion and the Mouse," "The Wolf and the Lamb," "The Fox and the Grapes," and "The Stomach and the Limbs." He is master of all great fable-writers and no one has surpassed him to this day.

What Solon Heard in Egypt. Solon finally reached Egypt, where he had long talks with the priests. He was amazed to learn that Egypt boasted a history centuries longer than Athens. But the Egyptian sages admitted that although "the Athenians were mere children" in comparison with the Egyptians, they

themselves were children compared with people who once lived in Atlantis! This was said to be a continent between Europe and America, where civilization was so far advanced long before the Trojan War that people built glass houses and were able to fly from place to place! Their navigators are reported to have taught many useful things to the early tribes along the Mediterranean and other coasts. After a great storm and earthquake, ships returning to Atlantis found no trace of the country, save a few of its highest mountain-peaks sticking up out of the tossing, muddy waves, and forming the Atlantic Islands! Thus Atlantis, its wonders, and some six million people, vanished forever.

Our Debt. We owe to Greece Solon's laws, providing for justice without being too severe, the belief that all citizens should help govern, the first republic, the democratic example set by Athens and followed by most of the Greek cities, and the Fables of Esop.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories*, American Book Co.

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn.

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 90-92, American Book Co.

1. Who was Solon, what did he do, where did he go, whom did he meet?

2. What did he hear in Egypt?

3. Tell what you know about Atlantis.

CHAPTER XXIV

SOME NOTED KINGS

Cyrus Defeats Croesus. We now go back to Cyrus, who, after becoming master of Babylon, warred against Croesus. Wishing to know how this war would end, Croesus asked the Oracle of Delphi, who answered: "A great empire will be destroyed." Sure this meant Cyrus' empire, Croesus fought bravely, only to be beaten. He was about to be killed by a Persian soldier, when his little tongue-tied son, making a violent effort, cried out plainly: "Soldier, don't kill Croesus!" The astonished soldier led Croesus captive to Cyrus, who ordered him burned alive. Just as the Persians were setting fire to Croesus' pyre, he exclaimed: "Solon, Solon, you were right!" Curious to know the meaning of these words, Cyrus ordered the fire put out, and the captive again brought before him. After hearing Croesus' account of Solon's visit, Cyrus, whose wrath had had time to cool, decided his prisoner should henceforth live in Persia and advise him.

The Eye and Ear of the King. Being master of Western Asia, Cyrus took wise measures to govern it properly. He and the next Persian kings divided their empire into Provinces ruled by governors, or former kings. To make sure no sūb-ô'r'dī-nāte (person under them) plotted against them, the Persian rulers placed in each province officers called the "Eye of the King," and the "Ear of the King," to report all they saw and heard. While in Babylon, Cyrus decided to send the Jews back to Jerusalem (536 B.C.) to rebuild its walls

and Temple, and replace the Ark and the Holy Vessels in the Holy of Holies. But, before this work was completed, Cyrus died, and his son, Cambyses (kām-bī'sēz), stopped it. This Cambyses conquered Egypt by hurling cats (which were sacred in Egypt) over the walls of the cities he was besieging. Such lack of respect for their gods, and the fact that he also stabbed an Apis-Bull, made the Egyptians rise up in such wrath that they may have had a hand in his murder.

A King made by a Horse. After Cambyses, the Persians were governed, not by descendants of Cyrus the Great, but by one of the lords of the court. To decide which among them should reign, five lords rode out to hunt, after arranging that the one whose horse neighed first should be king. Believing that the gods "help him who helps himself," one of these lords, Dā-rī'ūs, told his groom to hide the mate of the horse he rode in the bushes near the road. Of course Darius' horse greeted his hidden mate with a loud whinny! Thus, in Persia, a horse's neigh made a king, who ruled over a great empire and rebuilt Babylon!

Our Debt. We learn how Persian kings governed a huge empire, how Cyrus made his conquests, of his son's shortcomings, and of Darius' kingship.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

"Stories of the Ancient World" (Reprint from *St. Nicholas*).
BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories*, American Book Co.

1. Who defeated Croesus? How was his life spared?
2. What was the "eye" and what was the "ear" of the king?
3. What king owed his crown to a horse? How?

PERSIAN AND SPARTAN WARS

CHAPTER XXV

GREECE AND THE PERSIANS

Sardis Burned. Not content with ruling most of Western Asia and Egypt, Darius longed to extend his conquest to Europe. For that reason he eagerly sought a pretext to attack the Greeks. The Greek cities in Asia Minor (*Mī-lē'tūs*, Ephesus (*ěf'e-sūs*), etc.), resenting the Persian conquests, finally burned *Sār'dīs*, and ridiculed the "barbarian" Darius. He, therefore, seized this excuse to conquer them, compelled them to pay him tribute, and swore he would punish the Athenians and Spartans for helping their friends in Asia.

Darius' Demand. Darius' ambassadors began by haughtily summoning both Athenians and Spartans to deliver "land and water" to their master! Accustomed to freedom and self-government, the Athenians paid no heed. But the Spartans angrily cast the Persian ambassadors into a well, bidding them find earth and water there! This insult hastened Darius' invasion of Greece by way of the *Hěl'lēs-pōnt* (Dardanelles) and Thrāce. Then only the Spartans realized they had done wrong, for an ambassador's person is sacred. So, two of their young men went to offer their lives to Darius, in exchange for those of the slain. But, although Darius admired their courage and pa-

triotism, he nevertheless determined to punish Greece and conquer Europe.

Marathon. Exposed, first of all, to Darius' attack, the Athenians sent a runner to Sparta, to beg for aid. The Spartans replied they could not start before the moon was full, without offending their gods. The runner raced back to Athens with this message. Then, arming hastily, he hurried with the Athenians and a few allies to Mă'r'a-thŏn. There, fighting for freedom, a small force routed Darius' huge army (490 B.C.)! In spite of his exhaustion after this hard-won battle, the same young soldier ran back to Athens, to announce this triumph, and fell down dead, gasping: "Victory!" Poems have been written about him, and athletes still strive to-day in "Marathon Races," or severe tests of a man's power of endurance. This battle is memorable chiefly because it shows what a patriotic democracy, where *all* the citizens are ready to do their duty, can accomplish, even if opposed by a king's large armies. At Marathon, the Athenians saved Europe from becoming a part of the Persian Empire, besides assuring their individual and national independence.

Xerxes' Preparations. To have been whipped at Marathon by a small city-state, which did not even boast a king, was a bitter pill for Darius to swallow. So he was gathering together a new and larger army to punish Greece, when he died. His son, Xerxes (zŭrk'sēz), just as anxious as his father to take revenge, continued collecting this host, but, fearing lest his anger cool, ordered a servant to call after every meal: "Master, remember the Athenians!"

The Story of Esther. While waiting for an army, Xerxes (the *Ā-hās-ū-ē'rūs* of the Bible) is said to have divorced his queen who disobeyed him, and chosen Esther as second wife, not knowing she was a Jewess. His prime minister, hating the Jews, soon persuaded Xerxes to publish a decree ordering them all murdered on a certain day. As this was one of those "laws of the Medes and Persians" which could not be changed, Queen Esther would have perished with her people, had she not risked her life to save them, as is thrillingly told in the "Book of Esther" in the Bible.

Our Debt. We owe to the Athenians the first example of a small republic successfully resisting a huge empire to preserve its independence. To the Jews of that time we owe the Book of Esther, which is part of the Old Testament.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 108-110, 110-114, 119-131, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Chosen People*, pp. 216-221, American Book Co.

1. Which Greek city in Asia Minor was burned? What did Darius demand of the Greeks? What does "Marathon" mean to you?
2. What preparations did Xerxes make?
3. Tell the story of Esther and state where it is found.

CHAPTER XXVI

THE AGE OF PERICLES

Thermopylae. Ten years after Marathon, Xerxes crossed the Hellespont, on a bridge of boats, after reviewing the biggest army assembled until our days. He was met at the "Gates of Thermopylae (thēr-mōp'ī-lē) (a narrow pass between mountain and sea), by a small force of Greek allies and the Spartan warriors under their king, Lē-ōn'ī-dās. There, the huge Persian army was held at bay, until a Greek traitor revealed a path by which the enemy could get to the rear of the brave defenders of Greece. Trapped by foes before and behind, the Spartans bade their allies flee and died to a man at their post!

Salamis. Meantime, the Oracle of Delphi had bidden the distressed Athenians "trust in their wooden walls," advice which their brave general Themistocles (thē-mīs'tō-klēz) interpreted to mean their ships. He therefore persuaded the Athenian women and children to flee to the Peloponnesus (pěl-ō-pō-nē'sūs), which could be defended at the Isthmus of Corinth (kōr'-īnth). Then, manning the fleet he had prepared during the past ten years, Themistocles awaited Xerxes' onslaught in the Bay of Sāl'a-mīs. As nothing now prevented Xerxes' march southward, he swept on triumphantly. After ruining Athens, he had his throne set up on a rocky height, so he could watch his huge fleet defeat the small one of the Greeks! But, to his dismay, his ships were destroyed before his very eyes! The next year one of his armies was wiped out,

and another fleet wrecked. His great expedition having thus failed, Xerxes withdrew to Persia, where, while collecting new troops, he embellished his chief cities (Susa (sōō'sà), Ecbatana (ĕk-băt'ă-nà), and Pēr-sĕp'ō-lis) with wonderful palaces, beneath whose ruins great art treasures have recently been discovered. He was murdered before he could crush Greece.

The League of Delos. Meantime, expecting further Persian attacks, the Athenians, who had suffered the greatest loss, induced other Greek cities to contribute sums of money, which were kept in the Temple of Apollo on the island of Dē'lōs. Athens was president of this society, and as the towns preferred giving money, to men and ships, Athens did most of the work. This, first union of the Greek cities — for anything except athletic sports — is known as the Dē'li-ăn Confederacy (kōn-fĕd'ēr-ă-sĭ).

Athens Rebuilt. Head of the Delian Confederacy Athens soon transferred the treasure of Delos to her own keeping. Then, perceiving the successors of Xerxes were not strong enough to carry war beyond Asia Minor, the Athenians left the fighting to the Spartans, and devoted their energies and money to rebuilding their city, and erecting long walls to connect it with its seaport, the Piraeus (pī-rĕ'ūs). This work was done under the direction of Themistocles and of Pericles (pĕr'ĭ-klĕz), the cleverest statesman of his time. Thanks to Pericles' eloquent persuasions, every man, woman, child, and slave in Athens worked at rebuilding the city, and thus helped to transform a rubbish heap into the finest city in Greece. This was remarkable, because manual labor on the part of the

Athenians had become unusual, since slaves were so cheap (some cost eight cents) that even the poorest citizen had servants.

The Parthenon. On the Acropolis (â-kröp'ô-lis), or fortress hill of Athens, Pericles bade the architect Īc-tī'nus, build the Pär'thē-nōn, a temple to Athene.



THE ACROPOLIS

The fortress hill of Athens, crowned by the Parthenon, begun by Ictinus, under Pericles, and ruined in 1687.

This temple, the most beautiful example of Greek architecture, remained whole nearly two thousand years. It was reached by broad flights of steps and wide porticoes, and was decorated by bas-reliefs and statues by Phidias (fīd'ī-ās), the greatest sculptor in the world. The Athenians, who were proverbially ungrateful to their great men, and banished one after another under silly pretexts, declared Phidias had offended the gods by putting his own and Pericles' por-

traits on the shield of Athene! For that reason, Phidias was thrust into a dark, damp prison, where he died.

The Olympian Jupiter. Among Phidias' masterpieces was Jupiter's wonderful statue of gold, ivory, and jewels, for the temple at Olympia. We are told Phidias prayed the God of the Sky to grant him a



OLYMPIAN ZEUS TEMPLE

In view of the Parthenon was the Temple of Olympian Zeus, with its noble Corinthian columns.

sign if satisfied with his work. Immediately a flash of lightning and peal of thunder marked Jupiter's approval! This statue, one of the Seven Wonders of the ancient world, stood in place as long as the Olympic Games were celebrated. Then it was transported to Constantinople, and later on destroyed by barbarians to obtain the gold and jewels.

Greek Columns. All Greek temples and porticoes were adorned with some of the most beautiful columns the world has ever seen. Greek columns were very different from the massive Egyptian, or squatty Assyrian columns. They were taller, more slender, regu-

larly grooved, and surmounted by more graceful capitals, or crowns. Countless copies of Greek columns and capitals can be found in our country, for no improvement has been devised in that line since the time of Pericles. The plainest and oldest capitals used in Greece were Dōr'ic. Ī-ōn'ic capitals were adorned with symmetrical (sĭ-mĕt'rĭ-kāl) coils on either side,



PORCH OF THE MAIDENS

One of the porches of the Temple of Victory (the Erechtheum) standing on one side of the Acropolis.

and the Corinthian capitals were formed by gracefully curving leaves. A legend states that an architect was anxiously trying to invent a third style of capital, when his baby daughter died. Her sorrowing nurse set her basketful of toys on her grave. Visiting this place one day, the father saw an acanthus (ā-kăn'thŭs), springing out of the soil beneath the basket, and curling its graceful leaves all around it. This gave him just the hint he needed to create the Corinthian capital! The Greeks also used statues of beautiful maidens instead of columns because in all Eastern countries women bear heavy weights on their heads. Such statues are called caryatids (kări-ăt'ĭdz), and those which support the porch of the Temple of Victory, on the Acropolis, are considered particularly fine.

Our Debt. We owe to the Greeks inspiring ex-

amples of courage, patriotism, and self-sacrifice, and the first idea of a League of States or Nations. We also owe to their labor some of the finest temples, porches, columns, statues, and paintings that have ever been seen. They are the inventors of the columns and porches which surround our country houses.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn.

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories*, American Book Co.

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 131-136, 146-152, American Book Co.

1. What happened at Thermopylae and at Salamis?
2. What was the League at Delos and how was Athens rebuilt?
3. Describe the Parthenon, Olympian Zeus, and the three kinds of Greek columns.

CHAPTER XXVII

THE AGE OF PERICLES (*Continued*)

Athens' Great Writers. The Age of Pericles is the Golden Age of Greek art and literature. It was then Homer's poems were written down, and that Greek poets wrote the first plays, — tragedies and comedies. These were given in open-air theaters, hollowed out at the base of the Acropolis. These dramas were about Prometheus (prō-mē'thūs) and the gift of fire, Mē-dē'ā and Jason, Œdipus and his woes, Āg-ă-mēm'-nōn's tragic end, and other famous Greek stories. Those which have come down to us are still read with admiration, and serve as models for our dramatists.

Then, too, lived the "Father of History" (Hē-rōd'ō-tūs), who, like Solon, visited the greater part of the ancient world, and reported many things about it. He was a friend of Pericles, and at the Olympian Games read aloud chapters of his history, which were eagerly listened to by the boy Thucydides (thū-sīd'ī-dēz), the historian of the next Greek war. It is said that during the "Age of Pericles," "Athens gave birth to more great men — poets, artists, statesmen, and philosophers — than all the world besides has produced in any period of equal length." Samples of their masterpieces in art and literature still exist, and have served as object lessons to the world for nearly twenty-five hundred years. Everywhere you can see casts and pictures of the Greek statues, and Greek books have been translated into every civilized language. These works belong to the world's classics, and as such, are treasures handed down to us. They have had so great a share in educating people, that countless Greek words form part of every modern language, words which are used every day.

Pericles's Friends. Pericles encouraged the clever men of his time to assemble at his house, for he was anxious to hear what they could tell of their work, discoveries, travels, and thoughts. There, a philosopher explained what he had found out about the sun, moon, and stars, the rainbow and the wind, and the way in which sound travels. But, what seemed unbelievable, even to the most learned Greeks, was his assurance that the sun was larger than the Peloponnesus; and that the earth was round!

The Plague. Toward the end of Pericles' career,

when Athens was at the height of its beauty and renown, Greece was visited by the plague (plāg) (an epidemic brought from the East by the Persian armies). Because people did not know how to stop it, it spread rapidly throughout the ancient world. Although Pericles' family died of it, he went on, unselfishly caring for the sick and dying, a work in which many of his countrymen helped him. Among these was the famous doctor, Hippocrates (hĭ-pŏk'ra-tēz), known as "Father of Medicine." When offered a fortune to go and heal the Persians, he proudly replied he preferred to use his skill for the benefit of his countrymen, even if they could not pay him! He founded a wonderful school of medicine, and made his students take what is still known as the Hippocratic (hĭp-ŏ-krăt'ĭk) oath, whereby doctors promise to use their skill and knowledge to save lives and help wherever they can.

Our Debt. We owe to the Greeks of the Age of Pericles the preservation of Homer's poems, the art remains, the first real theater and plays, histories, medical schools, many beginnings of science and philosophy, most of the Greek classics and the example of Hippocrates.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories*, American Book Co.

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 92-4, 151-152, 155-157, American Book Co.

1. Can you name some of Athens' great writers?
2. Who were Pericles' friends?
3. What was the Plague? Who fought it?

CHAPTER XXVIII

ALCIBIADES

Alcibiades. Before Pericles died, the jealousy, which has always existed between Athens and Sparta, resulted in the Peloponnesian War, which lasted twenty-seven years. One of its heroes was Alcibiades (ăl-sī-bī'a-dēz), a fatherless aristocrat, brought up by a doting mother. Because his uncle Pericles was the



SOCRATES AND ALCIBIADES

The philosopher taught Alcibiades, son of a doting mother, but was not able to change his pleasure-loving nature.

most important man in Athens, the lad lorded it over everybody. Still, he was so intelligent, that even his uncle's famous visitors liked to talk to him and teach him. Thus Alcibiades became the most accomplished,

as well as the handsomest, of Athens' young men. His popularity was increased by triumphs at the Olympian Games, and by bravery in war. There, his life was once saved by Socrates (sōk'ra-tēz), a stone-cutter, and the greatest philosopher the world has ever known. Although Socrates and Alcibiades became friends, and the latter learned a great deal through the philosopher's clever questions, his vain, pleasure-loving nature remained unchanged, and he continued to listen to the many flatterers who always surround a man of wealth.

Greek Colonies in Italy. Although Athens had been head of Greece for fifty-nine years (since Marathon), her glory had begun to fade even before the outbreak of the war with Sparta. Ten years later a peace was made, which so angered Alcibiades, that he made use of all his eloquence and popularity to persuade the Athenians to renew the war under his leadership by attacking Syracuse, in Sicily, one of Sparta's allies.

The Expedition to Syracuse. The night before sailing for Syracuse, Alcibiades entertained disorderly guests. When the statues of the boundary god were found broken on the morrow, Alcibiades' enemies accused him of this crime. Summoned home from Syracuse to be tried, Alcibiades refused to obey. In his anger, he turned traitor, and gave the Spartans information, which enabled them to defeat and capture the Athenian army at Syracuse. Later on, Alcibiades realized what he had done in his anger, and vainly tried to save Athens; but he was murdered by the Persians, and the Spartans became masters of Greece. Instead of being free, as in the days of Marathon,

Athens was governed by aristocrats, known as the Thirty Tyrants.

The Retreat of the Ten Thousand. Just then, in Persia, two brothers were fighting for the throne. One of these princes hired ten thousand Greeks to fight for him. Near Babylon, he and all the Greek officers were slain. The Persians, of course, expected the ten thousand Greek soldiers to surrender and become their slaves. But the Greeks, accustomed to think for themselves, elected a leader, the Athenian Xenophon (zě'n'ō-fōn), and began the wonderful retreat of which he wrote an account. In it he relates how, marching by night and fighting by day, the Ten Thousand crossed the mighty Persian Empire, passing many ruined cities, including Nineveh (see page 85). He also describes the joy of the Greeks on again beholding the sea, from whose blue waves they had never ventured so far before!

The Greeks' Dream of Taking Persia. The returning ten thousand Greeks told their people about the rich soil of the Tigris-Euphrates valley, the wonders of Babylon, and the wealth of the Persians. They argued that since ten thousand Greeks had kept the Persians at bay in their own country, and had marched all through it foraging as they went, a larger Greek army could conquer the whole region, and thus avenge the invasion of Greece. Hoping to do this, many of them joined the Spartans, who were still fighting the Persians in Asia Minor. There, a Spartan king so amazed a Persian general by the simplicity of his dress and manners, by his lack of escort and slaves, and especially, by living on the Spartan rations of bread

and raw onions, that the Persians wisely concluded a treaty. It was welcomed by the Spartans, because just then all Greece was beginning to rebel against their severity.

Thebes Mistress. The outcome of this Greek rebellion was that Thebes, following the example of Athens and Sparta, became mistress of Greece, and forced other cities to obey her. This change was accomplished by the courage and skill of two great men, Pē-lōp'ī-dās and Ē-pām-ī-nōn'dās. Shorn of their former glory, the Athenians first blamed each other for their misfortune. Then, remembering the Golden Age of Pericles, and Alcibiades' talent and wealth, they concluded that had this young man been rightly guided, he would never have turned traitor and brought about Athens' loss of power.

An Athenian Comedy. A comedy writer (Aristophanes (ār-īs-tōf'a-nēz)), had meanwhile composed a comedy (funny play), in which the homely, simple philosopher, Socrates, was made to do and say ridiculous things. Everybody laughed over this caricature, and Socrates himself went to see it, hoping he might discover faults he could correct, for he believed in self-improvement. He was patient, even with a trying wife (Xantippe), whose continual scolding has made her a by-word. But after laughing for a time at this comedy, the fickle Athenians suddenly accused Socrates of having misled Alcibiades and others, and of scorning the Greek gods!

Death of Socrates. The result was that the Thirty Tyrants sentenced Socrates to death by drinking poison. But, before the philosopher died, he was

allowed to see and talk to his friends and bid them good-bye. He then said many beautiful things, which his disciple Plā'tō wrote down in a book. For instance, Socrates declared that although his old, frail, and homely body was about to die, his soul would never die. He said that as he had always sought what was true, pure, and noble, and had done no wrong, his sentence was no disgrace. He also assured his friends that while he had always loved the poetical tales about the Greek gods, he felt there was a Greater Spirit, an "Unknown God," superior in every way to all others, whom the Greeks would learn to know later on.

Our Debt. We can learn many things from Alcibiades' career; from the brave Ten Thousand, from the comedies of Aristophanes, and from Socrates' example and teachings, transmitted to us by his disciple Plato.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories*, American Book Co.

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 157-179, American Book Co.

1. Give the story of Alcibiades' life.
2. Tell the story of the Ten Thousand.
3. Which cities were mistresses of Greece in turn?

ROME AND MACEDONIA

CHAPTER XXIX

ROME FROM KINGDOM TO REPUBLIC

Story of Rome. We saw that Rome, city of the seven hills, had been founded by Romulus, its first king (753 B.C.). The seventh and last king of Rome proved so wicked, that he was driven out of the city, which the Romans declared they would henceforth rule themselves. Rome thus became a republic (510 B.C.), governed by two consuls, elected every year as chief executives, and by a senate composed of its most important men. At first, only the Roman nobles or patricians (pa-trish'ānz) held office, but gradually, the common people, or plebeians (plē-bē'yānz), obtained their share of power.

Story of Horatius. Instead of abandoning his crown tamely, the last Roman king induced thirty cities to join him in re-conquering Rome. The news of his arrival with such an army, made all the farmers seek the protection of the city walls. Failing to defeat the advancing host, the Romans decided to destroy the wooden bridge across the Tī'bēr, leading to their city. To hold the enemy in check while the bridge-pillars were chopped down, brave Horatius (hō-rā'shūs) and two companions defended its narrow approach. These three men held a whole army at bay, until the bridge was about to fall! Two of the fighters then

darted back, but Horatius stood his ground, until the bridge crashed down behind him. Then, fully armed, he plunged into the Tiber, swam across it, and received the applause of his grateful fellow-citizens!

Roman Heroism. During the siege which followed, several Romans pledged themselves to kill the former king's chief ally. One of these youths, caught before he could carry out his purpose, and threatened with torture, showed how little a Roman feared pain, by thrusting his hand into a nearby fire and letting it burn! He also proudly declared his fellow-citizens were ready to risk as much as he to keep their city free. Hearing this, the foe parleyed for peace, and received hostages from the Romans. One of these, a girl, jumping on a horse, drove him into the Tiber and swam home, rather than remain in the enemy's camp. Such bravery on the part of Romans of both sexes, convinced the enemy they deserved to remain free. So the hostile armies withdrew, and Rome remained a republic for nearly five hundred years.

The Plebeians Rebel. It may interest you to hear how the Roman plebeians gained their first political rights. Tired of paying taxes, fighting in the ranks, serving the patricians, and being imprisoned or sold into slavery for debt, the plebeians left the city. Camping on a nearby hill, they declared they would not return until their wrongs were righted! The patricians were dismayed, for they had no soldiers for their army, no farmers to till their soil, no workmen to supply their needs, and no servants to wait upon them! To persuade the plebeians to return, and to show them that while the rich need the poor, the poor also need

the rich, a senator, who knew Esop's fables, told them about the limbs which refused to work to feed a greedy stomach, only to grow weak and die for want of food. Convinced at last that they would starve if they did not work, the plebeians consented to return, provided they could elect two officers, called tribunes (trib' ūnz), to sit at the senate door and cry "vē'tō" (I forbid), whenever laws were proposed which would be unfair to the common people.

Roman Laws. Before Pericles died, ten Roman senators visited Athens to study its laws, and make similar ones for Rome. These laws, graven on twelve bronze tablets, were set up on the Fō'rūm (public square), so every one could read them. Every Roman school-boy had to copy and learn them by heart, for these twelve tablets were the foundation of Roman law.

Roman Conquests. The Romans, who were very fond of fighting, gradually conquered all the tribes around them. Although generally victorious, they sometimes got into tight places. Once, for instance, three hundred and six men of one family, having volunteered to defend Rome in time of need, were caught in an ambush and slain! The Romans, afraid their consuls could not defend them, clamored for a "dictator" (dik-tā'tēr), or general-in-chief. Cincinnatus (Sīn-sī-nā'tūs), the man they wanted, was found plowing his field. Leaving his plow in the furrow and his oxen yoked, he hurried off to the Forum. There he bade every able-bodied man be ready to start by sunset, fully armed, bearing food for five days, and carrying twelve sharp stakes. By an all-night

march Cincinnatus surprised and defeated the foe, — unable to get at the Romans behind their palisade of sharp stakes. Then, the vanquished were compelled to “pass beneath the yoke” (two spears driven in the ground with a third tied across their tops), in token they were beaten. Next, Cincinnatus marched his



CINCINNATUS AT THE PLOW

Chosen as Dictator, Cincinnatus left his plow and returned after victory was won to take up the plow again.

victorious army back to Rome, and, feeling his country no longer needed his services, immediately returned to his unfinished furrow. Because this man, after showing himself so clever a general, went back to his farm to become once more a producer, he has been

justly admired. American officers, who after the Revolutionary War, followed this Roman example, founded the society of the "Sons of Cincinnatus," of which Washington was first President, and which gave Cincinnati (Ohio) its name.

Our Debt. We owe to Rome, belief in granting rights to the common people, in making laws which all could consult at any time, and examples of courageous defense.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

MACAULAY, *Lays of Ancient Rome*.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 73-81, 81-86, 91-94, 94-96, American Book Co.

1. In what year was Rome founded? When did the Republic begin? How many years was it a kingdom and how many kings did it have?

2. Who defended the Bridge? What other patriots were noted at that time?

3. Why did the Plebeians rebel? What fable converted them? Which laws were made?

4. Who was Cincinnatus?

CHAPTER XXX

THE GAULS

The Invasion of Europe. Although the people were not aware of it, great things had happened meantime. Hordes of people, coming from Central Asia, and not daring to pass through the Persian Empire, entered Europe from the North. Wave after wave, they swept through Russia, each tribe bearing a different name. Pushing all others westward and northward, these

hordes invaded all parts of Northern Europe. Mostly young, fierce and strong, the men scorned any occupation save hunting and fighting, and carried nothing but their weapons. But they were closely followed by lumbering ox-carts, containing their wives, children, and plunder. Some of these tribes wandered into Norway and Sweden, others into Denmark; Germany, and Austria, where still stretched the great forests of early times. But, having traveled long and far, many seemed unwilling to settle down, although they found vast, uninhabited stretches, with plenty of food, water, and game.

The Gauls. Some of these northern wanderers, the yellow-haired, blue-eyed Gauls, entering France, came to the ocean. Unable to go farther, they looked around and found a pleasant climate and fertile soil. So they settled there, and, as we have seen, six hundred years before Christ, they were trading with the Greeks, from whom they learned many things. These brave, generous, hospitable, but boastful Gauls, believed in one God and in the immortality of the soul. Instead of worshipping in temples, they preferred the forests, using the oak as an emblem of their god, and the mistletoe which grew upon it, as the symbol of man. Their priests, the Drū'ids, were learned, kept records, and knew something about mechanics, since they built monuments of huge blocks of stone, such as Stonehenge (Stōn'hěnj) in England, and Car-nac in France. They burned the Yule log, and the Druidesses or priestesses, gathered the mistletoe by moonlight for the priests, cutting it with a golden sickle. They were also the "wise women" of the Gauls, who always con-

sulted them before going to war, or making important moves.

The Gauls in Rome. The young Gauls, born fighters, elected new chiefs each spring to lead them in raids here and there. Hearing of the wealth of the south, a band of Gauls — just one hundred years after Marathon — climbed over the Alps. Sweeping down through Italy, they entered Rome, whose warriors — far too few to oppose them openly — intrenched themselves in the Capitol, or Roman citadel. The barbarians, as the Romans called all other people, were awed to behold houses and temples far superior to anything they had seen. On the Forum sat the senators, each in his state-chair, holding a scepter (sěp'těr) and wearing a long drapery called tō'ga. Because Rome's senators were the oldest and most important men of the city, they were always treated with respect. When a Gaul warrior, therefore, wonderingly laid his hand on one of their white beards to find out whether it was real, or whether those silent men were statues, the senator indignantly struck him with his scepter! Incensed (ĩn-sěn's'd) by this blow, the Gauls killed the senators, sacked and burned the city, and then tried to take the cĩt'a-děl, where the soldiers had taken refuge.

The Sacred Geese. The Gauls would have succeeded in surprising the Capitol one dark night, had not the sacred geese roused the Roman sentinels by hissing. Having finally starved the Romans into surrender, the Gauls were just forcing them to weigh out gold enough to balance their weights and the heavy sword of their chief, when brave Camillus (Ka-mĩl'-

ŭs), arrived with a new army, and forced them to retreat north of the Pō, where they settled at the foot of the Alps.

Curtius' Leap. Some years later, while the Thebans were masters of Greece, a great chasm — due to an earthquake — opened in the Roman Forum. The priests declared the gods were angry and could be appeased only by the sacrifice of Rome's most precious possessions. Thereupon, the inhabitants vainly cast into the chasm their choicest treasures. Suddenly a young warrior (Curtius) (kŭr'shĭ-ŭs), crying Rome's greatest possession was her brave men, set his horse at a gallop, and plunged fully armed into the abyss, which closed over him!

Our Debt. We owe to the Romans, information about the settling of Europe by the ancestors of several European nations — and hence of ours. The Druids left remains of huge stone monuments, Stonehenge and Carnac, and we owe them some of our customs, such as the Yule Log and the mistletoe.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

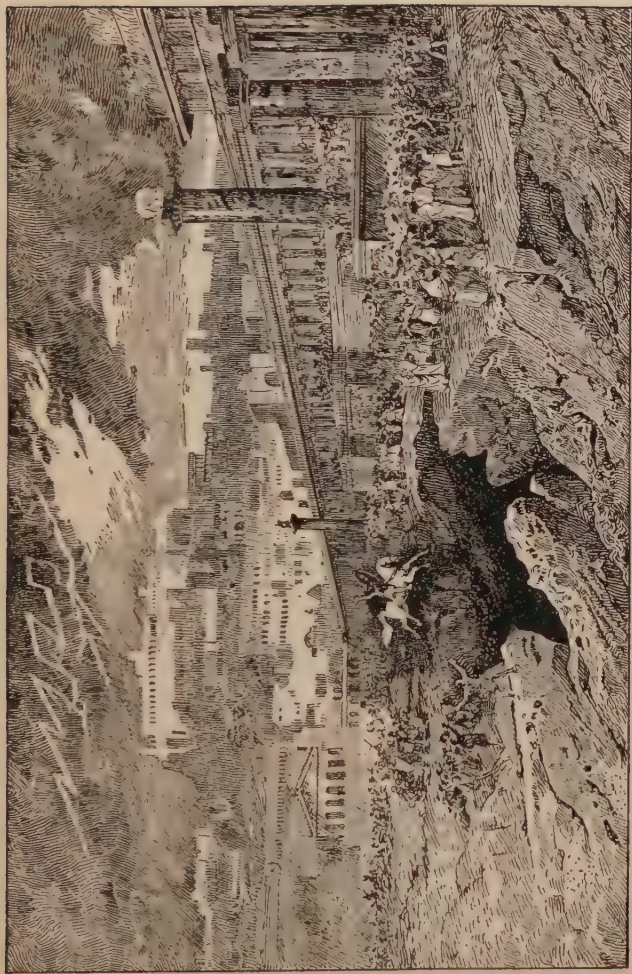
"Stories of the Ancient World" (Reprint from *St. Nicholas*).

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories*, American Book Co.

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 104-109, 109-112, American Book Co.

1. How did the Gauls reach Rome?
2. How were they met by the Senators? By the Geese?
3. What was the devotion of Curtius?



CURTIVS' LEAP

A chasm, caused by an earthquake in the Roman Forum, closed after Curtius plunged in, fully armed.

CHAPTER XXXI

PHILIP OF MACEDON

Philip of Macedonia. We now begin to hear of Macedonia (mās-ē-dō'nī-ā), a state north of Greece, inhabited by people of Grecian blood and ruled by King Philip. This king conquered the Scythians (sīth-ī-ānz) north-east of Macedonia, and having discovered gold mines in their country, became very wealthy. He was as ambitious as he was rich, and having been educated in Greece, knew how far from united the Greek city-states were. Taking advantage of this, Philip sided first with one and then with another, became president of a council pledged to defend Delphi, and laid his plans to master Greece.

Demosthenes. The only man who suspected Philip's ambitious plans was the Athenian Demosthenes (dē-mōs'thē-nēz), the most eloquent orator ever heard. He had not, however, learned to speak so beautifully without effort, for, as a boy, he was inclined to stammer. Still, he taught himself to pronounce clearly, holding a pebble in his mouth and reciting verses loud enough to be heard above the crash of the sea-waves on a rocky shore. The result of long, patient self-training was that he could make himself heard by the noisiest crowds. He began a series of speeches against Philip — since called philippics (fī-līp'īks) — warning his fellow-citizens that the King of Macedonia was threatening Greek liberty, and urging them to resist before it was too late. Finally the Athenians and Thebans declared war against

Philip, only to be defeated at Chaeronea (kěŕ-ō-ně'a), where Philip's young son, Alexander, got his first taste of fighting. The winning of this victory over Thebes and Athens — the strongest cities then in Greece — sufficed to make Philip master of the whole country.

Philip's Plans and Death. Philip now persuaded the Greeks to help him conquer the Persian Empire. Plans for this expedition were just completed, when Philip was assassinated! Thus his son Alexander, who had resentfully said his father would conquer the world and leave *nothing* for him to do, was able to reap all the glory of the undertaking.

Our Debt. We owe to the Greeks our information about Macedon and Philip, and the orations of Demosthenes.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 217-226, American Book' Co.

1. Where is Macedon? Tell the story of Philip?
2. Tell the story of Demosthenes and say why he pronounced the Philippics.
3. What were Philip's plans and how did he die?

CHAPTER XXXII

STORY OF ALEXANDER

Alexander's Youth. Two great events happened the day Alexander was born; first, his father's horses won the chariot race at the Olympic Games, and second, a crazy man burned down the Temple of Diana at Ephesus (ěf'ē-sūs), in Asia Minor, one of the Seven

Wonders of the ancient world. Such coincidences made Philip feel that his son was destined to be a great man. But, with an ambitious, clever, and intemperate father, and a high-tempered mother, poor Alexander was sorely handicapped. His tutor, the philosopher Aristotle (ăř'is-tŏt'l) taught him many useful things, but — as Alexander was surrounded by flatterers — utterly failed to make him understand that a man who can control himself is greater than one who can master others. Thanks to Aristotle, Alexander became a good judge of art, music, and poetry, and learned all the science his tutor could impart. Besides, he excelled as an athlete and warrior. When only a lad, he already showed remarkable powers of observation and unusual quickness of body and mind. He proved this, for when horse dealers offered his father a beautiful animal whom no one could mount, Alexander begged permission to try. Turning the animal so its shadow fell *behind* instead of *in front* of it, he mounted safely and rode the fiery steed until it obeyed him perfectly. Philip, delighted, gave his son this horse, Bucephalus (bŭ-sěf'a-lŭs), which became his favorite mount and which he rode in all his great battles.

Alexander and Diogenes. Although Philip had conquered Scythians and Greeks, they no sooner heard of his death, than they rebelled. So, before Alexander could set out to conquer Asia, he had to fight both. To deter Greek cities from further uprisings, he razed Thebes! Then he visited Athens, to assure himself of its future obedience, before proceeding to Corinth, on the Isthmus. There, seeing the philosopher Diogenes (dī-ŏj'ē-nēz) indifferent to luxury or ease,

the young king exclaimed: "Were I not Alexander, I would like to be Diogenes!"

Alexander's First Great Battle. Matters at home settled, Alexander crossed the Hellespont, beat a Persian army at the ford of the Granicus River, visited



ALEXANDER AND BUCEPHALUS

Alexander having won Bucephalus, rode him for his three victories over Darius, and buried him in India.

the site of Troy, offered a sacrifice upon the grave of Achilles (a-kīl'ēz), — his ancestor, — and gave the Ephēsiāns (ē-fēzhānz) money to rebuild their temple.

Then, he distinguished himself by his bravery at the siege of Miletus, "cut the Gordian knot," and visited the Mausoleum (mô-sô-lē'ŭm). This fifth Wonder of the ancient world was a beautiful tomb, erected by a queen, in honor of her husband, Mausolus. Because he had won a race at Olympia — his wife riding beside him — she crowned his tomb with statues representing this triumph.

The Second Battle. Marching sometimes so near dashing sea-waves that his men were afraid of being drowned, sometimes far inland to take some city, Alexander and his army reached Issus (is'ŭs). There they won a second victory, and forced the Persian king Darius to flee, leaving his family captive.

Alexander in Egypt. Alexander next passed through Phoenicia, where he besieged and took Sidon and Tyre. By the High Priest's invitation, he then visited Jerusalem, where he heard how a great Hebrew prophet had foretold his coming. Next he conquered Egypt, but, unlike Cambyses, respected the people's religion, and paid his respects to the Apis-Bull. He also visited a temple in the desert, where the priests flattered his vanity by assuring him he was a descendant of the Sky god! On his way back, near one of the mouths of the Nile, Alexander laid out the Greek city of Alexandria, which still bears his name, and is one of the great Mediterranean seaports.

The Third Battle. Helped by men and tribute money from the places already conquered, Alexander now marched to the heart of the Persian Empire, and defeated Darius' third great army at Ar-bēlà. Then he overtook the fugitive king, mortally wounded by a

traitor, who hoped, by killing his master, to win Alexander's favor. To ease Darius' death, Alexander promised to marry his daughter (Roxana). Then he ordered the execution of the traitor, whom, following his example, the whole Greek army reviled for his lack of loyalty and patriotism.

Our Debt. We find our debt in Aristotle's teachings, Alexander's conquests, the expression "cutting the Gordian Knot," the word mausoleum, and the founding of Alexandria.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 227-232, 232-236, 236-248, American Book Co.

1. Tell the great events which mark Alexander's birth. Tell about his adventure with Bucephalus.
2. What were some of his experiences in Greece and the three Great Battles?
3. What did Alexander do in Egypt?

CHAPTER XXXIII

STORY OF ALEXANDER (*Continued*)

Alexander's Conquests in the East. Alexander next proceeded to Babylon, admired its wonders, and married the princess. Then he visited the three great Persian centers, conquered the wild tribes between the Caspian Sea and the Chinese Desert, and led his men over almost impassable mountains into Northern India. There he defeated King Pō'rūs and his fighting elephants, and lost and buried his favorite steed!

Wherever he went, Alexander founded new cities, until the map of his huge empire is dotted with "Alexandrias." Although he intended to conquer all India, and then the rest of Asia, his men clamored so loudly for home and rest, that he was obliged to return to Babylon.

The Water Road. Knowing that vessels, in olden times, had sailed from the mouth of the Tigris-Euphrates to India — a sea-road forgotten, because so long untraveled — Alexander bade his admiral re-discover it, and map out the southern coast of his empire, while he led the army back by an inland route.

The Burning of the Palace. Arrived at Persepolis, Alexander celebrated his return by a feast. There, a woman suggested burning down the magnificent Persian Palace! This suggestion was immediately put into execution, the intoxicated Alexander lifting the woman, so she could set fire to the wooden ceilings! Nothing but the ruins of this palace now remain, but what is left shows the Persians were wonderful builders, decorated their palaces with beautiful bas-reliefs, and that their columns, of which a few are still standing, had capitals representing horses' heads.

The Marriage of Asia and Europe. Alexander next proceeded to Babylon, to rejoin his Persian wife, and to witness the marriage of sixty officers to Persian ladies, thus celebrating what he called the "marriage of Asia and Europe." During his travels and campaigns, Alexander took note of what he saw and heard, learned all he could, and collected much information. He also sent his former tutor, Aristotle, specimens of minerals, plants, etc. In the Persian Empire he par-

ticularly admired the wonderful roads, one of which, running from Susa through Sardis to the Greek cities on the Ægean Sea, proved a "highway for nations." Along these roads, Persian rulers kept relays of horsemen, to convey messages with the utmost speed.

Alexander's Death. Alexander also admired the skill of the Eastern architects, metal-workers, rug-weavers, and potters. He not only urged his men to learn all they could, but tried to teach the East what his people knew, because he wanted to merge Greeks and Persians into one people. His plans for the future were, however, brought to an end by a fatal attack of malaria at Babylon, when only thirty-three years of age! Hearing Alexander was dying, his soldiers filed past his bed in tears, kissing his hand for the last time, while his generals implored him to name his successor. Giving his ring to one of them, Alexander whispered that the strongest among them should rule. He was buried in Alexandria, in Egypt (323 B.C.). Of the royal Macedonian family, there was left only Alexander's infant son — who did not live to grow up — and an idiot half-brother.

Our Debt. In this chapter we find our debt in the lessons taught by Alexander's conquests, travels, and discoveries, in the spread of Greek culture throughout Western Asia, in the introduction into Europe of certain Eastern plants and inventions, in the example of good post-roads, and in the re-discovery of the sea-route from India to the mouth of the Tigris-Euphrates River.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, 249-255, American Book Co.

1. How did Alexander recover the water road from the Tigris-Euphrates to India?
2. What did he mean by the "Marriage of Europe and Asia"?
3. To whom did he leave his kingdom?

CHAPTER XXXIV

ALEXANDER'S SUCCESSORS

The Ptolemies. The fact that Alexander left no heir to rule his empire made his generals and their descendants fight among themselves for its possession. Thus his huge empire broke up into several kingdoms, which were generally at war. The Greek, or Hellenic world, which Alexander had made all powerful in Asia, therefore soon lost its hold there. But the Ptolemies (töl'ē-mīz), descendants of one of Alexander's generals, ruled Egypt as its last dynasty of kings, for more than three hundred and fifty years. Under them, Alexandria, peopled mostly by educated Greeks, became the world's center of learning. It boasted a wonderful library, wherein the Ptolemies placed copies and translations of every important book in the world, until it contained some five hundred thousand volumes! Besides the Library, Alexandria had a University. There, learned men studied and taught. They stated that the earth is round, and tried to measure its circumference at the equator. Under one Ptolemy, seventy learned Jews came to Alexandria, and translated into Greek the Books of the Old Testa-

ment. This version is known as the Septuagint (sěp'tū-a-jīnt), because of its seventy translators.

The Lighthouse. Another Ptolemy built the first great lighthouse on Pharos (fā'rōs) Island, at the en-



PHAROS

On the Island of Pharos, near Alexandria, a lighthouse was built to guide the ships safely into the harbor.

trance of Alexandria's harbor. This lighthouse (another of the Seven Wonders) consisted of a high tower, surmounted by a great fire, a very different affair from

our revolving-light beacons, although those are merely improvements of the one at Pharos. A legend states that Ptolemy ordered his name carved in its topmost stone, so all should know he built it! But the architect, wishing his own name to crown the edifice, carved it deep in the stone. Then he filled up the letters with cement, and painted on this smooth surface his master's name! The rain, wind, and driving sand wore off the paint, and crumbled the cement, so that — years after the king's death — only the architect's name stood at the top of the lighthouse! Another Ptolemy re-opened a canal, by which a Pharaoh had connected the Nile and the Red Sea, to enable goods again to travel from India to Europe by ship.

The Colossus of Rhodes. A descendant of another of Alexander's generals, wishing to capture the Island of Rhodes (rōdz) — where there was a great school of sculpture — brought thither huge war-engines. When he departed, unsuccessful, the Rhodians sold the engines he left behind, and with the money bade one of their artists fashion a colossal statue of Apollo, the Sun-god, standing with one foot on either side of their harbor. As the largest ships — sails unfurled — could pass between this statue's legs, it was also one of the Seven Wonders of the ancient world. But sixty-six years later, an earthquake threw down the "Colossus of Rhodes," and the people, unable to set it up again, sold the bronze.

Pyrrhus. The Colossus of Rhodes was barely finished when Pyrrhus (pīr'ūs), king of Ē-pī'rūs

(northwest of Macedon), crossed the Adriatic (ā-drē-āt'ik) with an army, including the first fighting elephants used in Europe. He went to help the Greek cities in Southern Italy resist the Romans. Although Pyrrhus won two victories, it was at such cost, that he

despairingly cried: "One more victory like this and I shall have to go home without an army!" Five years later, Pyrrhus left Italy, and the Greek cities there came under Roman rule.



PYRRHUS

The Greek cities in southern Italy called Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, to fight for them. Five years later Pyrrhus returned home without an army.

Our Debt. We owe to the Ptolemies the Alexandrian Library, University, and Lighthouse, besides scientific discoveries and the preservation and translation of many literary works, including the Old Testa-

ment. To the Rhodians we owe famous statues, and the memory of the Colossus of Rhodes. To the Romans we owe the granting of citizenship to the Italians and the consequent grafting of Greek culture on the whole country.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

"Stories of the Ancient World" (Reprint from *St. Nicholas*).

GUERBER, *Story of the Greeks*, pp. 255-257, 263-264, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 115-121.

1. How did the Ptolemies benefit Egypt?
2. What was the Colossus of Rhodes and how long did it stand?
3. Tell why Pyrrhus, although a conqueror, gained nothing.

Eyes of Greece
Sparta
Athens
Thebes
Carthage

PUNIC WARS AND CAESAR

CHAPTER XXXV

PUNIC WARS

Punic Wars. You remember the story of Queen Dido's founding of Carthage in North Africa (page 80). The Carthaginians, belonging to the Phoenician race, were also great navigators and traders. They went everywhere, and securing but little grain in North Africa, bought their food in Sicily. Sixteen years after the Colossus of Rhodes was erected, the Romans, masters of all Italy, began a war with Carthage for the possession of Sicily, the largest island near them. Unable to get the better



A ROMAN GALLEY

of their foes without ships, and knowing Carthaginian vessels were the best then made, the Romans took a wrecked galley (gă'l'i) (warship) as a model, and built a whole fleet! Meanwhile, they trained oarsmen on shore, so as to man these ships as soon as finished.

Archimedes. In Syracuse, Sicily's main city, there dwelt the great mathematician and inventor, Archimedes (är-kĩ-mě'dēz). He gave the world solid geom-

etry, explained the laws governing levers, pulleys, and pump-screws, and discovered ways for ascertaining the center of gravity and the weight of things. He could also set ships afire with lenses or burning glasses, and used derrick-like machines to seize and upset the enemy's galleys. The Romans, knowing how clever he was, bade their soldiers spare his life when they took his city and — as was usual then — murdered all the men. The story goes that Archimedes was so absorbed in a problem, that he did not even know the city was taken! When a Roman soldier burst into his study, crying: "Art thou Archimedes?" he neither saw nor heard him, and was slain! The Romans buried Archimedes honorably, but his tomb was forgotten, until re-discovered two centuries later.

Hannibal's Crossing of the Alps. Although the Carthaginians made peace with Rome, they thought of naught but revenge. The Romans knew this so well, that the expression "pū'nīc faith" came to mean a false promise. The greatest Carthaginian general hated Rome so bitterly, that he made his small son, Hannibal (hǎn'ĩ-bǎł), swear never to make friends with the Romans. When Hannibal grew up, he, too, became a general, and conquered for Carthage the remainder of Spain, where the Phoenicians had founded the colony of Gades (Cadiz) more than seven hundred years before. When the second Punic War broke out, Hannibal boldly planned to lead his army and fighting elephants from Spain, through Gaul, over the Alps, and into Italy! Attacked by Carthaginians in the North, when they had sent their main forces to Africa and Spain, the Romans were dismayed! Hannibal not

only defeated three of their newly recruited armies, but, marching southward, challenged their consul Fā'bī-ūs to open fight. Instead of risking a battle, Fabius retreated further and further southward, hoping to weaken Hannibal's chances of success. This

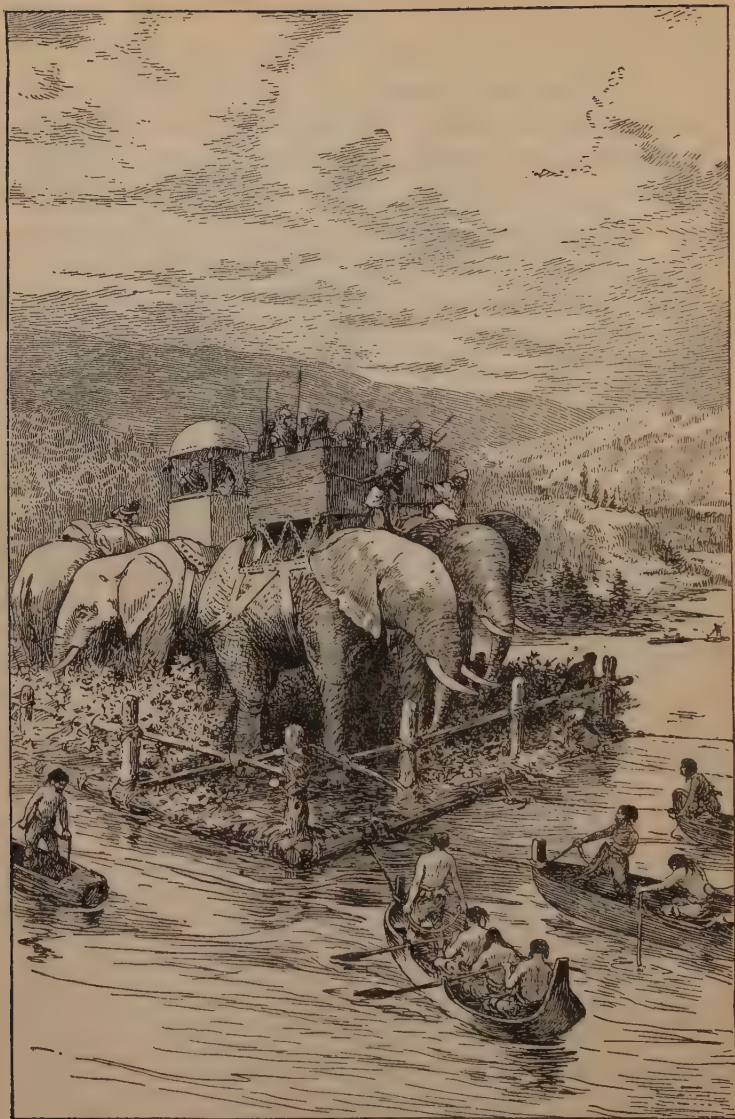


HANNIBAL CROSSING THE ALPS

Hannibal, a Carthaginian, came from Spain to Italy, to fight the Romans. His elephants crossed the Alps.

“Fabian policy” (policy of delay) so angered the Romans, that they named another general, who was sorely beaten by Hannibal at Cannae (kān'nā) with a loss of sixty thousand men!

The Delights of Capua. Had Hannibal then marched straight to Rome, he could have taken the city; but his tired men begged for a winter's rest in the city of Capua (kāp'ū-a). Here they grew soft and



ELEPHANTS CROSS THE RHONE

To induce the Elephants to cross the Rhone, Hannibal had rafts built, covered with earth and green grass.

lazy, while the Romans, helped by their Italian allies, collected new forces. These were sent to drive the Carthaginians out of Spain, and to attack Carthage. So Hannibal hastened back to Africa, where he met the Romans in the battle of Zā'ma (near Carthage). The Romans won, proving once more that men who govern themselves and fight for their country, generally triumph over those ruled by the rich in their midst, who hire most of their soldiers.

Our Debt. Our outstanding debt to Syracuse in Sicily is due to inventions regarding levers, pulleys, pump-screws, solid geometry, etc. We are indebted to the wars between Rome and Carthage for the Roman example in emergency fleet building, the expressions "Punic Faith," "Fabian Policy" and "Delights of Capua," and for an example of the superiority of patriotic to mercenary soldiers.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, GINN.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 122-137, American Book Co.

1. What were the Punic Wars, and for what purpose were they waged?

2. At the beginning of the war what did the Romans lack, and how did they supply it?

3. Relate Hannibal's purpose and the course he followed.

CHAPTER XXXVI

NEW ROMAN PROVINCES

Spain a Roman Province. At the end of the Second Punic War, Spain became a Roman province. But, finally, being badly governed, the Spaniards soon re-

belled. To punish such uprisings, the Romans razed towns, massacred tribes, or reduced them to slavery, and generally showed themselves both cruel and grasping.

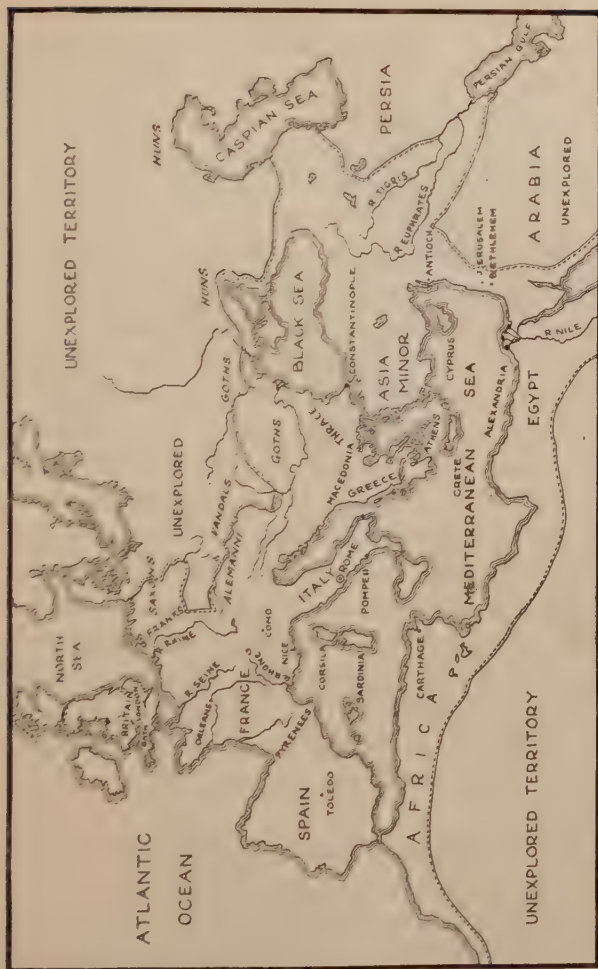


A LEGIONARY SOLDIER

The soldiers of the Roman Legions were armed like this, and fought bravely for Roman mastery.

However, presently, under better conditions, the Roman soldiers married Spanish women, and their children became Roman citizens. Thus, before many years, the whole Iberian (ī-bē'rī-ān) (Spanish) peninsula was Romanized, and was provided with roads, aqueducts, and bridges, ruins of which can still be seen.

The End of Hannibal and Carthage. Fearing lest Carthage might recover Spain and again invade Italy, the Romans demanded the surrender of Hannibal. But he fled to Asia Minor, and poisoned himself, rather than become a prisoner of Rome. Then, under pretext that Carthage injured their allies in North Africa, the Romans re-opened war. Driven to despair, Carthage made a last, heroic effort. Its women cut off their long hair to make ropes for their galleys, and bravely toiled with their chil-



THE ROMAN EMPIRE AT ITS GREATEST EXTENT

dren to strengthen the city walls. Notwithstanding this heroism, Roman legions took Carthage, plundered and burned the city, plowed up its smoldering ruins,

and sowed salt over them, in token that it should never be rebuilt! Having destroyed Carthage — as the Roman orator Cā'tō advised — Rome became mistress of the Mediterranean Sea. The northwest coast of Africa, Spain, and the islands of the Western Mediterranean became Roman provinces, and were governed by Roman laws.

End of Macedon and Greece. The Greeks, united under Philip and Alexander, had again split up into separate city-states after the latter's death. Some of these had a republican government, some were ruled by Tyrants, and Sparta was still under two kings. The old jealousy, which had kept Greece from ever becoming a strong united country, now broke out anew. Finally two leagues were formed, one on the Peloponnesus, the other on the mainland, or Northern Greece. These two leagues were always opposed. After existing for a century and a half, one league sought the alliance and support of Macedon, the other that of Rome. The result was that both Macedon and Greece lost their independence and became Roman provinces! The very year that Carthage fell, the Romans burned Corinth with all its priceless art treasures! (146 B.C.).

Rome's Provinces. Thirteen years later, a king of Pēr'gā-mūs willed his lands to Rome, which, by fair means or foul, soon won the remainder of Asia Minor. At the beginning of the Punic Wars, Rome had been only one of the five great powers on the Mediterranean (Greece, Rome, Macedon, Pergamum, and Carthage), now she was the *only one*. But Rome proved wise, and while governing her new possessions with a firm

hand; allowed the various nations to retain their customs, religion, and language, and to rule their cities as they pleased. To enable provincials visiting Rome to feel at home there, and worship their own gods, the Romans placed images of all divinities of the people they governed in one of their great buildings, the Pantheon, or "Home of all the Gods."

Our Debt. Rome's treatment of Spain and Carthage and other provinces affords us examples of injustice to conquered peoples. In the response of the Carthaginians we find an inspiring lesson in patriotism. A wiser attitude in governing possessions is seen in Rome's later custom of allowing religious tolerance and local government.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 137-142, American Book Co.

1. How did Carthage end and when?
2. How did Greece and Macedon end and when?
3. What provision did Rome make for the worship of the conquered regions?

CHAPTER XXXVII

ROMAN ROADS AND WARS

Greek and Roman Culture. During Alexander's campaigns, Greek culture had spread all over the Persian Empire to the Caspian Sea and Central Plateau. It had also passed over the mountains into India and up the Nile to Ē-thĩ-ō'pĩ-a. Now it spread westward,

wherever Rome ruled. Young Romans, taught Greek ideals by Greek war-prisoners, and attending Greek universities, learned many things hitherto unknown to them.

Roman Roads. Still, in some things the Romans excelled the Greeks, such as in the building of roads,



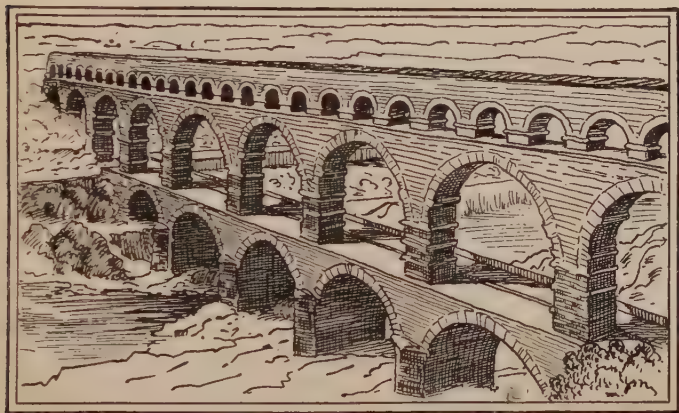
ROMAN ROAD AND RUINS OF AQUEDUCT

Stone wedged roads, as good now as when they were built. The aqueduct carried water to Rome.

along which people could travel freely to and fro and armies could march in comfort. The Romans were so thorough that they erected huge viaducts over low ground, or dug a trench as long and wide as the road was to be. This trench was filled with stones, so tightly wedged together that they formed a stone-wall, whereof the biggest stones were at the bottom, and the smallest on top. When all this

stone had been pounded into a solid mass, and the top carefully smoothed, it was covered with hard paving stones. Thus, miry roads never hindered Roman

travel! Such highways, starting from Rome, branched out in every direction, until the saying arose: "Every road leads to Rome!" Some Roman roads are as good today as they were two thousand years ago, and rubber-tired automobiles now glide over stones which once rang beneath bronze chariot wheels.



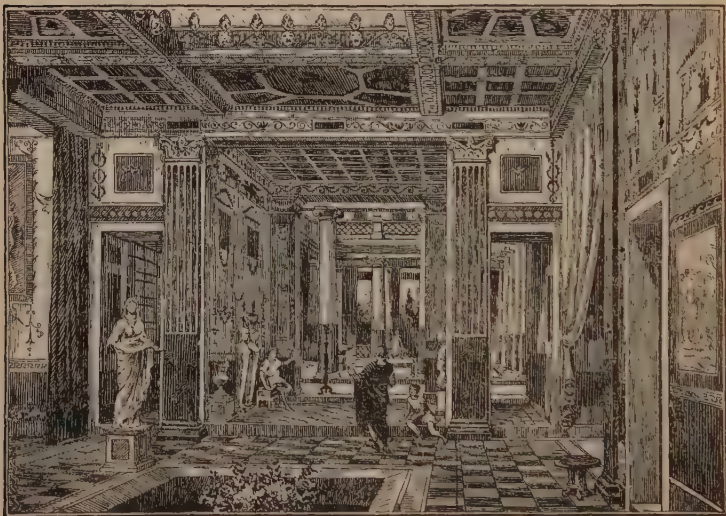
THE BRIDGE OF THE GARD

The Romans built aqueducts on a slope from the source to the city, frequently carried on bridges as shown here.

Bridges, Sewers, and Aqueducts. The Romans also built bridges and sewers which are still in use, as well as aqueducts to bring to cities pure water from a distance. Not knowing that water will rise to the level of its source, these aqueducts sloped gradually. The Romans dwelt in substantial houses, provided with central courts, or small gardens, surrounded by peristyles (pěřĩ-stĩlz), or porches, into which opened the family bed-rooms. Roman temples were generally built by Greek architects, for the Romans beheld in

South Italy — where still stand Greek temples built six centuries before Christ — what beautiful work they could do.

Marius. By this time, plebeians and patricians enjoyed almost equal rights, and most Italians had become Roman citizens. That is to say they could vote,



ROMAN HOUSE

The central part of a large house.

and were protected by Roman laws; in return for which privileges they served in the army and paid taxes. Large Roman armies were necessary, for, while some barbarian tribes had settled in what is now Holland and Switzerland, others were still roaming, and one came through Gaul and another over the Alps into Italy in search of plunder. The brave Roman,

Mā'ri-ūs, defeated these hordes and won the title of "saviour of his country."

Slave War. By this time, even poor Romans owned slaves, and some rich citizens had hundreds and thousands of them. Some of these slaves found servitude hard to bear, because they had always hitherto been free. Besides, the Romans were severe taskmasters and cruelly punished slaves who did not do all that was expected of them! The strongest war-captives were generally sent by their owners to athletic schools, to be trained to wrestle, box, and fight. When expert, these gladiators (glād'ī-ā-tērz) (fighters with the sword), publicly exhibited their skill in the Roman circus and theaters. In Greek games there had been similar exhibitions by free men, but, as the Greeks were humane, their athletes never tried to kill each other. The fierce Romans, however, took pleasure in seeing gladiators die, or kill the wild beasts with which they fought! Under these circumstances you can understand that the slaves did not love their masters, and often tried to escape. A band of these finally joined the runaway gladiator, Spār'tă-cūs, on Mt. Vesuvius, and under his leadership tried to march through Italy to their Northern home. But the Roman army checked this attempt, and hosts of crucified rebels along the public roads served as warnings to their fellow-slaves.

Civil Strife. War always causes great losses. The worst of all wars is civil strife (war between the citizens of a state). Marius, "saviour of his country," brought such a trouble upon Rome, through jealousy of his former lieutenant Sulla (Sŭl'a). The war between

them resulted in the overthrow of democracy, for thereafter Rome was again governed by the patricians, or the rich.

Our Debt. We owe to the Romans the preservation of Greek culture, the remains of roads, bridges, and aqueducts, a warning against slavery, and against civil war.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

WALLACH, *Historical and Biographical Narratives*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 155-162, American Book Co.

1. Describe fully the building of a Roman road.
2. Describe the construction of a Roman aqueduct.
3. What war was waged between Marius and Sulla?

CHAPTER XXXVIII

CAESAR IN GAUL

A Roman Triumph. The old Republican spirit had so thoroughly ceased to exist in Rome itself, that Pompey, winner of triumphs in Spain, and Crassus, conqueror of Spartacus and his band, marched their armies to the gates of Rome. There they compelled the people to elect them consuls and award them triumphs, — the greatest honor Rome granted to victorious generals. All the Romans enjoyed a holiday whenever a triumph took place. First on the Field of Märs, the training ground for Roman soldiers, the general reviewed his army, thanked the soldiers for their valor, and distributed crowns instead of crosses. Then, riding in an elaborate car, he passed beneath a

triumphal arch, where the senators met him, draped in their togas, to lead the procession along the Sacred Way to the Capitol. Behind the senators came trumpeters, then wagons and litters laden with spoil, flute-players, flower-decked oxen for sacrifice, priests,



A ROMAN TRIUMPH

and captives in chains. Next came the lictors (lĭk'tērz), twelve officials who escorted each consul, carrying laurel-wreathed bundles of rods, with an axe in the middle, to show that they punished or executed at the consul's order. Then came the hero of the day, wearing an embroidered robe, and holding in either hand a laurel bough and scepter. His family and friends marched behind him, followed by the tribunes (trĭb'ū'nz) (magistrates of the common people), the cavalry (horsemen), and finally the infantry (foot-

soldiers), singing, joking with the crowd, and delighting in their return. This grand procession swept along the Sacred Road amid throngs of cheering spectators. Arrived at the Capitol, the chief captives were led away to be put to death. When they had ceased to breathe, a sacrifice was offered, and the hero of the day laid his laurel wreath on the knees of Jupiter's statue. The victor was finally feasted and given land whereon to build a house at public expense. Eating, drinking, and dancing by all present closed the memorable day.

Pirates Defeated. The Romans, who insisted on law and order, were greatly annoyed because their merchant vessels were continually attacked and robbed by pirates in the Mediterranean and Adriatic Seas. As Pompey had fought so successfully on land, they now gave him three years to rid these seas of pirates. Such was Pompey's energy and efficiency, that he accomplished this task in three months! Next he went to place the greater part of Asia, to the Euphrates River, under Roman rule.

Cato and Cicero. During Pompey's absence, two eloquent Romans, Cato and Cicero, tried to stir up the Romans to work, govern themselves, and cease blindly following an ambitious leader who might try to become king! Although the Romans still loathed that name, most of them continued to loaf, talk, attend the shows (triumphs, festivals, and gladiatorial combats), eat the free meals provided by the rich, and enjoy themselves generally.

The Triumvirate. When Pompey came home, and the senate refused his soldiers free land for farms, he

agreed with Crassus and Caesar (sē'zēr) to form the first trī-ŭm'vīr-āte (league of three men). Caesar, the cleverest, supplied the plans; Pompey, an army; and Crassus, the funds to govern the Roman world. At the end of a year, Caesar — jealous of Pompey's military honors — asked to be sent to Gaul, where there was a prospect of much fighting.

Caesar in Gaul. First Caesar had to protect Southern Gaul from the Helvetians (hělvě'shī-ānz), who wished to leave Switzerland, where they had settled, and emigrate elsewhere. Knowing they would destroy all the Celts (sělz) and Romans had done to make Southern Gaul a civilized country, Caesar bade them remain where they were. The lusty Helvetians laughed at such an order from the Romans — smaller men than they. They loaded wives, children, and belongings on ox-carts, and set out, burning their villages, to which they never intended to return. But Caesar defeated them and forced them back to their former quarters. There their descendants still live, having since learned to make even barren places produce enough to support them.

The Germans. Next, Caesar defeated some German tribes, drove them back to Germany, and made the Rhine a Roman boundary by establishing military stations along its course. Once, to punish some raiders, he even built a wooden bridge across the Rhine, and penetrated into the forests, where Germans were then practising the Northern religion. Traces of it remain in English, since their Jū'pī-tēr (Wō'děn) has given his name to Wednesday (Wodensday), their thunder god Thōr, to Thursday (Thorsday), and their

goddess of beauty, Freia (frī-a), to Friday (Freia's day.)

Caesar's Commentaries. Besides conquering Gaul, Belgium, and Holland, Caesar and his army twice visited Britain (brīt'ān) (England). Caesar, who was neither kind nor merciful, killed many people in Gaul,



CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN

During his eight-year Gallic campaign, Caesar twice crossed the Channel and fought the savage Britons.

enslaved hosts of others, and reserved Vercingetorix (vēr-sīn-jet'ō-rīks), the champion of Gallic liberty, to walk in his triumph. But, the result of his campaigns was that Roman civilization, which was made up of the best and most useful things handed down by the nations ruling the ancient world before the Romans, spread all over what is now France, Belgium, and

Holland, and became known even in Germany and England. Caesar himself wrote, in his Commentaries (kōm'ēn-tā-rīz) (which second year Latin pupils still read), about his eight campaigns in Gaul, and what he learned of the people, their Druids, and their monuments.

Our Debt. Roman government and culture spread to Spain, France, Belgium, Holland, Germany, and Britain. Roman language, laws, roads, aqueducts, bridges, and architecture were extended over Western Europe. Caesar's Commentaries are even now read in our high schools.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 142-145, 170-179, American Book Co.

1. Describe a Roman Triumph.
2. How were the Pirates suppressed?
3. What did Caesar do in Gaul, Britain, and Germany?

CHAPTER XXXIX

THE DEATH OF CAESAR

Crossing the Rubicon. The Romans, who had once fought for patriotism or glory, now did so only for pay and spoil; or hired men to serve as soldiers in their stead! Having so many slaves, the Romans ceased to work. Instead of *doing* things, they merely found fault with what others did! When Crassus died, some Romans wanted Pompey, others Caesar, to rule alone.

Hearing this, Caesar decided to return home. Knowing force might be needed, he did not disband his army on the north side of the Rubicon (röö'bĩ-kõn), which no general was allowed to cross under arms, but forded the stream at the head of his men, crying: "The die is cast!" Thus he entered Rome, enjoyed a triumph, and defeated the armies Pompey sent to oppose him. Finally, in Greece, Caesar conquered Pompey himself! Thereupon Pompey fled to Egypt, and was murdered while landing at Alexandria. Thither Caesar followed him, expressed regret at his rival's death, visited the lighthouse (Pharos) and Library, had Alexander's coffin opened — so he might gaze on the only man who had conquered more miles than he — and persuaded the beautiful queen, Cleopatra (klē-ō-pā'tra), to accompany him wherever he went.

I Came, I Saw, I Conquered. Just before leaving Egypt, Caesar put down a revolt, during which the famous Library at Alexandria was burned, and priceless art works were lost. Of course, it was immediately rebuilt, but the second library never contained such wonderful manuscripts as the first. On his way home, Caesar conquered a province in Asia Minor, sending to Rome the three-word message, meaning: "I came, I saw, I conquered!" For doing such wonders in the East, Caesar was awarded four triumphs, and the title Ìm-pē-rā'tör, or Emperor.

Organizing. Sole master of the Roman world, Caesar now tried to order its government in the best possible way. Although Rome continued a republic in form, Caesar filled all its main offices as long as he lived. All the power was in his hands, although he

twice refused the crown offered by flatterers, because he knew the Romans hated the name of king. Instead of leaving the public land in the hands of a few, Caesar divided it, and arranged that every landlord should hire one free man for every two slaves. He also shipped eighty thousand landless Roman citizens to newly conquered countries, and, instead of feeding three hundred thousand idlers in the city, supplied free food to less than half that number. Caesar collected the Roman laws into a Code (kōd), and built a new Forum and Circus. He also founded the first real public library where *everyone* could consult the books, drained the marshes around Rome, and arranged for proper coinage. Besides, he



CAESAR AS CONSUL

Caesar, named Consul, held Rome's main offices as long as he lived.

corrected the Roman calendar (which was three months out of the way), by introducing a Leap Year and dividing all years — as the Egyptians did — into twelve months. One of these, *July*, bears Caesar's first name, *Julius*. September, October, November,

December, are the old Latin seventh to tenth months, for the ancient Roman year began in March.

Death of Caesar. Caesar was planning other wise reforms, when some of the Old Roman Party — afraid they would never otherwise recover their liberty — plotted to kill him in the Senate Chamber. There, at the foot of Pompey's statue, Caesar fell, pierced by twenty-three wounds, crying: "You, too, Brū'tūs!" when struck by his once intimate friend! But the citizens learning that Caesar, in his will, left them all his wealth, immediately began to worship him, and compelled his murderers to leave the city.

Our Debt. Roman culture was introduced into the East. Rome has passed on to us an example of organized government, the Roman Code of laws, and the Roman Calendar.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 179-187, American Book Co.

1. What did Crossing the Rubicon mean?
2. What were some of Caesar's reforms?
3. Describe Caesar's death? Why was he mourned?

THE BEGINNING OF CHRISTIANITY

CHAPTER XL

THE BIRTH OF CHRIST

Second Triumvirate. Caesar's nephew Ōc-tā'vī-ūs, Mark Antony (ăn'tō-nī) his friend, and Lěp'ī-dūs, formed the second Triumvirate. They agreed to rule Rome and Italy jointly, and each govern a separate province as he pleased. Together they pursued Caesar's murderers, who were defeated and slain at the battle of Philippi (fī-lip'ī). There, Octavius proclaimed that while the others had sought their own gain, Brutus, a real patriot, had thought of nothing but Roman liberty. Thereafter Octavius dwelt in Rome, while Mark Antony went to Asia. From there, he ordered Cleopatra (who had gone back to Egypt and was reigning as queen) to come and explain why she had helped Brutus.

Antony and Cleopatra. When Cleopatra arrived, Antony fell madly in love with her, and, forgetting his wife, accompanied her back to Egypt. There he led a life of luxury and pleasure, sailing in Cleopatra's galley, with its perfumed silken sails, and gilded oars and rudder, and amusing himself hunting and fishing. When Octavius heard of this behavior, he ordered Antony home. Instead of obeying, Antony divorced his wife, a sister of Octavius, and married Cleopatra! Thereupon Octavius declared war against Antony,

and Roman and Egyptian galleys finally clashed off Actium (ăk'shĭ-ŭm). Frightened by the noise of battle, Cleopatra fled, closely followed by her devoted admirer! Octavius thereupon pursued them both to Egypt and defeated their army. Then Antony killed himself; and Cleopatra — fearing she would have to march through Rome in Octavius' triumph — made an asp (a poisonous snake) bite her and died, last of the Ptolemies! Egypt now became a Roman province, like all the other lands bordering on the Mediterranean (31 B.C.).

Octavius Emperor. Returning to Rome with immense treasures, Octavius received the title of Emperor Augustus (ô-gŭs'tŭs). Because his admirers claimed he



AUGUSTUS CAESAR

found Rome brick and left it marble, and because many famous people lived during his reign, it is known as the Augustan Age, or the Golden Age of Roman art and literature. The greatest poet of Augustus' time was Virgil, who, as we have seen, wrote the adventures of Aeneas and the early history of Rome. To amuse the Roman idlers and keep them out of mischief, Augustus ordered free

foot and chariot races in Caesar's Circus Maximus (măk'sĭ-mus), but he discouraged fights between gladiators and wild beasts, saying they tended to make people blood-thirsty and cruel.

Birth of Christ. During Augustus' long rule — at a time when peace reigned throughout the Roman world — Jesus Christ was born in Bethlehem of Judea. With His birth Christianity and the Christian Era begin. You know how Christ was born in a manger, taken by his mother to the Temple, and how Joseph and Mary fled with him into Egypt. That was because Herod wanted to kill the child, whom the Wise Men from the East (probably Babylon) called in his presence “King of the Jews.” This title the Romans allowed to Herod, for Palestine also formed part of the Great Roman Empire.

The Crucifixion. Before his reign ended, Augustus' legions (lē'jūnz) were badly beaten in the German forests by Hermann, idol of his people and champion of German freedom. Augustus' stepson, Tī-bē'rī-ŭs, a monster of cruelty, was reigning in Rome when Christ preached, taught, and healed the sick in Palestine. After three years of such ministry, Christ was crucified by Roman soldiers, at the request of the Jews. But Christ's disciples, many of whom “could speak with tongues” — express themselves in foreign languages — now began to preach Christianity to all nations. They were opposed and persecuted both by the Jews, who did not believe Jesus was the long-promised Messiah (mě-sī'a), and by the Romans, who did not want to give up their heathen (hē'then) gods, faulty as they deemed them. Still, one of these disciples, Paul, preached in the Temple at Ephesus, and at Athens. There he told the Greeks about the “Unknown God,” of whom Socrates had spoken and to whom, years before, they had erected an altar.

Our Debt. To the Augustan Age we owe Virgil's *Aeneid* and other Latin classics, and also unexcelled examples of architecture. To this period, also, we owe the example and teachings of Christ and the resulting spread of Christianity, with its great moral teachings, throughout the world.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 188-210, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Chosen People*, pp. 228-229, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Myths of Greece and Rome*, pp. 360-377, American Book Co.

1. Give the names of the members of the Second Triumvirate and tell the story of Antony and Cleopatra.

2. Tell the story of Christ's life.

CHAPTER XLI

GREAT CITIES DESTROYED

Roman Conquest of England. The Romans, who had twice visited Britain under Julius Caesar, conquered the island in 43 A.D. One of their captives, seeing Rome's splendors, wondered how people living in such beautiful houses could envy him his humble hut! Shortly after the conquest of Britain, occurred the revolt of Queen Boadicea (bō-a-dī-sē'a). Deprived of her kingdom by the Romans, Boadicea drove around in a chariot to stir up the Britons to fight. But, despite Boadicea and her people—champions of British Liberty—the Romans remained masters of England for nearly four hundred years! Meantime other Roman legions avenged their countrymen in

Germany by slaying Hermann in battle, and making his wife and children walk in the victor's triumph.

The First Pope. Christ's followers, Peter and Paul, now came to Rome to preach Christianity, and there made many converts. Because these were not allowed to worship publicly, early Roman Christians held their services in the Căt'a-cōmbs, underground passage-ways also used as burying places, where one can still see paintings of crosses, lambs, bread, and wine. Peter ranks as first bishop of Rome. Because he died a martyr's death, he was canonized (kăn'ŭn-īz'd), — that is to say, deemed worthy to bear the title of "saint." From then on every bishop of Rome became the head of the Roman Catholic Church and was called the Pope (pōp).

Christians Persecuted. Emperor Nē'rō, another monster, sorely persecuted the Christians. Some he sent down into the arena to be eaten by wild beasts, others were crucified, and a few were smeared with tar and set on fire to serve as human torches for his shows! Dissatisfied with the appearance of Rome, which he wished to rebuild according to his own plans, Nero had it set on fire, and then accused the Christians of having done so, as a pretext to torture them worse than ever.

Destruction of Jerusalem. In the year 70 of our era, the Jews rebelled against Rome, and Tī'tūs, son of another emperor, took Jerusalem as the prophets had foretold. He burned down the Temple, which Christ called "My Father's House," and carried off the seven-branched candlestick to figure in his triumph. Titus also scattered the Hebrew People so far and wide, that even now there are only a few Jews left in Pales-

tine, although there are over fifteen millions of them in the world. The exiled Jews transplanted their language, religion, and literature, wherever they went. Their keen brains, their genius for business, their fine principles, were passed on to their descendants, and their talents often used to benefit the Gentiles (jěn'-tīlz) among whom they lived. But, ever since the destruction of their Temple, the dream of the Jews has been to return to Jerusalem and rebuild it a fourth time.



THE COLOSSEUM

At the end of the first century in our era, the huge circus, the Colosseum, was built. It served some 400 years. In the Middle Ages it was partly destroyed.

The Colosseum. Two years after the destruction of Jerusalem, a huge amphitheater (ăm'fī-thē'a-tēr), the

Colosseum (köl-ö-sē-ŭm), was erected in Rome. There, for four hundred years, were given free shows: gladiatorial combats, chariot-races, and sham naval battles; and there slaves and Christians were exposed to wild beasts. Only one-third of this huge building now stands, because during the Middle Ages it served as a quarry for builders. Traces of Roman circuses can be found in all parts of Europe, once under Roman rule, and some of these buildings are so well preserved, they are still used for occasional open-air performances of Greek or Roman plays.

Pompeii and Herculaneum. In 79 A.D. an eruption of Mt. Vesuvius buried beneath forty feet of ashes and lava, the rich, gay, and prosperous cities of Pompeii (pöm-pā'yē) and Hēr-cū-lā'nē-ŭm. We know they boasted beautiful temples and villas, interesting shops, long streets, and fine arenas, because about eighteen hundred years after their burial, the ashes and lava were removed. You can now walk about the streets of these cities, see what is left of their houses, and behold articles rescued from the ruins, such as money, jewels, furniture, statues, paintings, and pottery. In the same eruption perished the naturalist, Pliny (plī'nī), who received the best education Rome could then give, and collected information on twenty thousand matters of importance!

Good Emperors. The Roman emperor Trā'jăn finished the conquest of Austria-Hungary to the Danube, and built the city of Tīm'găd in North Africa. This city was finally abandoned, and now stands in the desert, an object-lesson in Roman architecture, for it is much better preserved than Pompeii. Trajan's

successor, Hā'dri-ăn, visited Britain, and there ordered the building of a wall of seventy miles, to shut out the Northern barbarians (the Picts and Scots).

Our Debt. We owe to the scattered Jews many benefits besides the Old Testament. To the recovery of Pompeii and Herculaneum, and the remains of great circuses, baths, walls, etc., we owe our knowledge of Roman civilization. To the Christian persecutions we owe inspiring tales of the constancy of the Martyrs.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BULWER-LYTTON, *The Last Days of Pompeii*.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 221-225, 228-234, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 21-26, American Book Co.

1. How did the Romans conquer the British and how long were they masters there?
2. Who is the Pope and what is his office?
3. Describe the destruction of Jerusalem and the scattering of the Jews.
4. How were Pompeii and Herculaneum destroyed?

CHAPTER XLII

CHRISTIANITY IN EUROPE

Christianity. Meantime, Christianity continued to spread throughout the Roman Empire, although good and bad emperors sorely persecuted the Christians. Thanks to the Roman roads, Christian missionaries could reach all parts of the Roman Empire. Before the end of the first century they made converts in Greece, Italy, France, Spain, Britain, along the Rhine and Danube Rivers, in Western Asia, India, and North

Africa. The emperor Constantine (kǒn'stǎn-tīn) became a Christian early in the fourth century, and when he proclaimed (313 A.D.) that Christianity would henceforth be the Roman religion, no objections were made, for the Romans had almost abandoned their old belief. Thus the Italians can justly pride themselves upon being the first Christian *nation* in Europe. Because Christ taught charity (love) instead of cruelty, Roman games thereafter became less and less bloody, and in 410 A.D. gladiatorial combats entirely ceased.

Constantinople. Soon after becoming a Christian, Constantine transferred his capital to Byzantium, which, after bearing that Greek name nearly a thousand years, became Constantinople. Constantine surrounded this city with walls fifteen miles around, and transported thither great art-treasures to decorate its forum, palaces, baths, theaters, and circuses. His Christian mother, Helena, recovered the Cross upon which Christ was crucified, and built the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, at Jerusalem.

New Comers. Meantime, the Chinese had discovered India, and Christian monks had gone from there to China. Thinking that the Chinese might want to monopolize the silk trade, these monks cleverly hid silk-worms in hollow bamboo staffs and brought them home! Thus silk-worm breeding started in Southern Europe, where it has been carried on successfully ever since.

End of Western Empire. In 364 A.D. the great Roman Empire was divided, one Emperor ruling the West — with his capital at Rome or Mī'lǎn — and the

other the East — with his capital at Constantinople. These two emperors tried to hold back the barbarians, who were storming the Roman frontier on all sides. Each tribe of barbarians differed somewhat from the others in race, language, and customs. There were, for instance, the Slävs, who settled in Russia, where they founded Kief and Nôv'gō-rōd. Then the Goths and Vandals swept across Northern Europe, through France and Spain, and crossed to North Africa, where the latter founded a kingdom. The destruction they left in their wake has made their names a by-word in all European languages! The Visigoths (vīz'ī-gōths), being prevented from plundering Greece, marched on to Rome, where their chief Āl'a-rīc allowed his men to pillage for three days! He was leading them on to conquer more lands, when he died, and was secretly buried with priceless treasures in an Italian river-bed. His people finally settled in Southwestern France and Spain. Other barbarians entered France through the Vēr-dün' Pass (where such terrific battles were fought in the Great War). Among these were the Būr-gūn'-dī-āns, who settled in Eastern France, where their descendants still live.

Our Debt. We owe the spread of Christ's teachings to the preaching of the Apostles, to the courage of the Martyrs, and to the fine Roman roads. To the Romans we owe the preservation of the world's civilization, which, without their bravery, would have been destroyed by the barbarian hordes. To the barbarians we owe new vigor and energy infused in Europe.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

HAAREN AND POLAND, *Famous Men of the Middle Ages*, pp. 27-36, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 268-273, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, p. 44, American Book Co.

1. How did Christianity spread and under what circumstances did it become the Roman religion?
2. When did Byzantium change its name and what is it called now?
3. Which were the Great Barbarian Invasions?

CHAPTER XLIII

THE TERRIBLE HUNS

Roman Troops Recalled. Great anarchy (ăn'ar-kĭ) (no government or order) in China started the Huns, at the end of the second century, on a two-hundred-year-long raid, which extended through Asia and Europe. As they approached the Roman Empire, (420), the soldiers on the Great Wall in Britain were hastily called home to defend Italy. The Britons, whose battles had been fought by Roman legions for nearly four hundred years, were unable to withstand Piets and pirates and vainly called for Roman aid.

The Saxons in England. In their distress, the Britons finally invited the Saxons (săk'sŭnz), a German tribe which loved fighting, to come and defend them. These fair-skinned, blue-eyed, light-haired Saxons were freemen, accustomed to governing themselves, and to trying an accused man before a jury before condemning him. They first defended the Britons against the other barbarians, then they de-

cided to occupy Britain themselves, and divided the country into seven kingdoms, ruled by Saxons, Jutes (jǔtz), and Angles (ǎn'gl'z). Thus the Britons were driven into Wales and Cornwall, where legend claims they were governed by King Arthur. Fascinating tales and poems have been written about him, his Round Table, and the Knights who sought the Holy Grail.

The Huns. The Huns, whose coming had brought the Roman legions home in a hurry, finally appeared



ATTILA

Attila, chief of the Huns, was defeated at Châlons in 451.

in Western Europe, riding wild ponies, brandishing their enemies' heads at the ends of their lances, and uttering frightful cries. They followed their leader, Attila (ǎt'ī-la), who boasted "no grass ever grew where his horse had once trod!" Near Châlons (shǎ-lôn'), a world-battle was fought (451), wherein Romans, Franks, Burgundians, and Gauls united in a desperate attempt to check Attila. After a three days' battle, in which the Huns were

defeated, Attila retired to Hungary, which although peopled by Magyars (mǒd'yörz), still bears the Hun's name.

Clovis. Among the heroes who distinguished themselves in this battle, was Měr-ō'vī-ūs, chief of the Franks, — a German tribe which had recently crossed the Rhine into Gaul. His grandson Clō'vis made Paris his capital, and conquered the greater part of the country, which then became Frankland, or France. Being conquerors, the Franks lorded it over the Gauls, but they fought bravely to prevent other German tribes from crossing the Rhine. In one of these battles — after vainly asking his heathen god's aid — Clovis vowed that if the God of his Christian wife helped him, he would be baptized! A legend claims that angels then fought for Clovis, who, having won the victory, marched on to Rheims. There, near the site of the wrecked Cathedral, he was baptized and called "Eldest Son of the Church."

End of the Western Empire — 476 A.D. Shortly after Clovis'

baptism, the Vandals crossed from Africa to Sicily and Italy where they caused great damage. The Western Roman Empire was now so weak, that it came to an end in 476 A.D. This date may be said to mark the end of Ancient Times, and the beginning of the Middle Ages, which were to last about a thousand years.



CLOVIS

The Merovingian, Clovis, who made Paris his capital and named Gaul France.

Justinian. Emperors at Constantinople now tried to rule all that was left of the once great and glorious Roman Empire. One of the best of them, Jūs-tín'ĩ-ăn, compiled (put together) the Justinian Code, a model of Roman law. He also built the Church of St. Sophia, at Constantinople.

Changes. Meantime the Bulgars settled in Europe, and the Vandals, drafted into the Roman armies, disappeared as a nation. In India, a new era began (606) and in Burmah and China people printed with blocks and movable type, seven centuries before it was tried in Europe! Northern Europe, Norway and Denmark were governed by chiefs, famous in Northern sã-gãs (tales). The most noted of them all is Sigurd (zē'görd), the Siegfried of the German Niebelungenlied (nē'bē-löög-ën-lēt), or great Northern epic, a man who had thrilling adventures with a dragon.

Fairs. Merchants, bringing wares from Italy, now paid regular visits to the main towns of France and Germany, to hold fairs on their market-places. Because troops of merchants often traveled together — for the sake of companionship and protection — a variety of goods were offered for sale at such fairs.

Hermits and Monks. Early in the Christian Era, men fancied they could best save their own souls and serve God, by living apart as hermits, and by spending all their time in the study of the Scriptures and prayer. Later, hermits dwelt in clusters of cells, meeting for worship only. In the sixth century, a holy man, St. Benedict, framed strict rules for religious communities. Composed of men only, they were called abbeys (ăb'iz), or monasteries, and had abbots or priors to

rule the monks. When composed of women, such communities were called abbeys or convents, and had abbesses or prioresses to direct the nuns. In the Middle Ages monasteries and convents were not merely religious establishments, but were the only schools, hospitals, asylums, and sanctuaries, for the young, sick, orphans, or fugitives from justice.

Our Debt. We owe to the Saxons an example of self-government and of trial by jury, besides many words of the English language, to public fairs, the beginning of modern trade, to mediaeval monasteries and convents, examples of unselfish living and charity.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

PYLE, *King Arthur*.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 31-36, 57-58, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 44-47, 49-53, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Romans*, pp. 277-278, American Book Co.

1. Describe how the Saxons came to England and what followed.
2. Describe the defeat of the Huns.
3. Who were Clovis and Justinian? Give the date of the end of the Western Empire.

CHAPTER XLIV

MOHAMMED

The Story of Mohammed. Another religion, which counts about 176,000,000 followers, is that of Is'lām, preached by Mohammed (mō-hām'ed). Born in Arabia and brought up in the desert, Mohammed was in turn shepherd, merchant, and camel driver. At forty he began to preach that although Christ and

Moses were great prophets, Allah (ă'l'a) (God) had chosen *him* (Mohammed) to teach a new religion. Driven away from Mec-ca, Mohammed decided to convert the world with the sword! Because he could neither read nor write, his disciples wrote down his rhymed teachings, which compose the Kō-răn', or Mōs-lēm (Mohammedan) Bible. After Mohammed had conquered all Arabia, his followers began to count time from his Hegira (hěj'īra) (flight), 622 A.D., just as Christians count time from the birth of Christ. From Arabia, Mohammed's followers gradually extended their conquests and conversions, until there are now Moslems in every part of the world.

Arabic Numbers. The Mohammedan Arabs borrowed from India, and introduced into Egypt — their next conquest — the Arabic numbers. They also taught algebra to the civilized world, and the art of making paper from rags. From Egypt they proceeded along the North African coast, until with their converts, the Mōors, they crossed over into Sicily and entered Spain (711). Wherever they went, they gave people the choice between Mohammedanism or death! Wishing to continue their conquests, and plunder the rich churches in France, they next poured over the Pyrenees. At Tours (tūr) (732) a Frank noble, Charles the Hammer, killed their leader, and defeated them so sorely that they retreated and never ventured to cross the Pyrenees again. This battle made it sure that Christians, and not Moslems, would occupy the main part of Europe.

Arabian Nights. In about one century, the Moslems had conquered Arabia, Syria, Palestine, Persia, Central Asia, Turk'estan, Egypt, North Africa, and Spain!

Mohammed's descendants, the Caliphs (kā'līfz) of Damascus, ruled these Moslems until the family died out. Then other Caliphs settled at Bagdad, whence came the Tale of the Arabian Nights. The story goes that a Caliph married a new wife every day, and had her put to death on the morrow, for fear she should gain influence over him, or plot his death! One of these wives begged this Caliph to allow her, early in the morning, to tell a story to her sister. The Caliph consented, and became so interested in the tale himself, that, as it was not finished when the rising hour came, he allowed the story-teller to live another night, so as to finish it the next morning. The clever princess not only finished that story, but began another, so thrilling, that the Caliph wished to hear its end, too. Thus, by telling stories, always "to be continued on the morrow," the princess saved her life, for the Caliph presently fell in love with her. The best known of these tales, "Aladdin and the Wonderful Lamp," "Sinbad the Sailor," "The Dream of Alnaschar," and "Ali Baba and the Forty Thieves," have been translated into many languages.

Our Debt. We owe to Moslem Arabs the Arabic numbers, algebra, rag-paper manufacture, Mohammedanism, the Koran, and the Arabian Nights. By Charles the Hammer's victory, Christian Europe was saved from Mohammedanism.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

The Arabian Nights.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 63-65, American Book Co.

1. Tell the story of Mohammed.
2. To whom do we owe the numbers we use?
3. Tell how the "Arabian Nights" stories were started.

THE MIDDLE AGES

CHAPTER XLV

STORY OF CHARLEMAGNE

Christian Missionaries. Meantime, not by force, but by persuasion, Christian missionaries were winning converts everywhere. In Great Britain monasteries and churches were established under Roman rule, and boasted saints, like Äl'bän, Colomba, and Patrick. But, with the arrival of the Saxons and Angles, Christianity was almost stamped out. One day, the monk Gregory saw in the Roman slave-market some beautiful Saxon children. Learning whence they came, he longed to go to Britain to convert the Saxons. He could not go himself, but as soon as he became Pope, he sent St. Augustine thither with forty monks. Not only did St. Augustine convert the Saxon king, who had a Christian wife, but he built a Church at Canterbury, where the great Cathedral now stands. Because Augustine was the *first* British Bishop, his successor still bears the title of Primate (prī'māt) (first priest) of England. Even among the Goths, in the marshes of Holland, and in the almost impenetrable forests of Germany, other brave missionaries ventured, some losing their lives, but others boldly destroying the heathen idols, as you can read in Van Dyke's (van dīk') "First Christmas Tree."

Charlemagne. Because Charles the Hammer saved Europe from Moslem rule and religion, his son became

first king of the Carolingian (kār-ō-līn'jī-ăn) dynasty in France. Then his grandson Charlemagne (shar'lē-



CHARLEMAGNE'S EMPIRE

mān), conquered Germany, and compelled the Saxons to stop murdering missionaries. Charlemagne ruled

all France, part of Spain — where he conquered the Moslems — Belgium, Holland, part of Denmark, nearly all Germany and Austria-Hungary, all Switzerland, and a part of Italy. Being a Christian, he built many churches, including one at Aix-la-Chapelle (ěks'lá-shá-pěl'), beneath whose Cathedral dome he lies buried in royal state. Not only a mighty fighter, but a great organizer, he made wise laws to govern the nations he vainly tried to weld into one. He also encouraged learned men to found public schools, which he visited, and whose pupils he examined, and, grown man and sovereign as he was, he attended school *himself* to learn to read and write!

Foot and Inch. Besides regulating the coin of his realm, Charlemagne decided his own foot should be the standard measure of length, as it is still in many parts of the world. When his counselors remarked that the foot would have to be divided into fractions for smaller measures, Charlemagne marked off the width of his thumb on the line showing the length of his foot, and triumphantly proclaimed: "Twelve king's thumbs (inches) make a king's foot!" Charlemagne's fame spread as far as Bagdad, whence a Caliph sent him a water-clock which struck the hours, the first camel ever seen in France, and a game of ivory chessmen!

Charlemagne Emperor. Charlemagne also conquered the Löm'bärds (Germans who occupied North Italy), and gave their land to the Pope, who, from that time until 1870, ruled part of Italy. Thus the Pope had tēm'pō-rāl (worldly) as well as spīr'it-ū-āl (soul) power. Grateful for Charlemagne's gift and protection, this Pope, on Christmas Day, in St. Peter's

Church, Rome, crowned Charlemagne Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire! (800 A.D.). Like the Western



From the painting by Kaulbach.

CORONATION OF CHARLEMAGNE

On Christmas Day, 800, the Pope crowned Charlemagne, Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire.

Roman emperors, Charlemagne ruled Western Europe, but his was called the *Holy* Roman Empire, because

his subjects were Christians, and because he was crowned by the Pope.

Charlemagne's Wars. Throughout his reign, Charlemagne warred against restless nations. One of his most exciting campaigns was against the Saracens (sär-a-sěnz) (Moors) of Spain. His nephew, Rō'lānd — guiding the rear guard of the French army through the Pyrenees at the end of the war — died there heroically, as told in the "Song of Roland," the great French epic. Before dying, Charlemagne realized that the Northern pirates, who dared not attack the coasts of France while he lived, would cause great trouble to his successors. These pirates (Norsemen and Danes) who traveled on the "swan-road" (the sea) in their "dragons" (big boats) and "snails" (little boats), plundered and killed, burned down houses and churches, and sailed away again before they could be caught and punished. They were known as "vī-kings," because they sailed out of northern "vīks" or bays. They had no compasses but kept ravens on board. When they lost their bearings, they set the ravens free and followed them to the nearest land. The vikings raided Great Britain, the Iberian (Spanish) Peninsula, and, entering the Mediterranean, plundered even in Italy. Then, too, other barbarians forced the people at the northern end of the Adriatic to forsake their homes on the mainland, and build dwellings on piles, in a group of marshy islands. This was the beginning of the famous city of Venice (810).

Fairs. Throughout Charlemagne's reign, fairs were held at intervals at Aix-la-Chapelle, and at Troyes (trwä) (in the Champagne country). Fair-merchants

(shän-pän'y)

i as in father
i as in all

going from place to place proved great news-carriers. They may have told Western Europe that Serbia had just crowned its first king!

Our Debt. We owe to Charlemagne wise laws, schools, the foot and inch measures, and many civilizing efforts. To his time also belongs the beginning of the "Song of Roland," the great French epic. Barbarians then compelled the founding of Venice, one of the most picturesque cities in the world.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

VAN DYKE, *The Blue Flower, The First Christmas Tree.*

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 29-31, 38-40, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 68-81.

1. Tell the story of St. Augustine's conversion of England.
2. Tell the life of Charlemagne.
3. Tell about the Fair Merchants, what they sold, how they travelled, what they reported.

CHAPTER XLVI

CASTLES

Feudalism. You know that a ladder has rungs, by which one climbs from the bottom to the top. In the Old World, human beings formed the rungs of a social ladder. Beginning at the top, the social and political rungs were: emperor, king, duke, marquis, count or earl, viscount, baron, squire, citizen or freeman, peasant or farmer, and serf or slave. Each man pledged himself by oath (feud) to fulfill certain duties, and to obey his over-lord, the man above him.

In return, each lord was bound to protect his vassal, the man below him. Any man who proved faithless to such pledges, was called a traitor or disloyal. Besides the worldly hierarchy (hī'ēr-är-kǐ) (order of rank), there arose church, military, and naval hierarchies. The Church hierarchy had Pope, cardinals, archbishops, bishops, abbots, priors, priests, monks, deacons, and laymen as the main rungs of its ladder.

Castles. Obligated to protect himself and his vassals against pirates and robbers, each lord built a castle or fortress, as a place of refuge. These castles consisted in a dungeon (dŭn'jŭn)-keep, or strong central tower, with prison cells underground, a guard-room on the ground floor, a banquet hall or general dining-room above that, and higher up, the living-rooms and bedrooms of the lord and his family. On top of this keep was a platform with a flagstaff, from which floated the owner's banner when he was at home. Here, too, night and day, watchmen were stationed to warn the castle inmates of the approach of friend, foe, or stranger.

The Interior of a Castle. Dungeon-keeps generally stood in the center of a series of enclosures, on the inner side of which were dwellings for servants, vassals, and men-at-arms, besides storing places for provisions, weapons, and ammunition. There were also stables, a smithy, bake-house, mill, still, and all the shops needed to keep such establishments running smoothly. Each enclosure was provided with ramparts, loop-holes to shoot through, and holes in overhanging cornices through which boiling water, oil, or pitch could be poured down upon the assailants. The outermost wall

was generally surrounded by a moat (mōt), or deep ditch, filled with water, so no one could get near enough to the walls to scale them. To cross this belt of water there was a draw-bridge — raised or lowered by machinery — at the main entrance. The massive doorway to the castle was further guarded by a portcullis (pōrt-kŭl'is) (heavy iron grating), which could be lowered or raised in a second, to prevent any one from entering or leaving without permission.

A Knight. Young nobles remained at home until seven years old, when they were sent to court, or to some other castle, to serve as pages.

There they were taught music, chess, and good manners by the ladies. At fourteen they became squires (skwirz), accompanied the lord everywhere, learned to care for and handle weapons and war-steeds, and were trained to become accomplished noblemen. At twenty-one, their apprenticeship ended, they became knights. After spending a night in Church in prayer, watching his future weapons (keeping his Vigil at



THE INTERIOR OF A CASTLE

Some castles enclosed churches and monasteries in their walls. But dungeon-keeps generally stood in the center of many enclosures, where there were dwellings for the vassals, and many places for storage.

Arms), a young knight received a ceremonial bath, to indicate purity, was clothed in white, and led to the altar, where he promised to fight for church and country, to respect women, to protect the weak and old, and to defend the oppressed. These vows taken, a knight or lady tapped the kneeling candidate on the shoulder with the flat of a sword-blade, saying to him, "Rise, Sir So-and-So," before welcoming him into the Order of Knighthood, by the Accolade (ăk-ō-lād'), a kiss on either cheek.

Tournaments. Knights delighted in Tournaments, or public exhibitions of skill. They ran tilts against each other in the "līsts," fought sham battles, jousted (jōöst'ēd) (fenced on horseback with lances or swords), and strove for applause. On such occasions they generally wore their lady-love's "favor," a ribbon, or embroidered sleeve, on their helmets.

Our Debt. We owe to the Middle Ages the formation of social, ecclesiastic, military, and naval hierarchies. To the Knights, we owe the words chivalry and chivalrous, and stories showing high ideals of honor, truthfulness, loyalty, kindness, and bravery.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 83-86, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 78-79, American Book Co.

1. What is the meaning of hierarchy? Can you give the hierarchy of the army?
2. Describe a castle.
3. Describe how one became a knight.
4. Describe a Tournament.

CHAPTER XLVII

LIFE IN THE MIDDLE CLASS

Judicial Duels. In the time of Charlemagne and all through the Middle Ages, a criminal fleeing from justice, or any man needing protection, was safe from his pursuers if he succeeded in reaching a church, monastery, or "city of refuge." Men were also allowed to fight to prove their innocence, for God was supposed to give the victory to the innocent. In early times, men of all ranks fought in such cases; later, only knights and soldiers fought in duels, for all others accused were tried by juries of men of their own rank.

Peasants. We have seen that lords lived in castles, where their vassals sought refuge in time of war. These vassals were the people living on their lands. They were bound to serve as soldiers, to work for their master a certain number of days a week without pay, to till his land, and to give him a certain part of the produce. Thus these peasants were *almost* slaves, but they could be sold only with the land.

Towns. When a lord's vassals became too numerous to find refuge in his castle, they often congregated in fortified towns, where they practiced various trades. The master-craftsmen of these different trades, their workmen, and the apprentices they trained, formed Guilds, the beginning of the Labor Unions of our day. Although still vassals, and obliged to pay taxes and serve in war-time, they soon purchased from their lords the right to govern and defend themselves. Some

cities finally bought from their overlords their entire freedom. Then they received, from the King, a charter which made them "Commoners" or "Burghers" (bûr'gěr), that is to say, members of a third order of society or Middle Class. Thus, the four classes of society in France, for instance, were: the Clergy, the Nobles (of Frank descent), the burghers (of Gallo-Roman descent), and the peasants (of Celtic and slave descent).

Charlemagne's Successors. Less than thirty years after Charlemagne's death, his grandsons were ruling the separate kingdoms of France, Germany, and Lorraine (a belt of land stretching from the North Sea to the Mediterranean) instead of an empire. Intended to act as a buffer-state between France and Germany, Lorraine thus became and has since remained a bone of contention. The first kings of France and of Germany soon agreed to take and divide it between them. At Strasburg, in the presence of both their armies, they swore to help each other, the king of France speaking in the German dialect so as to be understood by his brother's men, and the King of Germany speaking in the French dialect. This "Strasburg Oath" is the oldest French and German document that exists, for until then, all contracts, like all books, had been written in Latin, the literary language of Western Europe. Modern French is therefore a mixture of Latin, Gallic, and Frank (German); and German, a mixture of Latin and the many German dialects.

Many Changes. The Eastern emperors — still ruling at Constantinople — now proved so weak, that

Northern tribes seized Russia, which they ruled more than seven hundred years. In the ninth century the Churches of Rome and Constantinople disagreed so strongly that they separated. The Bishop of Rome, or Pope, continued to be head of the Roman Catholic Church, to which the Christians of Central or Western Europe belonged; while the Bishop of Constantinople, or Patriarch, became head of the Greek Church, to which the Christians in the East belonged. Unable to prevent Norse pirates from coming up the Seine (sân) to besiege Paris, a French king, at the beginning of the tenth century, gave the province at the mouth of the Seine to the Normans, under Rollo, on condition they would henceforth keep all other pirates from raiding northern France.

Our Debt. We owe to the Middle Ages the evil custom of duelling, which continued, even in America, until about a century ago. We owe the beginning of industrial towns and the rise of the Middle Class to France. At that time, also, the various West European languages took form.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 89-90, 96-97, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 36-38, American Book Co.

1. Name the ancient modes of obtaining justice.
2. Describe the occupations of peasants and townspeople.
3. Tell how and when Normandy came into the hands of the Normans.

CHAPTER XLVIII

ENGLAND UNITED

Alfred. Just as Charlemagne gathered the tribes in France and Germany under his rule, Egbert, the Saxon, united the seven kingdoms founded by the Jutes, Saxons, and Angles. The latter bestowed their name upon the whole country, for "England" is derived from "Anglesland." We are told that a later king, Alfred the Great, learned to read, as a boy, from a beautiful Saxon manuscript, which his mother promised to give to the first of her sons who could read it. Many of *your* books can be purchased for a few cents, but in Alfred's day, when books were copied and illustrated by hand, they were so precious that even a small one was worth more than a farm. During his boyhood Alfred won the book and visited Rome, riding thither along old Roman highways, because in those days everyone walked or rode. Imagine all the strange things this observant boy must have seen, in the course of that long ride!

Danish Raids. Before Alfred became king, Dān'ish raids in England had caused great ruin. At the beginning of his reign the Danes were masters of a large part of the country. Alfred, hiding in a peasant's hut, was scolded for letting oat-cakes burn, while planning a way to recover his kingdom. Disguised as a harper, he next entertained the soldiers in the Danish camp, with songs and stories. While doing this, he noted the number and equipment of his foes, found out their plans, and, escaping without detection, assembled an

army and defeated them. Then he made a treaty with the Danes, who were granted part of the country.



ALFRED IN DISGUISE

He is entertaining soldiers who fail to recognize him.

There they soon learned Saxon ways, and in time became Christians.

Alfred's Busy Days. King Alfred is one of England's great heroes, because he saved England for the Anglo-Saxon race, from which the bulk of Americans are descended. He proved a wonderful ruler, because he never spared himself. One third of his time was devoted to sleep and recreation, one third to royal duties, and one third to study. You see, Alfred realized that the more he learned, the more useful he would be to his people, and that, if he found what made

other nations prosper or decay, he could better help the Saxons to become a great people. As he had to study by candlelight in winter, and as the many draughts, caused by windows without glass, continually blew out his light, he devised the first horn lantern. He also discovered a way of measuring time at night by means of candles, gauged to burn an inch per hour. Alfred is also founder of the British navy, for he first kept a fleet of ships circling around the British Islands to keep pirates away. He made wise laws for his people, encouraged fairs and, being a Saxon, believed in trial by jury and in popular assemblies.

Germany Becomes Civilized. While the first Bulgar kingdom was rising, the work of civilization was progressing in Germany. The fifty Roman forts along the Rhine, and some along the Danube, had become towns (Cologne (kōl-ōn'), Mainz (mīnts), Vienna, etc.). Charlemagne had been succeeded as Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire mainly by Germans, who ruled the north and Italy. They bestowed duchies upon their followers, on condition they would defend the empire from all invaders, and especially from the Huns, who raided the country every year. Tired of these inroads, a Saxon emperor, Henry the Fowler, so-called because fond of hawk-hunting, offered to pay tribute to the Huns for ten years, on condition that they remain at home. During that time, Henry erected a line of frontier fortresses, or "burgs," wherein one out of every nine freemen was obliged to live for a year, supported by the other eight, and train to fight the Huns. Thus, as all served in turn, at the end of ten years all were good soldiers. Then Henry refused

to pay further tribute, knowing his fortresses were too well manned for the angry Huns to take, or pass them! These frontier burghs in time became cities, whose inhabitants were called burghers. The people living within their walls, like the Middle Class in France, worked at different trades, formed guilds, had apprentices, and sold their goods at great fairs.

Our Debt. Alfred made it possible for the Saxon race to develop and become civilized in England. Famous cities in Northern Europe, with their trade guilds and commerce, were begun.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn.

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 46-54, American Book Co.

1. How were books reproduced?
2. Tell the story of Alfred.
3. How were the Huns prevented from raiding Germany?

CHAPTER XLIX

THE YEAR ONE THOUSAND

The People's Terror. All over the world, Christians expected Christ's Second Coming at any moment. Although Christ Himself said the end of the world would come without warning, it was announced many times, as it is still. People felt so sure it would take place in the year 1000, one millennium after the birth of Christ, that they refused to build, plant, sow, or do anything save watch, pray, and do penance (pěň'äns).

Many gave all they had to churches and monasteries, hoping such gifts would atone for their sins. You can imagine how upset the Christian world was, how little work was done, and how rich churches and monasteries became. People who do not work, fail to do their duty; and as fields were not tilled, food became scarce and dear, and famine was followed by sickness and death. As Judgment Day did not come, people fancied a mistake had been made in the date of Christ's birth and waited anxiously three or four years. Then, they imagined the end of the world would come a thousand years after Christ's death! In that way the Christian world was kept in a state of turmoil some thirty-five years!

The Building of Cathedrals. The wealth piled up by churches and monasteries during that time, was used during the next few centuries to build the cathedrals, churches, chapels, abbeys, monasteries, and convents, which we still admire. They were erected by guilds of workmen, skilled in such work, often aided by the faithful who served without pay. Ever since the days of Hiram (page 79), skilled architects, masons, wood and stone-carvers, etc., had formed working-guilds, traveling from place to place, and building whatever was called for. By this time there were mason-guilds of every nationality; for Jews hired Hebrews to build synagogues; Mohammedans, Moslems to build mosques and minarets; Hindu, Buddhist, or Brahman workmen to make wonderful temples and pagodas; and Christians, men of their own faith, to erect churches and cathedrals. Among workmen societies, the Mason's Guild (gild) was first and most

important, and gave rise to the world-wide Freemason Society.

Object Lessons in Religion. Although there were already many kinds of architecture in the world, the Christians developed a new style, with pointed arches, called Gôthîc or Ogival (ô-jî'văl). Because most people could not read, these churches were decorated *inside* with paintings and stained-glass windows representing the Life of Christ, stories from the Old and New Testaments, and scenes from the Lives of the Saints. *Outside* were statues, bas-reliefs, and mosaics, because painting cannot withstand the weather. Some churches were so lavishly decorated, that they served as illustrated Bibles, and as places of assembly for the whole community. To entertain and instruct the people, first churchmen, then companies of actors, played "Passion Plays" or scenes from the Life of Christ. Given generally on Church Squares, these plays became very popular, and took the place of the old Greek and Roman tragedies and comedies.

Our Debt. To the later centuries of the Middle Ages we owe the erection of famous cathedrals, churches, abbeys, monasteries, and convents in Christian Europe, the wealth of paintings, statues, mosaics, stained-glass windows, and the first Passion Plays, the mediaeval theater.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.
GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 99-101, American Book Co.

1. What occasioned the fear of the year 1000 A.D.?
2. Describe how Cathedrals were built and decorated.
3. What were "guilds"?

DISCOVERIES, CONQUESTS, CRUSADES

CHAPTER L

THE NORMAN CONQUEST OF ENGLAND

The Norse Discovery of America. Capetian (kå-pē'-shǎn) kings had just supplanted the weak descendants of Charlemagne in France, and the Danes were again raiding England, when a great event occurred, which caused no sensation whatever. Vikings, guided by ravens, had discovered Iceland (860) and established colonies there. About a century later, wishing to visit his Iceland friends, Eric the Red was driven so far out of his course, that he discovered and colonized Greenland (968). Next, Lief the Lucky, on his way to Greenland, was also blown out of his course, and reaching the North American continent, coasted southward from Labrador. He landed where he could secure fine timber and saw so many wild grapes that he called the country Vĩn-land. These Norsemen, who discovered America (1001), told the story to their friends, and it was written in one of their sagas (heroic tales), in Rũn'ic, or Icelandic writing. But in those days there was so little communication between nations, and so few letters were written, that Lief's discovery did not become generally known. He and his friends tried to plant a colony in the new country, but were driven away by the Indians, whom, on account of their terrifying war-whoops, they called Screechers! Then, all memory of Lief's journey was lost.

Story of King Canute. Meantime, the Danes in England, who had kept within bounds under King Alfred, became so troublesome, that the Saxons killed



CANUTE REPROVES THE COURTIER

Called "Lord of Land and Sea", Canute proves that the tide rises, notwithstanding his command.

all they could on a certain day. To avenge this massacre, a Danish king conquered England. His son,

Canute (ka-nūt'), after becoming a Christian, conquered Norway, and, because he ruled three kingdoms, was called by his courtiers, "Lord of land and sea." Disliking such flattery, Canute once ordered his throne placed on the seashore, and when the tide rose, haughtily ordered the waves to stand still! Of course, the tide did not obey, and, as king and courtiers beat a hasty retreat, Canute drily remarked that evidently someone else was "Lord of the sea!"

The Normans. You remember how Normans settled in France. There they learned its language, obeyed its



LEANING TOWER OF
PISA

The city of Pisa erected a tower in 1170, which is one hundred and eighty feet high, with its top thirteen feet from its base line.

laws, became Christians, and from pirates became so honest, that golden bracelets, hanging on a tree in full view, remained untouched a whole year! Although so civilized, the Normans remained bold fighters, and while they no longer robbed each other, or France, they raided other lands on any pretext. Learning that the Italian city of Pisa (pē'za) had driven the Saracens out of Sardinia, a band of Normans undertook to oust these "unbelievers" from Sicily also. So, for a time, that island remained under their rule. Although the Pope was still master of a good part of Italy, many cities had become independent, and being jealous of each other, often made war. Cities on the sea or river shore, such as Venice, Pisa, and Genoa, prospered

greatly by trading like the Phoenicians of old. Some of the wealth thus obtained they used to embellish their cities. The greatest building thus erected is the Leaning Tower of Pisa (1170), one hundred and eighty feet high, with its top thirteen feet away from its base line, so that, when you climb up and look down, you have the impression your weight is going to make it tip over! No one now knows whether this tower was *intended* to lean or not, but it has "leaned" thus more than eight hundred years, is still perfect, and is one of the Old World's curiosities.

William of Normandy. Meanwhile, William, Duke of Normandy — connected by marriage with the King of England who built Westminster Abbey, and whose tomb can still be seen there — expected to be king of



WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR

This drawing from the Bayeux Tapestry shows William the Conqueror giving commands at the Battle of Hastings, 1066.

England when the childless Saxon king died. But, although William tricked Harold, the other heir, into a promise to help him secure the crown, he had to fight to gain possession of England. We know that the Normans carried arms, casks of wine, and pro-

visions down to their queer little ships (higher and hence less seaworthy than the Viking "dragons" and "snails"), because the Duke's wife embroidered in cross-stitch, on a strip of linen some seventy yards long by twenty inches wide, the story of her husband's expedition. This tapestry is preserved in a French town (Bayeux) whose name it bears and where strangers often go to see it.

The Battle of Hastings. The Normans landed at Hāstings (1066), where the Saxons under Harold, awaited their coming. In this battle, Harold was slain, and was buried on the beach which he so bravely defended against foreign invasion. William "the Conqueror," first Norman king of England, was then crowned in Westminster Abbey. He seized large stretches of land to make royal hunting grounds, and bestowed estates upon his followers, who built thereon massive castles, to keep the conquered Saxons in order. William ordered the ringing of the curfew (kûr'fû) (couvrefeu — cover the fire) bell at nine o'clock every evening, and had a record made of every field, house, head of cattle, etc., in England, to help him tax the people. This report, written in the Dōomsday Book, still exists. The Normans were now the nobles, or upper class in England, while the former Saxon nobles formed the middle class. As they were the most numerous, and as they had ruled England six hundred years, their language, ways, and ideas form the bulk of the English character.

French in England. Having learned French during their one hundred and fifty years in France, the Normans transplanted it to England, where it was the

court language for several centuries. All the former inhabitants, Danes, Britons, and Gaels, having learned Anglo-Saxon, went on using that language, while the better educated learned French. This resulted in a mixture. The English we now speak is composed of Saxon and Norman-French words, which we use every day, little suspecting their origin. For instance, *pig* is Saxon, *pork* (porc) French, *sheep* Saxon, *mutton* (mouton) French, *wood* Saxon, *forest* (forêt) French, etc.

Our Debt. The Norsemen discovered Iceland, Greenland, and America. The Normans transplanted Norman-French vigor, language, customs, and architecture into Sicily and England.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 24-30, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 64-67, 73-78, American Book Co.

1. What countries did the Danes discover and how?
2. Tell the story of William the Conqueror.
3. What was the Court language in England until the Hundred Years' war?

CHAPTER LI

PILGRIMS AND PILGRIMAGES

The Truce of God. The fact that kings and emperors were weak, that each lord and city had an army, with a stronghold wherein to seek refuge, made small wars in Europe so frequent, that peasants could scarcely

till the ground in peace. Because food was necessary, and because all Christians stood in awe of the church, which could ăx-cŏm-mŭ'nŭ-căte them (prevent their entering a church and make every one shun them), the Pope now decreed warfare should stop four days every week. This was called the "Truce of God."

Pilgrims. Meantime, the Moslems had increased in numbers and strength, and now included many races in Asia, among which the Turks proved strong enough to conquer India and all Western Asia. They had no sympathy with the Christians, and hence persecuted all who ventured within their lands, both merchants and pŭl'grims. Pilgrims were Christians who had vowed to visit some holy place, — the grave of a saint, a special church, or the spot where a martyr had died. The holiest of shrines for Christians of every nation was the Manger of Bethlehem, and the Church of the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem. Pilgrims generally vowed to accomplish a pilgrimage in the humblest way possible, taking neither food nor money with them, and begging their way. They usually wore hooded woolen robes (fastened around the waist with a cord), sandals, and wide-brimmed felt hats. Each carried a staff, to which hung a gourd, or jar of water (cooled by evaporation), and wore a leather wallet or "scrip," wherein they put the food and money bestowed upon them by charitable people.

Palmers. To show they had accomplished their pilgrimage, part of which consisted in crossing the sea, returning pilgrims sewed cockle-shells on hat and robe, and brought home palms, such as were laid over the road when Christ made his triumphal entry into

Jerusalem. For that reason they were known as palmers. Because people respected them as holy men, and because they could tell interesting tales of their adventures, palmers were welcome everywhere. Each castle boasted a "Palmer's-Room," or guest-chamber, reserved for just such wanderers, who, in return for shelter, food, and means to continue their journey, entertained the lord, his family and retainers with traveler's tales.

Other Pilgrimages. Pilgrims, who dared not venture as far as the Holy Land, often vowed to visit the shrine of some saint or martyr, for there were many such sacred places in Europe. Interesting stories are told of these saints, which were then more generally known than they are now. English Pilgrims went to the Tomb of St. Alban, and later to that of St. Thomas-à-Becket at Canterbury. Scotch Pilgrims visited St. Colomba's shrine, and the Irish, St. Patrick's grave. The French visited the shrines of St. Denis, St. Martin, or Ste. Geneviève, and the Spanish, that of St. James at Compostella. But next to the Holy Land, the holiest place was Rome, where so many Christians had been martyred beside St. Peter and St. Paul.

The Compass. Sea journeys now became easier and safer, because the compass, invented by the Chinese (2634 B.C.) and used by them for navigation in the third and fourth centuries A.D., had been brought to Europe by Arab traders. Still, new ideas were adopted so slowly, that it was only in the thirteenth century A.D. that the compass came into general use. This was about a century after the Russians became Christians.

Our Debt. Many stories of saints and famous pilgrimages come down to us from the Middle Ages. The mariners' compass was brought to Europe.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

Child's Book of Knowledge.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 107-110, American Book Co.

1. What was the Truce of God? What did it assure?
2. Describe pilgrims and palmers and tell what the difference was.
3. Where were pilgrimages made?

CHAPTER LII

THE FIRST CRUSADE

Peter the Hermit. Pilgrimages, begun early in the Christian Era, steadily increased, and in the year 1000



PETER THE HERMIT

Peter the Hermit preached and led the first Crusade 1095.

they were frequent. As long as Jerusalem remained in the hands of the Romans and Arabs, strangers were allowed to visit the sacred places. But the Turks made it so hard for pilgrims to keep their vows, that loud complaints and protests arose. One pilgrim, Peter the Hermit, suffered so much at their hands, that he obtained the Pope's permission to tell his story to an assembly of priests and nobles at Clermont (France). There, the Pope solemnly urged the French to wrest the Holy

Land from the Turks, and prove they were Christians by fighting for the cross, instead of warring against each other.

The First Crusade. Pleased with the prospect of adventure and fighting, and roused to religious fervor by the eloquence of the Pope and Peter the Hermit, the French volunteered to set out on a Crusade (krūsād') (war for the cross), wearing as badges red crosses on breast and shield. Thus, in 1095 a huge army set out in sections, the poor Crusaders crossing Europe afoot, begging their way, under the leadership of Peter. In the countries through which they passed, the people, who had willingly fed a few pilgrims, could not feed this horde. Some pilgrims stole food and were killed, others turned back discouraged, and many died from famine or disease. But Peter's enthusiasm led a certain number on to Constantinople, where, rather than feed them, the Emperor had them carried across the Bosphorus.

The Taking of Jerusalem. Another army composed of knights, under Godfrey de Bouillon (bōō-yōn'), followed the first detachment. But these men were well equipped, provided with ample funds, and accustomed to warfare. Still, they too suffered greatly, for armor was hot and heavy, and steel helmets were not as good a protection against sun-strokes as the felt caps, or light turbans, of the Turks. Undaunted by hardships, or by the fact that their opponents fought fiercely, the Crusaders seized Antioch and Jerusalem. There, walking barefoot along the road followed by Christ to Calvary, they reverently knelt before His tomb.

The Orders of Knights. These first Crusaders founded the Frank (French) Kingdom of Jerusalem, which was to last about a century, and two famous

religious orders (societies or guilds). One was that of the Knights Templar, pledged to fight in defense of the Temple (Holy Sepulchre), and the other that of the Knights Hospitaler, who escorted pilgrims between Jerusalem and the seashore. To serve Christ, the Hospitalers built and maintained inns and hospitals to shelter and care for weary or sick pilgrims. Meantime, all the Crusaders kept on fighting, to hold the Saracens (Turks) at bay, and besieged and took the city of Tyre, destroyed and rebuilt so many times in over four thousand years' existence.

Great Events. In Spain, the national hero, the Cid (sĭd), fought so bravely against the Moors, that, instead of owning most of the country, they were restricted to the province of Granada. There still stands their beautiful palace, the Alhambra, the finest example of Moorish architecture. The great deeds of this hero supply the material for the great Spanish Epic, "The Cid." There were many other great events in the Europe of this time. The Hohenstaufen (hō-en-shtou'fĕn) family began a hundred years' reign in Germany, a Plantagenet (plăn-tăj'ĕ-nĕt) (French) king ruled England, Moscow was founded, Sweden became independent, and the Saracens made Tlemcen (tlĕm-sen') (Africa) their capital.

Our Debt. The Crusaders set an example in keeping their knightly vows of honor, courtesy, justice, and protection of the weak and oppressed. The Hospitalers gave the Christian world the idea of hospitals and asylums for the sick, old, weary, and helpless. Spain contributed its great epic, "The Cid."

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 109-112, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Epic*, pp. 108-126, J. B. Lippincott Co.

1. Tell the story of Peter the Hermit.
2. Tell the story of the First Crusade, naming the leader.
3. Who were the Knights Templar and the Knights Hospitaller?

CHAPTER LIII

THE THIRD CRUSADE

Crusading Kings. Nearly a century after Jerusalem was taken by the Crusaders, it was recaptured by the Saracens, who wanted to drive the Christians out of Asia. At this news a second Crusade was preached in Europe by St. Bernard, which proved a failure. Then, Richard Lion-Heart, king of England, Philip, king of France, and Frederick Red Beard, emperor of Germany, set out for the Holy Land with huge armies. Because the old emperor was drowned in the East, while crossing a river, the Germans refused to believe he was dead. Legend claims he is still sleeping in a cave in Germany, waiting for the call of his fatherland to rise and fight as of old. Although these Crusaders took some cities, they never reached Jerusalem, for they were sorely weakened by quarrels, and many of the kings and nobles returned home discouraged.

Richard's Captivity. Richard Lion-Heart, last of the third crusade leaders to return home, was shipwrecked on the coast of Dalmatia (dāl-mā'shī-a), whence he hoped to make his way back to England in

pilgrim's garb. But, recognized by a Crusader with whom he had quarreled in Palestine, Richard was made prisoner, and sold to the new emperor of Germany, who planned to keep him captive as long as he



RICHARD LION-HEART

The Third Crusade was headed by Philip of France, Frederick Red Beard of Germany, and Richard Lion-Heart, the main hero.

lived. Richard had left in England a faithful minstrel, Blôn-dél, who, suspecting what had happened, traveled around with his harp, inquiring at every castle whether any prisoner of note was detained there. At one castle, where his suspicions were aroused, he played near the dungeon wall a song he and Richard had composed together, and which no one else knew. When he finished the first verse, he faintly heard his master's voice singing the second!

Hastening back to England, he reported this discovery to Richard's mother, who immediately ransomed her son.

More Crusades. Jerusalem still being in Moslem hands, a fourth Crusade sailed from Venice to rescue

Constantinople from the weak hands of the Emperor of the East. These Crusaders founded a new Eastern Empire, which ended after some sixty years, but they did not free the Holy Sepulchre. Then, Crusaders from many lands vainly tried to take Jerusalem, but it remained under Moslem rule until the recent Great War. The most touching of the eleven great Crusades, was first that of Saint Louis, which brought the crown of thorns to Paris, where the Sainte Chapelle was erected in its honor. Next that of the children, from eight to sixteen, who, imagining the young and innocent could accomplish what strong men had failed to do, ran away from home to march to Jerusalem. They fancied every city they came to must be their goal! Some were overtaken and brought home, many died on the way, and those who reached the seashore, were enticed aboard ships and sold into slavery in Africa!

Result of Crusades. The Crusades, which extended over a period of two hundred years, opened a new field for the energies of the nobles, and taught them to share the life, hardships, and dangers of their men. Besides instilling lessons in democracy, they showed them there were other lands, other people, other standards of honor and religion, and that one could learn much even from "in'fī-dēls" (unbelievers). The Crusades also furthered trade, because Crusaders learned in the East to use sugar, spices, dates, etc. They brought back to Europe new food seeds, such as buckwheat, melon, and apricot. Drugs, dyes, perfumes, cotton and silken goods, and glass-ware, began to be regularly imported from the East; and windmills,

first seen there, entirely supplanted the old hand or animal-mills for grinding grain. During the Crusades, money came into general use for trade, and the gold florin (minted at Florence) was soon the standard European coin.

Events in Italy. Eastern emperors were again ruling Constantinople, when a brother of a king of France conquered Sicily. He proved so poor a master that the Sicilians rebelled and massacred the French soldiers while vesper bells were ringing one evening. This is only one of the many tragic happenings of the age in Italy, where the small city republics were continually at war, and proved unkind to their greatest men. Florence, for instance, exiled Dante (dän'tā), author of a wonderful poem, "The Divine Comedy," telling about his imaginary journey through the Inferno (Hell), through Purgatory, and through Paradise (Heaven).

Our Debt. The Crusades conferred many benefits. New foods and wares were introduced into Western Europe. Money came into general use. Dante's "Divine Comedy," a world classic, has come down to us from this period.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 105-117, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 120-121, 134-138, American Book Co.

1. What legend is told of Frederick Red Beard?
2. Tell the story of Richard the Lion Heart's life.
3. What was the Children's Crusade? What was the result of the Crusades?

FREEDOM AND WAR

CHAPTER LIV

SWISS INDEPENDENCE

The Zuyder Zee. The marshes of Holland had early received a Northern tribe which prospered there greatly, and built a system of dykes to protect their rich farm lands from the inroads of the sea. This was necessary because in the thirteenth century the North Sea took a great bite out of the country. To account for this gulf, the Zuyder Zee (zī'dēr-zā'), an interesting legend is told.

The Hansa and the Fuggers. Between the thirteenth and sixteenth centuries first a few, then finally about a hundred German commercial towns formed a trade league, called the Hansa. Its armed forces escorted merchants on land and sea, to protect them from the attacks of robber-knights and of sea and river pirates. Inland, Nuremburg and Frankfort were among the richest Hansa cities, and Lübeck and Hamburg, its greatest seaports, sent out fleets of trading vessels to all ports of Europe. The Füg'gërs of Augsburg, descendants of a clever weaver, made such a fortune in linen, thanks to the Hansa, that they became German merchant princes.

Switzerland and Tell. Having governed herself a long time under imperial protection, Switzerland (Helvetia) became angry when handed over to an Austrian

duke, who appointed bailiffs to tyrannize over her. The worst of these, Gessler, wishing to teach the Swiss to obey superiors, set up a hat on a pole, the emblem of the House of Austria, and bade sentinels arrest any passer-by who failed to do homage to it. A chamois



WILLIAM TELL

Tell's son showed confidence in his father's marksmanship.

(shă'mī)-hunter, Tell, failing to notice the hat, was arrested. When he protested, Gessler, perceiving his cross-bow and curious to see a proof of his famed marksmanship, cruelly bade him shoot an apple from his son's head!

Tell's Escape. Compelled to obey, or be plunged in prison and leave his family without support, Tell, urged by his child, shot and pierced the apple! When Gessler demanded why he had taken two arrows from his quiver, Tell declared the second would have killed the tyrant, had the child been hurt! Thereupon Gessler ordered Tell conveyed to his castle, and thrust

in its darkest dungeon for life! Tell lay bound in the tyrant's boat, on the Lake of the Four Cantons, when the party was overtaken by a sudden storm. All would have perished, had not a boatman exclaimed that Tell, the cleverest boatman of the region, could save them all! Released from his bonds, Tell cleverly steered the vessel around the most dangerous point, then drawing near enough to a shelf-like rock, leaped out upon it, and pushed the boat with his foot away from the shore!

Murder of Gessler. Tell had escaped, but, knowing he and his would never be safe as long as Gessler lived, he climbed over the mountains, and lay in ambush above a sunken road, along which Gessler must pass to reach home. There, with one well-directed arrow, Tell slew Gessler, and as his countrymen murdered or drove away the other tyrants, the Swiss were free! But the freedom thus won had to be defended against the Duke of Austria, who sent an army to avenge his bailiffs.

Death of Winkelried. The Swiss of all ranks bravely guarded the mountain passes leading into their country. When the Austrians pressed forward, their long lances protecting them against their foes, a patriot, Winkelried, seeing his countrymen could not get at them, seized as many of these lances as his outstretched arms could grasp, and ran them into his own body to wedge them fast. " 'Make way for Liberty!' he cried, 'made way for Liberty, and died!'" Although Switzerland has frequently since had to defend her liberty against great and powerful nations, she prides herself upon never having been subject to

any of them for long, and is still the Model Republic of Europe.

Our Debt. We owe to the Dutch an example of dyke building to save fertile soil from the inroads of the sea. We owe to the Hansa League the protection of traders and the progress of commerce between nations. To the Fuggers we owe an example of industry and skill. To William Tell and the Swiss we owe lessons in independence and an example in the Model Republic of Europe.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Legends of Switzerland*, pp. 181-195, Dodd, Mead & Co.

GUERBER, *Legends of the Rhine*, A. S. Barnes & Co.

1. Tell the legend of the Zuyder Zee.
2. Tell the legend of William Tell.
3. How was Winkelried patriotic?

CHAPTER LV

THE CORNER STONE OF ENGLISH LIBERTY

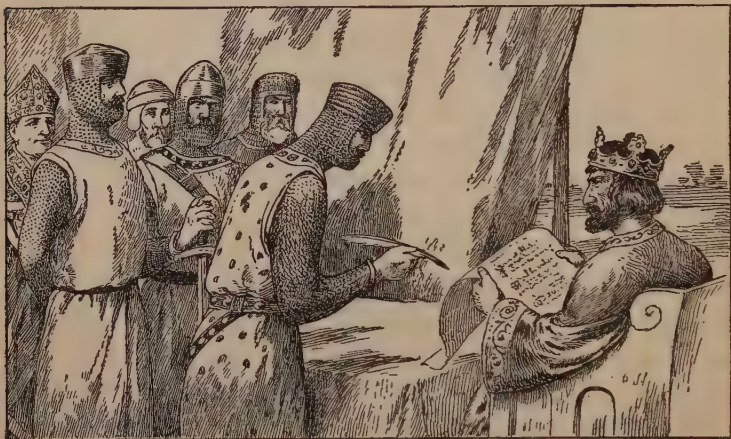
Early Scotch History. After the Romans left England, which they had occupied about four centuries, the Picts and Scots became Christians. For the next five hundred years they tried to keep the pirates from raiding their coasts, and the Anglo-Saxons from conquering the country. About the year 1000, the boundary between Scotland and England was fixed, and, soon after, King Duncan was murdered by Macbeth, as Shakespeare relates. After the Norman conquest of England, Scotch kings swore fealty to the King of

England, until Richard Lion-Heart freed them from this oath in exchange for a sum of money to finance his Crusade.

The Murder of Arthur. On returning from captivity, Richard Lion-Heart found that his brother John had seized his kingdom. Forced to restore the crown to Richard, whom legend claims now had his famous adventures with the outlaw Robin Hood, John bided his time to become king, as Richard had no children. When Richard died, John murdered his nephew, Prince Arthur of Brittany, who should have been king, and mounted the throne. The French king, to whom John owed homage for Normandy, called him to account for this murder. When John refused to appear in court, the French king seized Normandy, which had been given to Rollo some three hundred years before. John became angry and made an alliance with the Emperor of Germany and the Count of Flanders, and attacked the French. In this war the French king was nobly helped by troops sent by the free cities, or Communes, of France.

The Great Charter. Hearing the Pope was encouraging the French king to seize England, — as he had seized Normandy, — John hastened home. There, the English barons flatly refused to help him fight France, unless he assured by charter certain rights to Church and people. At first, John indignantly refused to sign this Magna Charta, or Great Charter, — the foundation of English (and hence of American) liberty — but he was finally compelled to do so, or lose his throne (1215). The Great Charter secured two great privileges: first, that the king should abide by the cus-

tomary laws and lay no unusual taxes, except by the consent of the Great Council; second, that an Englishman should be *free* until tried by a jury of men of his own station. Because John begged the Pope to annul



SIGNING MAGNA CHARTA

The nobles are forcing John to sign.

this Charter, civil war broke out in England, and lasted until he died.

The House of Commons. John's son sorely persecuted the Jews, but during his reign, the lords gradually changed the Great Council of the king into the House of Lords, and shortly thereafter the people secured representation by the organization of the House of Commons and constituted Parliament as we know it. The United States Congress, and all our State legislatures are composed—like Parliament—of two houses. It was then that the scientist Bacon discovered important things, including lenses and gun-

powder. But the Chinese had long before used gunpowder for fire-crackers, which they continue to manufacture in great quantities.

Story of Bruce. Edward I, John's grandson, conquered both Scotland and Wales, and his son was first to bear the title of Prince of Wales. He was also crowned on the "Stone of Scōne," which his father brought from Scotland and set in the Coronation Chair, where it can still be seen. The Scots, who had always been their own masters, tried to win back their independence under the leadership of Wallace, who, after several years' fighting, was taken prisoner by the English and put to death as a traitor. Then Robert Bruce, a hostage at the Court of England, escaped to Scotland by reversing the shoes of his horse, so he could not be traced! In Scotland, Bruce headed his people, who crowned him king. Many a time defeated, and often ready to give up, Bruce, encouraged by a spider, fought on until he won the Battle of Bannockburn (1314).

Canterbury Tales. Under the three Edwards, the English we speak came into general use in England, and was used by the poet Chaucer in his "Canterbury Tales." Therein he relates how a band of pilgrims, traveling on foot and on horseback to the shrine of St. Thomas-à-Becket at Canterbury, entertained each other on the way.

Our Debt. We owe to the English barons the Great Charter, teaching all English-speaking people that they have a right to govern themselves through representatives, and that only the law can deprive them of their personal liberty. To the Scotch we owe examples of

dauntlessness. To Chaucer we owe the Canterbury Tales, the first great English poetry.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

PORTER, *Scottish Chiefs*.

PORTER, *The Days of Bruce*.

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Stories of Shakespeare's Tragedies*, pp. 1-28, Dodd, Mead & Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 71-73, 113-124, 139-140, 143-144, American Book Co.

1. Tell the story of Macbeth.
2. How was the Great Charter obtained, what did it grant, and in what year?
3. Tell the stories of Wallace and of Bruce.
4. What are the Canterbury Tales and who wrote them?

CHAPTER LVI

THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR

The Battle of Crécy. The Dutch were establishing the first windmills in Holland, Ivan (ē-vän') I was fighting the Tartars in Russia, and the Doges (dōj'ěz) of Venice and Genoa were extending their commerce, when a great war began. Three French brothers had reigned in France in turn, and died without leaving a male heir. French law decreed no woman could reign or bestow rights to the French throne on her children, but Edward III of England (son of Isabelle of France) claimed his uncle's throne, and thus began the Hundred Years' War. In its first great battle (Crécy), cannons were used, and the English Black Prince won the three feathers and motto, which still form the crest of the

Prince of Wales. Then came the siege of Calais, made memorable by the devotion of its six burghers, who offered their lives to save their fellow-citizens from death. Next, all Europe was swept by the Black Plague, which carried off three quarters of the people in many towns!

Dark Days for France. In the second big battle of the Hundred Years' War [Poitiers (pwä-tyä')], the French king and his third son were made prisoners, and recovered their freedom only by giving the English sixteen provinces in France! So many nobles were captured besides the king, and such huge ransoms had to be paid, that the heavily taxed French peasants rebelled. After many disturbances, a wise French king, too sickly to fight in person, selected Duguesclin (dü-gě-klăn') to lead his armies. Although so small and homely that his parents were ashamed of him, Duguesclin fought and behaved like a real hero. Meantime, his master built the Bastille, a fortress in Paris, so he could seek refuge in it in case of riots! Much of the good work done by Duguesclin and his master, was undone by the next king, an insane man. Advised by a wicked wife, this king, after a third defeat [Agincourt (azhăn-köör')], made a treaty, giving his daughter's hand in marriage to Henry V of England, and promising he should inherit the French crown. But the young English king died before his crazy father-in-law, leaving a baby son, for whom his brothers vainly tried to gain possession of France.

Story of Joan of Arc. When the crazy king's son Charles VII had lost nearly all France, Joan of Arc, a shepherd girl from the village of Domrémy, in Lor-

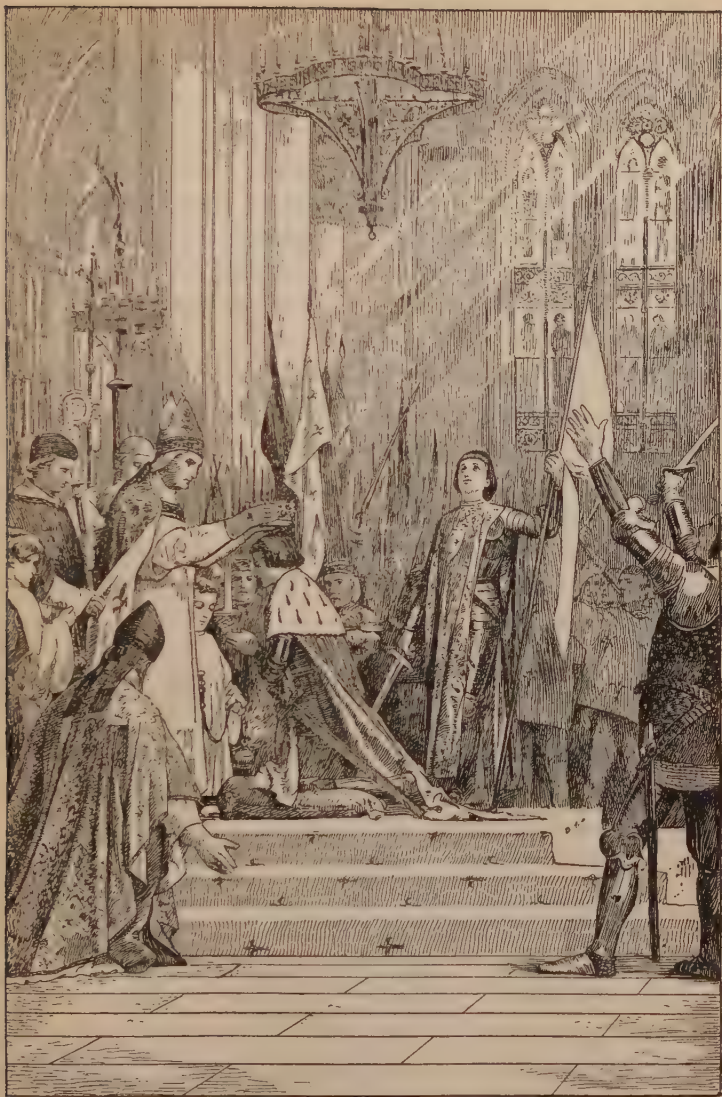
rairie, came to his rescue. From her fourteenth year, Joan had had visions of angels, who bade her go and fight for France. That a poor peasant girl should succeed where the greatest French generals had failed, seemed impossible, so Joan made no move to obey "her voices" until she was seventeen. Then, a neigh-



JOAN OF ARC AT ORLEANS

When Joan of Arc entered Orleans the men shouted for joy, and the women kissed her feet.

boring lord sent her with a small escort to the king of France. After convincing him that God had sent her, Joan drove the English army from Orleans, which they were on the point of taking, and led the king to Rheims to be crowned. Then she won a battle, and later was made a prisoner, while covering the retreat of her men



JOAN OF ARC AT THE CORONATION

Joan took Charles VII to Rheims, to be crowned. When asked what reward she craved, she finally chose the relief of taxes to her village.

into a walled city. Her captors sold her to the English, who, after an unfair trial, had her burned at the stake! Joan's courageous behavior, even when breathing her last in torture, convinced the English that they had "burned a saint." Besides, it so inspired the French, that they recovered Paris, and drove the English out of all France, except Calais. Joan's patriotism and unselfishness make her the chief heroine of France, although she was canonized only four hundred and seventy-seven years after her death. She is so popular in France, that soldiers in the Great War prayed for her aid, and fancied she encouraged them to die for France.

Our Debt. Duguesclin's example and that of Joan of Arc, the great French heroine, are without parallel for their unselfishness and patriotism.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 152-164, 180-186, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 145-198, American Book Co.

1. Tell about the first great battle in the Hundred Years' War, and what followed it.
2. Tell the story of Joan of Arc.
3. Why is Joan's story important?

CHAPTER LVII

TIMES OF TROUBLE

Trading. Norway and Sweden became prosperous countries after discovering how to cure herring. This proved a great boon for Catholic Europe, since no

meat could be eaten on Wednesdays, Fridays, during the forty days of Lent, or on sundry other fast days in the year. Trading ships transported this salt fish everywhere.

Whittington. In the middle of the fourteenth century, a poor boy, Dick Whittington, is said to have gone to London to seek his fortune. He was leaving the city in despair, when the Bow bells rang: "Turn again, Whittington, thrice Lord Mayor of London!" The prospect of such glory sent him back to try again. On the London docks he saw a captain ready to sail to foreign shores. People in those days entrusted goods to such captains to exchange, so Whittington gave him his only possession, a cat. The legend adds that a Chinese princess, annoyed by mice, paid such a high price for the cat, that Whittington by further trading with this money, became very wealthy, and was "thrice Lord Mayor of London!"

Story of Rienzi. Just before the Great Plague, the Romans under Rǐ-ě'n'zǐ, "last of the Tribunes," made a final effort to restore their old Republic. Rienzi, at first honestly tried to help the poor and oppressed, but presently began to seek his own advantage. The nobles who hated this peasant leader, then fiercely attacked him; the people ceased to defend him, and the man who lost his ideal lost his life!

Two Popes at Once. All Italy was then in a turmoil, because no less than eighty cities were waging war against the Pope. They declared, like the German emperors, that although head of the Church, the Pope had no right to interfere in worldly matters. As quarrels weaken powers, Pope, Emperor, and cities,

suffered greatly in this war. Finally two Popes ruled, one at Rome, the other at Avignon (a-vē-nyôn'), France. Good Roman Catholics did not always know which to obey, but they remained loyal to the Church, and continued building cathedrals, such as that of Milan.

Servian Heroism. War also raged at that time in southeastern Europe, where the Turks, trying to gain more territory, fought the brave Servians at Kossovo (kôs'ō-vō) (1389). So many Servians lost their lives to prevent the spread of Mohammedanism in Europe, that their countrymen still sing of the heroes of Kossovo, and try to rival them in bravery and patriotism.

Timur's Ravages. Fierce Mongol troops, starting from Turkestan, now crossed the northern Tigris and Euphrates, and invaded Russia. From the Volga's mouth to Moscow, Tī-mūr', their leader, carried off everything precious, leaving death and desolation in his wake. Next, he raided India, took Delhi and massacred one hundred thousand prisoners!. Then, returning to Turkestan, he adorned Samarcand with his spoil. After conquering Syria and fighting the Turks, Timur ruled all Asia Minor. He was about to begin the conquest of China too, when he died (1405). Timur is famous because he furthered art and science in the lands he governed, but he is abhorred for his cruelty. The empire he founded did not last, for the Turks soon regained possession of Asia Minor, where they remained sole rulers until the Great War, 1914-1918.

Our Debt. The invention of fish-salting and curing

in Norway and Sweden helps feed the world. Varying lessons can be learned from the careers of Whittington, Rienzi, and Timur.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Thirty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 178-9, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Wagner Operas*, pp. 7-23, Dodd, Mead & Co.

1. Tell the story of Whittington.
2. Tell the story of Rienzi.
3. Tell the story of Timur.

✓
INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES

CHAPTER LVIII
GREAT DISCOVERIES

Changes in England and Germany. Meantime, changes were taking place in England, where the Houses of Lancaster and York fought the "War of the Roses" for the throne. When all the male Yorks had been killed, including the two little Princes in the Tower, their sister married the Lancaster king, and thus the White and Red Roses of England were united. Changes took place also in Germany, where the Hapsburg family began to wear the imperial crown. From that time, a Hapsburg emperor ruled both Germany and Austria until 1806, then Austria only until 1918.

The Discovery of Oil Painting. Holland and Belgium became so rich and prosperous, thanks to manufacture and trade, that they began to cultivate science and art, and to honor the men of genius in their midst. Artists, in early times, had used only four colors, white, black, yellow, and red. To these, Greek painters of the Age of Pericles added green, purple, and blue. Colors for painting were mixed with water, gum, or white of egg, and sometimes waxed and ironed to give them a shiny appearance. The Flemish brothers Van Eyck, now not only began to mix paints with oil, but represented things as they saw them, thus improving greatly on Mediaeval (Middle Age) painting.

Turks Take Constantinople. In 1453 the Turks, who had gradually been closing around Constantinople, gained possession of that city, and thus ended the Eastern Empire. Ever since then maps have shown a Turkey in Europe as well as in Asia.

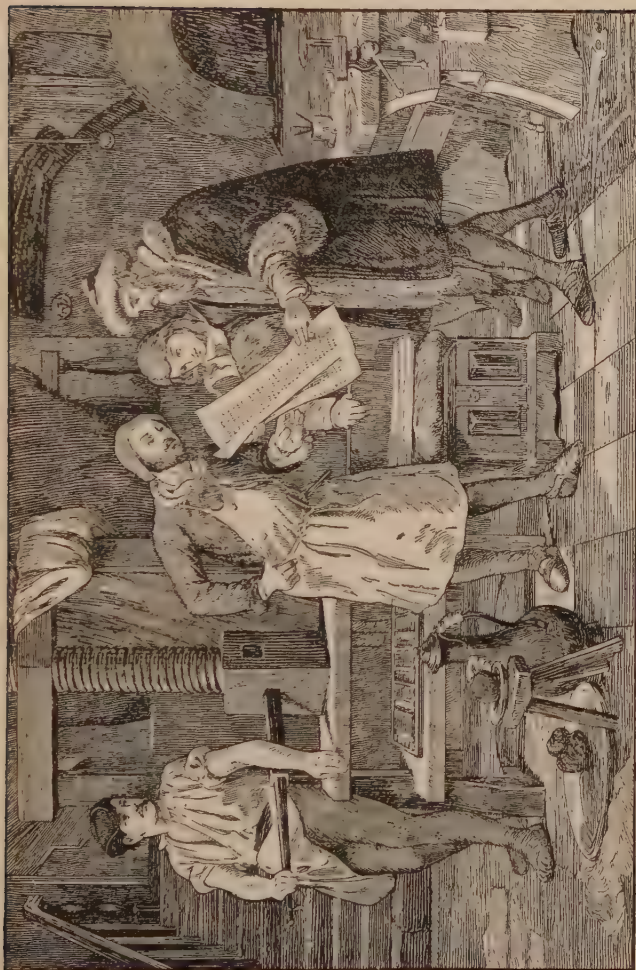
Spread of Greek Learning. For centuries Constantinople had been the home of the learned, who collected precious manuscripts and works of art. Forced to seek new homes and earn a living in foreign lands, the learned fugitives from Constantinople scattered all over Europe, selling the treasures they had saved, and teaching others what they had spent their lives in acquiring. Thereafter Greek was taught and lectures given in every important city, precious manuscripts were translated, and the lore of the East was made known to the West.

Moslem Architecture. Although Moslems love color and line, their religion forbids their representing living things exactly. For that reason, their finest buildings are decorated with conventional designs, termed "arabesques" (ă-r-a-běskz') because invented by the Arabs. As substitutes for statues and paintings, mosques are adorned with mō-sā'ics (patterns made by setting together bits of colored stone), with openwork stone or wood-carvings, and with gold and many gems.

Invention of Printing. Three years before the Fall of Constantinople, Gū'těn-běrg, a German, making use of hints gleaned from many sources, invented printing from movable type. The Chinese had been familiar with this art since the beginning of the Christian Era, but made little use of their discovery. The Dutch-

man, Kloster, taught his grandchildren to read by means of block letters and printed a few small books from them. It is said one of his workmen stole his type and carried it to Mainz, where Gutenberg put it to practical use, keeping the art so secret, that people thought his partner Faust had sold his soul to the devil, so as to multiply books by magic art (1450)! The first book Gutenberg printed was the Bible. After the fall of Constantinople, his press reproduced for general use famous manuscripts brought from there. When one of the small wars—so common among German nobles—resulted in the taking and sacking of Mainz, Gutenberg's workmen and type were scattered all over Europe. Then many famous printing establishments were started, such as Caxton's in England, and Aldus' at Venice.

Changes. Having Constantinople and the surrounding country, the Turks wished to become masters of all Europe, as they were of Southern and Western Asia, and of North Africa, and to replace all other religions by that of Mohammed. Their first move was to gain possession of Greece, which resisted them valiantly. The sack of Athens made Western Europe realize the Turks were a great menace to Christianity, and hastened the forming of the Holy League of Catholic countries against the Turks, whose fleet they defeated at Lepanto (lā-pän'tō) (1571). Helped by his wife, a member of the Imperial family ousted from Constantinople, Ivan III now shook off the Tartar yoke, and founded the Holy Russian Empire, where the Czar's will was law, and which lasted until the Great War. Ivan also became head of the Russian



GUTENBERG EXAMINES THE PRINT

Gutenberg printed the first Bible at Mainz, and the people fancied Faust, his partner, made use of magic.

Greek Church — as were all Czars after him — and seized part of Poland, while Austria seized Burgundy, and Germany, Holland.

The Medicis and the Renaissance. Meantime, the Medicis (mā-dē-sēs') had become dukes of Florence (in Italy), where their love of luxury and beauty prompted them to found famous art schools, and to encourage the talents of such artists as Raphael (răf'ā-ěl), Da Vinci (dă-vēn'chē), Michael Angelo, and Benvenuto Cellini (chěl-lē'nē). Then came a time when the division in Italy made it easy for the French to sweep twice down to Naples as conquerors. But French governors proved so cruel to Italian cities, that the people soon drove them away. While in Italy, the French learned a great deal, for the Renaissance (rěn-ě-sāns') (new birth of science and art) had begun there some years before. The French now introduced it into France and Northern Europe. Besides, seeing the art wonders in Italy, kings and nobles vied with each other in building and embellishing palaces and castles, and in encouraging letters, science, and art. During the Renaissance the first watches were made in Nuremberg, Germany, and called "Nuremberg Eggs," and the first spectacles manufactured in Holland.

Our Debt. We find our debt to this period in the invention of printing, of oil painting, of watches, and spectacles, in the spread of Greek learning and art, and in the Italian and French Renaissance contributions to art and civilization.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 200, 236-239, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Legends of the Virgin and Christ*, 266-267, Dodd, Mead and Co.

1. Tell who discovered oil-painting.
2. When did the Turks take Constantinople, and what did they do?
3. Tell about the invention of printing.
4. Who were the Medicis, and what do you know about them?

CHAPTER LVIX

WANTED: A SEA ROUTE TO THE EAST

Marco Polo's Travels. With the invention of printing, much information, hitherto known to a few learned men only, became public. Among the books now printed were the travels of Marco Polo, a Venetian merchant, who lived in the 13th and 14th centuries. With his father and uncle, Polo traveled across Asia to Cathay (kǎ-thā') (China), then ruled by Kublai Khan (kōō'blī-kān'). Here he learned Chinese, and became so useful that he governed a province three years. After they had spent about twenty years in China, the Khan allowed the three Venetians to escort a Chinese princess to her bridegroom in Persia. From there, the three made their way back to Venice, where no one recognized them, but where the jewels they brought back made them rich men. In a war between Venice and Genoa, Marco Polo was made prisoner, and during his two years' captivity, dictated, in French, to a fellow-prisoner, an account of his journeys and observation. His book

gave the clearest idea of Asia yet gained in Europe. Among other things, people then learned that peaches, apricots, cherries, and chickens, came from Japan and China, and that lettuce first came from India.

Trade Blocked. When Polo's book was read by Venetian, Genoese, and Pisan merchants, they became more eager than ever to trade with countries where gold, jewels, silks, and spices, were plentiful and cheap. But the Turks, masters of Constantinople, Egypt, and Western Asia, blocked their way! Their ships, which had once sailed to all parts of the Mediterranean and Black Seas, to collect the wares brought by caravans across Asia and Africa, could no longer visit these trading ports, since Turks and Christians were foes. Because spices (pepper, cloves, and cinnamon) were in great demand in Western Europe, merchants wondered if it might not be possible to reach the Spice Islands (Moluccas) by sailing around Africa. Learned men assured them that the earth being round, *if* Africa did not belt the globe, they *could* sail around it.

Henry the Navigator. The Portuguese, the boldest seamen in Europe in the 15th century, encouraged by Prince Henry, the Navigator, rediscovered the Canary and Madeira (ma-dē'ra) Islands, and felt their way along the coast of Africa, hoping to round it. Venturing farther south, Dī'áz struck Cape Verde (vûrd) and the Islands of the same name, and, finding that the coast then turns eastward, fancied he would soon reach his goal. Meantime he began African slave-trade, bringing about a thousand negroes from Guinea (gĩn'ĩ) to Portugal, within the next five years. In 1486 Diaz found that the African coast turns southward once

more. Then, after months of sailing, a storm drove him around the point of Africa, which he named Cape Tempest. His master, however, changed it to Cape of Good Hope, because there was at last good hope of reaching India by sea.

Sailors' Yarns. In port, sailors talk, and as seamen's yarns are fascinating, small boys love to hear them. Christopher Columbus, son of a wool-carder in Genoa, delighted in such tales. Although he attended school and learned all he could, he longed to visit foreign countries. So great was this desire that he embarked at fourteen, was almost drowned in a shipwreck, fought pirates, and visited many foreign ports. Wherever he went, he heard sailors complain of the decline of trade, and tell how they wished a sea route could be found to India! Having studied enough to know that wise men had long considered the earth round, Columbus argued that India could be reached by sailing ~~West~~. While making maps at Lisbon, to earn a living, he consulted a famous geographer, who sent him a map, showing China and Japan where our American waters begin, with India only a little farther west.

Columbus in Portugal. Columbus, therefore, asked the King of Portugal for men, money, and ships, to discover the western sea-route to India. The king refused, but, impressed by Columbus' plan, secretly sent one of his vessels to try. Its captain, fearing the "Sea of Darkness," the "Loadstone Rock," the "Jumping Off Place," and "boiling waters" at the Tropics, soon returned. Angered by this trick, Columbus now left Portugal for Spain.

Columbus at La Rabida. There, new delays and dis-

appointments awaited him, for the King and Queen were too busy driving the last of the Moors out of Spain — where they had been 781 years — to listen to his plans. Almost penniless, but undaunted, Columbus started for France, stopping at the door of a monastery, to beg food for his little son. The prior, struck by Columbus' intelligent face, questioned him, and thus learned of his eighteen years' vain attempts to interest Spain and Portugal (and perchance Italy) in his plans. After consulting two local seamen, the Pin'zón brothers, who volunteered to go with Columbus, if ships could be procured, the prior decided Spain must not lose so fine a chance. Having once been the Queen's confessor, he won a hearing and persuaded her to supply money for ships, even if she had to pawn her jewels!

The Three Vessels. This joyful message reached Columbus, just as he had given up all hope of Spain's help. Three vessels (the Santa Maria, Pinta, and Nina), so small they had no real decks, cabins or holds, commanded by Columbus and the Pinzon brothers, and bearing a hundred men, left Palos harbor in 1492. Before reaching the Canaries, Columbus' men began to repeat the terrible tales they had heard. One crew even damaged a ship, but Columbus had it repaired at the Islands, and after taking aboard fresh water and provisions, sailed due west. Day after day his men grew more afraid, wondering how they would get home if the world were round, and they had to sail uphill! Terrified by floating seaweed, and other *bad* signs, they were just plotting to throw Columbus overboard, when birds, a twig with fresh berries, and other *good* signs,

pointed to nearby land. To please one of the Pinzon brothers, Columbus now altered his course, so, instead of landing in Florida, as he would have done had he kept straight on, he reached the Bahamas, October 12, 1492, seventy days after leaving Palos!

The Landing. Because he imagined our globe only half as big as it is, Columbus, deeming these were islands off the coast of Asia, called the natives Indians.



COLUMBUS LANDING

Clad in red velvet, and bearing the Spanish Flag, Columbus landed at San Salvador, and took possession of the land in Ferdinand and Isabella's name.

They gazed with awe upon the vessels, which seemed to them great white birds, and upon Columbus's scarlet velvet suit, bright armor, and fluttering Spanish flag, while he took possession of their land in the name of the King and Queen of Spain. Of course, Columbus

could not understand the natives' language, nor could they understand his, but they liked the beads, bells, and colored caps he gave them. In return, they gave him ornaments, made of real gold, which convinced him he would soon be able to return home treasure-laden. By signs he inquired whence that gold came, and when they pointed southward, he sailed to Cuba. To his amazement, he there saw natives roll dry leaves,



light them, put them in their mouths and blow out fragrant smoke! This was the Europeans' first sight of tobacco, which they learned to smoke *from savages!*

Our Debt. We owe to Marco Polo the first real information about the East. To the Portuguese we owe the discovery of the Atlantic Islands, and the exploration of the West African coast. To Columbus we owe the discovery of America, a wonderful example of dauntless perseverance.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

LEONARD AND JACOBS, *The Nation's History*, pp. 32-43, Henry Holt and Co., N. Y.

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 33-50, American Book Co.

1. Tell about Marco Polo and Henry the Navigator.
2. Give the story of Columbus to the end of his first journey.
3. Recite a poem about Columbus.

CHAPTER LX

JOURNEYS AND DISCOVERIES

Columbus's Return. Because it was late in the season, Columbus was anxious to get back to Spain and report the western route to India found. Turning eastward, he discovered Haïti (hā'ti), which he called "Little Spain." There, the Santa Maria was driven on the rocks by a careless pilot, so Columbus built a fort for a colony of forty men. Sailing homeward in the two smallest ships, Columbus and the Pinzons parted company in the midst of a storm, in which each captain deemed the other lost. Columbus, in the Nina, reached Portugal first. From there he sent his joyful news to Spain, while the Portuguese openly regretted having missed their chance! Columbus had just re-entered the port of Palos, when the Pinzons arrived there, hoping to reap the honor and glory of finding the road to India, for that was what all thought they had done!

The Reception. Columbus now visited the King and Queen at Barcelona, to show them the gold, bows and arrows, corn, tobacco, and natives he had brought home. All Spain rang with his fame, and he was praised so extravagantly that a few courtiers, at a ban-

quet, jealously exclaimed any one could have done the same! Instead of answering, Columbus, seizing a hard-boiled egg from a dish on the table, challenged them to stand it up on end! All tried and failed, but Columbus, setting the egg down hard enough to chip one end, left it standing, while he calmly stated everything was easy when one had been *shown* how to do it!

Columbus' Second Journey. So intense was Spain's desire to become rich by trading directly with India, that Columbus soon sailed off again, with seventeen ships, fifteen hundred men, some cattle, and wheat to sow. This time there were neither panics nor mutiny. But, when the ships arrived at "Little Spain," all were dismayed to find no trace of the colonists, who, Columbus ascertained, had died of disease, or had been slain by ill-treated natives. A new colony was started, and the Spaniards began to exchange worthless trinkets for gold to ship home. But, unable to collect metal enough to pay for his expedition, Columbus sent back a cargo of savages to be sold as slaves! This was cruel and wicked, but people then argued it was better for the Indians to be slaves where they could learn to be Christians, than to remain free and heathen!

Further Discoveries. Meantime, Columbus sailed on, still hoping to reach India and the Spice Islands. Instead he discovered Jamaica (jām-ā'ká) and several smaller islands. On his return to Haïti he found the Indians hostile, his colonists starving, and everything going wrong. To awe the natives, Columbus waged war against them, and shipped five hundred war-prisoners to the Spanish slave-market. By the same vessel, the discontented Spaniards sent home letters,

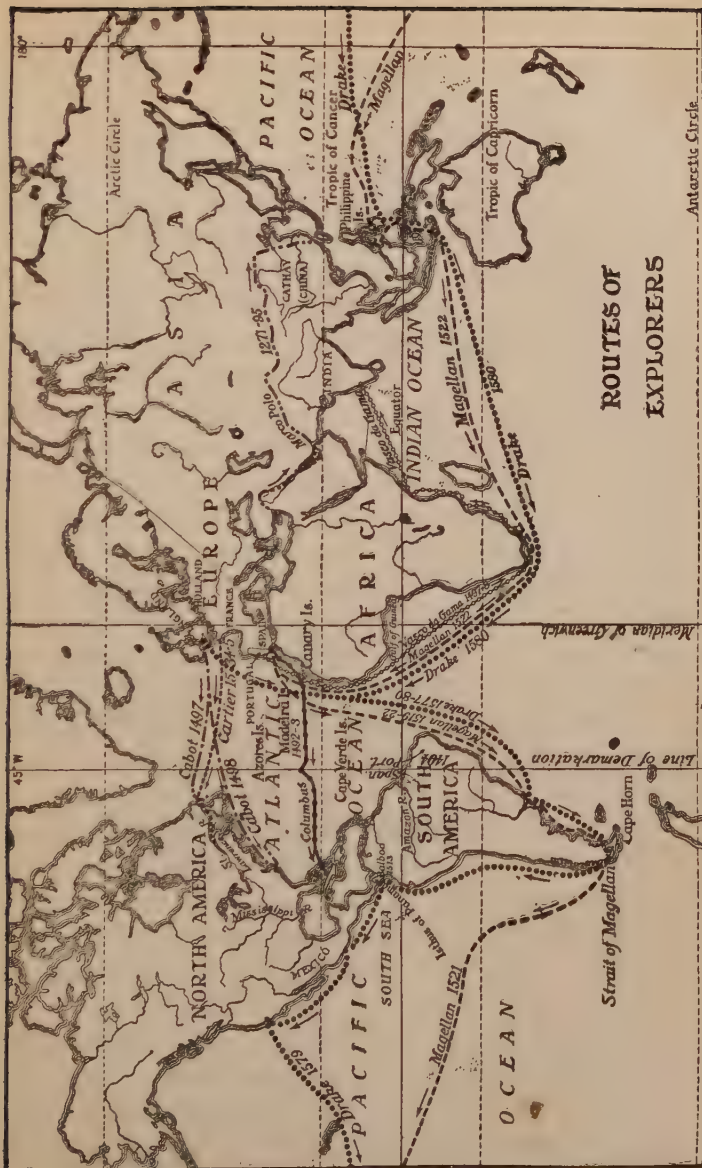


COLUMBUS AND THE EGG

At a banquet, at Barcelona, Columbus made an egg stand on end, and proved everything is easy *when you know how*.

accusing Columbus of deceit, and declaring their lives were in danger owing to his bad management! So, by return vessel a nobleman came to order Columbus home. Thus, three years after discovering the road across the Atlantic, Columbus returned to Spain without any of the promised wealth. Instead of praise, he met scorn, and it took him three whole years to collect funds enough to set out on his third journey with six ships (1498).

English Discoveries. Meantime, other European nations were anxious to secure a share of the trade with India. So the English king bade the Cabots, father and son, sail westward in *his* behalf. Steering straight from England, the Cabots struck Newfoundland, explored the coast of North America from Labrador to Cape Cod (1497-98), and took possession of it all in the name of England. But, as they found none of the rich cities of China, Japan, and India, they received a reward of only £10! During his third journey, Columbus visited Trĩĩ-dăd Island, and the mouth of the Ō-rĩ-nō'cō, which he rightly concluded must drain a vast space of land. While exploring, he came to the coast of Venezuela, called "little Venice" by another visitor, who noticed lake dwellings in Lake Maracaĩbo (mă-ră-kĩ'bō). Not finding either India or the Spice Islands, Columbus returned to Haĩti, only to find conditions there worse than ever. Because he sent home some of the most troublesome colonists, they persuaded the King and Queen to take the command out of his hands. The nobleman commissioned to replace Columbus, cruelly sent him back to Spain in chains! Such injustice almost broke the discoverer's



heart, and, although the Queen indignantly ordered those fetters removed, he always kept them by his bedside, and they were buried with him, by his order!

Portuguese Discoveries. Meantime, the Portuguese, who discovered (in 1487) that the coast line of Africa turns northward at the Cape of Good Hope, ordered Vasco da Gã'mã ten years later to sail around its point to India. In 1499, while Columbus was exploring the South American shores, Vasco's vessel returned in triumph, with a rich cargo of silks and spices! Portugal rejoiced, and Spain became more anxious than ever to reach India, by what seemed a shorter and easier route, so as to get rich, too. On its way to India, in 1500, a Portuguese fleet steered so far west that it sighted Brazil. To prevent future disputes between Spain and Portugal, the Pope drew a line on the map from north to south, and decreed all lands west of that line should belong to Spain and all east to Portugal. One vessel, sent out from Portugal to explore Brazil, had on board Americus Vesputius (vès-pū'shūs), a young Italian pilot. He wrote so interesting an account of what he saw, that it was published on his return. A geographer then suggested that the new continent be named America, after him! This name, given at first to part of South America only, finally extended to the whole continent, although some think the New World should have borne Columbus' name.

Columbus' Last Journey. Two years after his return to Spain in chains, Columbus began his fourth and last journey (1502). He carefully explored the coast of Central America, hoping to find some strait,

which would enable him to pass this uncivilized country, and reach India in a few days. But, instead of finding it, he suffered shipwreck. Then, after great hardships, he returned to Spain, to find his only friend, the Queen, had died! The Spaniards now taunted Columbus as "Lord of Mosquito Land"; and the discoverer, poor, ill, and broken-hearted, died in 1506. He died, not knowing he had found a new world, or that India lay thousands of miles farther west! He is now buried in Seville.

Our Debt. This chapter has shown the stimulating effect of Columbus' discoveries upon Europe. The first European colonies, the introduction of Spanish civilization and of Christianity into the New World, and the great gain in geographical information were all due to Columbus' discovery.

Report on Brazil.
READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 51-62, American Book Co.

1. Tell of Columbus' reception at Barcelona and the story of the egg.
2. Tell about the three other journeys and the death of Columbus.
3. What were the Portuguese discoveries?

CHAPTER LXI

MORE DISCOVERIES

West Indian Natives. Columbus' discovery was to have wonderful results and to be of great benefit to Europe, although it proved anything but a blessing for

the West Indians. When the Spaniards discovered Haïti, it had about one million inhabitants; twenty-two years later, less than thirteen thousand were left! No wonder a captive chief, who was ordered to become Christian before being put to death, inquired: "Are there any Spaniards in Heaven?" "Certainly!" answered the priest. "Then I'd rather go anywhere else!" he rejoined. In general, the white man's treatment of uncivilized peoples has been shameful.

Spanish Colonists. Columbus's successors, with the exception of a few priests, who wanted to convert the savages, crossed the ocean to gain wealth for themselves or land for their king. Some of these Spaniards, emigrating to America at the rate of a thousand a year, formed colonies in the West Indies. There they forced the natives to work for them, washing the sands of the rivers to secure every particle of gold, mining, and planting sugar-cane. Running short of natives for all this labor, the Spaniards soon bought negroes and thus introduced negro slavery into the New World.

Discovery of the Pacific and of Florida. Băl-bō'ă, a Spaniard, thirsting for adventures on the American mainland, had himself packed in a cask and carried on board ship, — the first stowaway to visit our continent! Landing on the Isthmus of Dă'rî-ăn, or Panama, Balboa cut his way through the dense forests — about where the Canal now is — and was the first European to behold what he called "The Great South Sea" (Pacific Ocean). In Spain's behalf, he took possession of all the lands washed by its waves! The same year another Spaniard, Ponce de Leon (pōn'thā-dā-lā-ōn'), looking for the Fountain of Youth, landed

in Florida, to which he gave its present name. Of course he never found a magic fountain, but died in Porto Rico (part of U. S. A. since 1898), where his grave can still be seen.

Around the World. Magellan (ma-jěl'ăn, a Portuguese navigator, sailing southward in search of a passage to India, discovered the Strait that bears his name.

age to India, discovered the Strait that bears his name. Sailing across the ocean, which he re-named "Pacific"

because its waters were so calm, he visited the Robber Islands (Ladrones), so called because its natives stole from his ship all they could lay hands upon. Still steering westward, Magellan reached the Philip-pines, only to be killed there in a fight with the na-

tives! His lieutenant, continuing the westward journey, visited the Spice Islands and India, and reached home by sailing around the Cape of Good Hope! This first journey around the world took three years (1519-1522); now, by steamship and railroad it re-



BALBOA

Wading out into the water, Balboa took possession of the vast Pacific Ocean for Spain.

quires about two months, and soon, by air-ship, it may take only a few weeks or even days.

Conquest of Mexico. The year that Magellan began his journey, the Spaniard Côm'tēz landed in Mexico with a few men, horses, and cannons. He marched straight to Mexico City, built in a lake, with cause-



THE CITY OF MEXICO

This drawing shows something of the way the city looked after the Spaniards had taken possession. Notice the causeways connecting the city itself with the shores of the lake.

ways connecting the town with the mainland. The Aztec king fancied these white men must be akin to the "Fair God" (perhaps an Atlantean), who, according to tradition once visited them, taught them many useful things, and departed, promising to return some day. For that reason, the Aztecs welcomed the Spaniards. But, finding the strangers greedy and cruel, King Môm-tě-zũ'mă tried to drive them away or kill them. After hard fighting, the Spaniards, having

killed Montezuma and many of his people, took possession of Mexico, whence they shipped great riches to Spain.

Conquest of Peru. With equal cruelty and treachery, another Spaniard, Pī-zār'rō, conquered and robbed the people of Peru, sending their wealth, too — via the Isthmus of Panama, and thence by galleons (armed treasure-ships) — to Spain. But, while Spanish warriors were behaving so unjustly, their priests patiently taught, baptized, and founded Missions, where the poor and sick received help and learned better ways of living.

Spain's Wealth. The treasures from the New World transformed Spain into the richest country in Europe. The grandson of Ferdinand and Isabella, ruling Spain, the Netherlands, Germany, Austria, part of Italy, and the New World, could boast that "the sun never set on his Empire!" He encouraged the Spaniards to explore as much as possible. So, hoping to find treasures like Cortez and Pizarro, Spaniards from Mexico visited our present South-western States, and discovered Zū'nī villages, cliff-dwellings, and the Colorado River. From Florida, others visited the central state region, and reached the Mississippi (Father of Waters), in whose waters De Sō'tō, its Spanish discoverer, was buried at midnight (1541). Thus, fifty years after Columbus' death, people were just beginning to explore what is now our United States, little suspecting as yet the breadth of the northern continent. The South American coast, however, was already mapped out pretty accurately. But everybody still believed a passage would be found somewhere along the North

American coast, which would enable Europeans to sail straight to India, instead of going all around Africa, or South America.

Other Countries' Share. Perceiving how much wealth would pour into Spain from the New World, the English and French also sent out vessels, to find this short-cut to India. Although all these vessels failed to find the "passage" they were seeking, they explored the mouth of our great rivers, and discovered the great Fishing Banks off Newfoundland. Hosts of fishing vessels thereupon visited these Banks, taking back to Europe cargoes of cheap fish. The majority of these fishing vessels came from Brittany, France, the home of the best seamen and fishermen of that time.

Canada to the French. The French navigator, Cartier (kär-tyā'), entered the St. Lawrence, which he named, and sailed up to the place where Quebec now stands, before discovering it was only a river. He also visited the site of Montreal, took possession of Canada in the name of France, set up a cross on its soil, and was first to hear the Indians speak of the Niagara Falls ("Thunder of Waters"). Although Cartier tried to plant French colonies on the soil he thus claimed, the climate proved too cold. But another Frenchman, Champlain (shām-plān'), colonized the country, founded Quebec, and thus became "Father of New France."

Our Debt. The introduction of Spanish culture in the South, and of French culture in the North of our continent, Magellan's circumnavigation of the world, the beginning of the cod-fishing industry and the

founding of Quebec were further developments of the exploration and settlement period beginning with Columbus' voyages.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 62-73, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, p. 230, American Book Co.

1. What effect did the discovery have on the West Indians?
2. Who first circumnavigated the earth? Give an account.
3. Tell about the Conquest of Mexico, and of Peru.
4. What part of America belonged to France?

CHAPTER LXII

THE REFORMATION

Many Bibles. Meantime, great changes were taking place in European minds. The invention of printing made it possible for more people to learn to read, and as books were no longer so costly, readers could own their own Bibles. Some of those who began to study the Gospels, and to think about religion, became dissatisfied with the Roman Catholic Church, saying it was no longer what Christ intended it to be. A few of the Popes, priests, monks, and nuns, had not proved as good and unselfish as they should have been, so people argued there were too many monasteries and convents in the world. This was unjust towards the countless good monks and nuns, who for centuries had devoted their lives to good works, and had taught people better ways of living by their example.

*Born about 1150
Died about 1200*

The First Reformer. There was, however, — ^Aas there always is, — room for improvement, so the word “reform” was frequently heard. In France, the first reformer — or man who tried to bring religion back to what he fancied Christ wanted it to be — was Waldo, whose motto was “In His Name.” His teachings were adopted by his followers, the Waldenses, who withstood many persecutions in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. So did the Albigenses (ăl-bĭ-jĕn’sēz), people of Albi, in Southern France, against whom a Pope actually preached a crusade. This was carried out with such cruelty, that most of them were slain (1208). *Death 1384*

Many Reformers. In England, the first great reformer was Wyclif (wĭk’lĭf), the “Morning Star of Reformation.” He translated the Bible into English, and his followers read it aloud to those unable to do so for themselves. Next in order of time, came the Bohemian (Czech) reformer, Hüss, who was burned at the stake as a hĕr’ĕ-tĭc (unbeliever) in 1415. Săv-ŏ-nă-rŏ’lă, a Florentine monk, was strangled, then burned, because he tried to make people think more of their souls and of doing right, than of their bodies and securing wealth and power. The Swiss reformer, Zwingli (tsvĭng’lē), persuaded his people to accept his views, and died in battle, defending his country. Grotius (grŏ’shĭ-ŭs), the Dutch reformer, was in favor of changing a few things in the Catholic Church, but did not urge people to leave it for any other.

Luther and Calvin. The German reformer, Lŭ’tĥĕr, openly defied the Roman Catholic Church, and was so sorely persecuted, in the fifteenth and sixteenth cen-

turies, that his friends had to hide him for ten months in Wartburg Castle. There, Luther spent his time translating the Bible into German, and composing hymns, which all Protestants know. Luther's writings became so popular, that he is considered to have established German as a language, as well as being the founder of the Lutheran Church. Then Calvin undertook to do in France, what Luther was doing in Germany. But, when he read his book to King Francis I, the latter showed such anger, that Calvin fled to Geneva (Switzerland), where he spent the rest of his life and founded the Calvinist Church.

The Catholics. All this talk of reform, at first merely angered the Roman Catholics, but after a time, they too realized changes were necessary and made them. Meantime, every-

where in Europe, reformers and their followers, who protested and hence were called Protestants, were subject to persecution, for in those days no one was free to worship as he pleased. People either did exactly as the Roman Catholic



MARTIN LUTHER

The great German Reformer, who translated the Bible into German, wrote hymns, and founded the Lutheran Protestant Church.

Church said, or were excommunicated, or persecuted. In some countries persecution was worse than in others, but serious offenders were always punished by death.

The Inquisition. In the fifteenth century, the Inquisition, a Roman Catholic board, which inquired into people's beliefs and punished those who were "heretics," began to take very severe measures. Persecution had encouraged, rather than stopped the spread of Christianity, because those who witnessed the death of the Christian martyrs were impressed by their courage. They realized there must be something wonderful in a religion which urged loving your neighbor as yourself, and gave even young people courage to die! The Inquisition's work in Spain, Italy, and the Netherlands had a similar effect in regard to the Reformation. Thus, although reformers were persecuted, more and more people, secretly or openly, ceased to belong to the Roman Catholic Church.

Holland Free. The Spaniards, considering it a duty to compel all who had once been baptized to remain Roman Catholics, sent inquisitors everywhere, even to the New World, to punish backsliders. The result, in the Netherlands, was such bloodshed, that the people rebelled against Isabella's great-grandson, and freed themselves from Spain! Soon after thus obtaining her freedom, Holland sent a vessel, around the Cape of Good Hope, to trade with India and the Spice Islands. This venture proved so profitable that the next year eighty vessels left Holland on the same errand! Then the "Dutch East India Company" founded Ba-tā'vī-a in Java, and before long, those who wanted nutmegs, cloves, pepper, or mace, had to buy

them from the Dutch. Holland still governs Sumatra, Java, the Celebes, the Moluccas, and part of Borneo and New Guinea.

Galileo. Since the days of Archimedes — eighteen hundred years before — many useful things had been discovered. Still, no great man of science appeared until the Italian, Gāl-ī-lē'ō. Although studying medicine at Pisa, Galileo devoted his time and energy to mathematics and experiments. At eighteen, he noticed, in the Cathedral of Pisa, a lamp swinging to and fro. This suggested the pendulum clock. He proved, standing at the top of the Leaning Tower, that a big cannon ball and a small bullet strike the ground at the same time. He also started, in several Italian Universities, the fashion of lecturing in Italian, instead of Latin. Galileo made the first real thermometers, telescopes, and microscopes, and one of his pupils invented the barometer. But, when he openly declared the earth revolves around the 'sun, instead of standing still, while the sun spins around it as Copernicus (Cō-pŭr'nī-kŭs) had taught, the Church gave him the choice between retracting (taking back what he had said) and prison! But although Galileo retracted aloud, he left that place muttering: "And still it does move!"



GALILEO

The most learned Italian, who discovered the pendulum, thermometer, telescope microscope, and taught that the earth revolves around the sun.

Our Debt. We are indebted to this period for the spread of learning, the translation of the Bible into English, French, German, etc., the work of the great reformers, the example of brave little Holland, and the discoveries of Galileo and his pupils.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

HALE, *In His Name*, Little Brown & Co., N. Y.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 170-171, 211, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 243-244, American Book Co.

1. Name the various reformers of religion, tell in what country they lived and what you know about them.
2. What are Lutherans and Calvinists and tell how long they have existed.
3. Tell about Galileo.

CHAPTER LXIII

EARLY SETTLEMENTS

The First Conscience Colony. In France, although the Waldenses and Albigenses had been ruthlessly killed, the Calvinists, or Huguenots (hū'gē-nōtz), kept increasing in number. They were the first to attempt to found in America colonies where they could practise the religion they pleased. The first party sent over landed in Carolina—thus named in honor of King Charles IX of France. Lacking food, they finally built a vessel to return home and were reduced to cannibalism before they met an English ship! Two years later, other Huguenot colonists, in Florida, were murdered by the Spaniards, who had just founded St. Augustine (1565), and deemed it as praiseworthy to

kill "heretics" as rattlesnakes! Having prevented Protestant settlements near them, the Spaniards planted orange groves, built Santa Fé, New Mexico, continued their explorations, established missions, and started a printing press in Mexico City. Before other colonies began in America, there were 200,000 Spaniards in America who had converted 5,000,000 natives, and purchased 40,000 negro slaves.

Huguenots. In 1588, the French — urged by the Spaniards — ordered a general massacre of the Huguenots on St. Bartholomew's Eve. Many brave and clever men thus lost their lives, amongst others General Coligny (kō-lēn'yē), and the artist Palissy (pā-lē-sē'), who devoted his time, money, and strength, to rediscover a glaze for pottery, such as the ancient Mesopotamians had used. Some of his wonderful enamel now figures among the treasures of the Louvre (lōōvr) — the famous French museum. One of the few Huguenots whose life was spared by order of the French king, was Doctor Paré (pā-rā'), who rediscovered some of the medical secrets known to the ancient Egyptians. Because the Good Samaritan in Christ's parable "poured oil and wine" into the wounds of the man he rescued, that treatment was used for wounded soldiers! Falling short of oil and wine after a battle, Paré bound up wounds with bandages wet in water. As these patients recovered faster than the others, a total change was made in the treatment of wounds. Paré also saved many men from bleeding to death by cauterization (kō-tēr-ī-zā'shūn).

English Seamen. Although the English had been first to reach the mainland of North America after

Columbus' discovery, they did not again visit the New World for many years. Then, in the middle of the sixteenth century, an English seaman (Hawkins), as we have seen, brought the first slaves from Africa to the West Indian planters. He thus began negro-slave trading, which went on openly until 1808, and secretly more than forty years longer. Still hoping to find a short road to India, English seamen explored and mapped out the North American coast. One of them, Davis, found at last the entrance to the Northwest passage. But it is so blocked by icebergs, that it is useless as a road to Asia.

Henry of the Many Wives. The preaching of Wyclif had given the Reformation an early start in England, where King Henry VIII, by writing a book against Reform, earned the title "Defender of the Faith," which is still stamped on English coins. This Henry married a daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella, and had a daughter named Mary. Then, falling in love with a younger lady, Henry asked the Pope for a divorce. Because the Pope refused it, Henry persuaded Parliament to pronounce the divorce, married the younger lady, and appointed himself head of the Church of England! Many English welcomed this change, and rejoiced when Henry's next child, Elizabeth, was baptized a Protestant by Cranmer. He completed the work begun by Wyclif some hundred and fifty years before. Henry had six wives; the third left him a son, who, at ten years of age, became Edward VI. He died at sixteen so never really reigned, but Cranmer persuaded him to will the English crown to his Protestant cousin, Lady Jane Grey.

Queen Mary. Although Lady Jane Grey's family forced her to claim the English throne, Catholic Mary seized it, had Lady Jane Grey beheaded as a traitor, and kept her Protestant sister Elizabeth in prison. Mary then married Philip II of Spain, Isabella's great-grandson, who encouraged her to persecute the Protestants so sorely, that they called her "Bloody Mary." Under her rule, the French re-took Calais, which had belonged to England some two hundred years. When Mary died childless, she left the crown to her Catholic cousin Mary, Queen of Scots, although it belonged by right to Elizabeth, England's next queen.

Our Debt. Saint Augustine and Santa Fé, the first towns in the United States, were founded by Spaniards. England became Protestant under Henry VIII, under Mary reverted to Catholicism, and under Elizabeth was Protestant again.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

MARK TWAIN, *The Prince and the Pauper*.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 261-264, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 73-76, American Book Co.

1. Tell the story of the French Colonies.
2. Tell about the discoveries of Dr. Paré.
3. Who reigned in England after Henry VIII?

CHAPTER LXIV

ELIZABETHAN ENGLAND

Queen Elizabeth. Now comes the Golden Age of English art and literature, when many fine castles and houses were built or improved, and the greatest English

writer, Shakespeare, acted his own plays in Elizabeth's presence. Once, while he was playing the part of a king, Queen Elizabeth dropped her handkerchief (she was first in England to use handkerchiefs, silk stockings, table forks, and a coach). Picking it up, Shakespeare said to the audience: "Excuse us, our royal Sister has dropped her handkerchief!", gracefully returned it, and then went on with the play.

Elizabeth's Rule. Elizabeth persecuted the Catholics, — as her sister had the Protestants. During her years of captivity, she had studied hard; so prided herself on speaking several languages, and in making fine speeches in Latin. A clever Queen, blessed with excellent ministers, Elizabeth made England powerful. Philip, to keep England a Catholic country, offered to marry her. But when she refused and declared that while she lived, her cousin Mary Stuart (Queen of Scots) had no right to the throne, he became so angry, that for years thereafter, England was at war with Spain, the most powerful country in Europe.

Spain and England. During this war, English and Spanish ships fought wherever they met. Landing on the Isthmus of Panama to capture the treasures from Pe-ru, the Englishman Drake caught a glimpse of the Pacific, whereon he longed to sail. On his next voyage, he therefore passed through the Strait of Magellan, raided the Spanish ports on the Western coast of South America, secured an immense amount of treasures, and — to escape the Spanish ships lying in wait for him in the Strait of Magellan — decided to continue his journey around the world. On the way, he landed in California, and arriving in England in



SHAKESPEARE AT QUEEN ELIZABETH'S COURT

1580, sent treasures to Elizabeth, who, in return, knighted him on the deck of his ship. Besides fighting and plundering Spanish galleons, Elizabeth's famous seamen went on exploring to increase England's wealth, territory, and renown. Queen Elizabeth was not a religious woman, but many of her subjects, owning Bibles, began to think for themselves on religious (as well as political) subjects. A few openly declared they dissented (did not agree) with either Catholics or Ang-li-cans, but as they belonged mainly to the middle class, they were looked down upon by Court and noblemen.

Mary, Queen of Scots. Meantime, Mary, Queen of Scots, plotted with the Catholics to rule England, which naturally enraged Elizabeth. In spite of her beauty and charm, Mary had not won the affections of the Scots, who, under Knox's teaching, had become strict Presbyterians. Her frivolous ways, "popish practices," and a suspicion that she was not guiltless in the murder of her second husband, made the Scotch rebel and proclaim her infant son, king under Protestant guardianship. Forced to flee from Scotland, after an unsuccessful fight to regain her power, Mary Stuart went to England, where, instead of receiving help, she was imprisoned nineteen years and then beheaded by Elizabeth's order.

The Armada. Just before Mary Stuart's death, Philip II of Spain began preparing a huge fleet to attack England and force Elizabeth to give her the crown. But Elizabeth was so popular in England that all were ready to defend her. The news of the approach of the Invincible Spanish Är-mā'da (fleet)

was brought to Admiral Howard, while he was playing bowls at Plymouth. As all his plans were made, he calmly finished his game, and then sailed off with many brave seamen to defend England. The small English vessels, manned by patriotic men who did not want to be ruled by a Spaniard, soon got the better of the big Spanish galleys, manned by men fighting under orders of a king. Most of the ships of the Armada were sunk, and the few which escaped by sailing around the British Isles, were wrecked by storms. After the defeat of the Spanish Armada (1588), Spain's power and wealth rapidly grew less, until she ceased to be the first country in Europe.

Our Debt. Elizabeth's reign was the Golden Age of English art and literature. Shakespeare's plays are its greatest contribution to our own times. At this time England was saved from Spanish rule, and California was discovered.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn.

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 233-252, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, pp. 250-253, American Book Co.

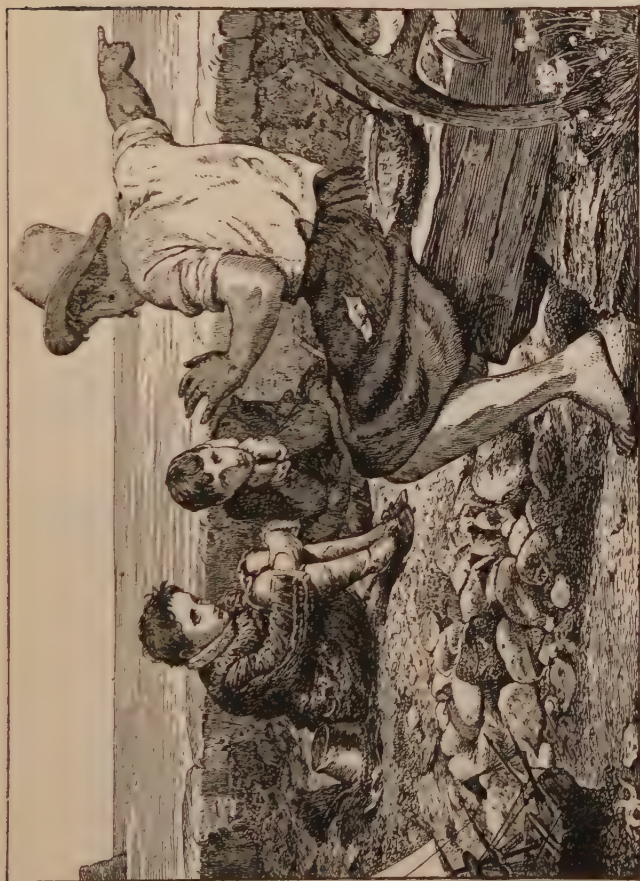
1. Tell the story of Elizabeth's reign.
2. Tell the story of Mary, Queen of Scotland.
3. Tell about the Spanish Armada.

THE THIRTEEN COLONIES

CHAPTER LXV

FIRST ENGLISH COLONIES IN AMERICA

Raleigh. It was from Elizabeth's England that the first English colonists came to America, bringing with them the civilization of England at that time. Their leader, Raleigh (rô'li), had won Elizabeth's favor by spreading his new cloak over a muddy spot to prevent her soiling her shoes! He and his half-brother, wishing to establish English colonies in America, obtained her permission to try. Their first attempt (in Newfoundland) proved unsuccessful; but, although Raleigh's half-brother was drowned on the way home, Raleigh himself tried again. This time he landed his colonists on a part of the North American coast, which he named Virginia, in honor of the virgin (unmarried) queen, Elizabeth. This first colony became discouraged and went home. The next colony could not be visited for several years, because vessels and men were needed to fight the Spanish Armada. When Raleigh finally sent a ship to this colony, it had completely disappeared! No one now knows whether the colonists were killed, or made captive by the Indians, or what became of Virginia Dare, the first English baby born in America. Raleigh is said to have introduced tobacco into England, where either he or Drake also carried a much more useful article, the potato.



THE BOYHOOD OF SIR WALTER RALEIGH

Walter Raleigh and his step brother are listening spell-bound to the tales of a mariner.

Jamestown Colony. When Elizabeth died, Mary Stuart's son, James, became King of England, as well as of Scotland. Since then, those two countries, forming about two-thirds of the British Isles, have been joined together. Raleigh sold his rights to colonize America to a society of merchants, who, hoping to get



LANDING AT JAMESTOWN

In 1607 the first permanent English colonists landed inside of Capes Henry and Charles and named the place Jamestown.

rich, sent out a colony. On entering Chesapeake Bay, these colonists named the capes on either side of its entrance, Charles and Henry, in honor of the King's sons, and the settlement itself Jamestown (1607). These colonists were mostly gentlemen, unused to work, who wanted to get rich quickly and return to England! They therefore prospected for gold (which they did not find), ate up the food they brought, and ill-treated the Indians. The result was they soon

found themselves starving, and dying from malarial fever.

Captain John Smith. Had it not been for one among them, Captain John Smith, who had traveled much, and had often been in tight places, this English colony would have failed too. But Smith, always brave and cheerful, made friends with the Indians, from whom he learned how to gather and roast oysters, kill wild turkeys, and parch and grind corn. In a foraging expedition, Smith was once captured by hostile Indians, whose chief ordered him clubbed to death. The chief's daughter, Pocahontas, pleased with a toy he made for her, pleaded so successfully for Smith's life, that he was allowed to ransom himself. To the Indian's surprise, this ransom was paid at Jamestown, when they presented a bit of birchbark, on which Smith had written his instructions! Once head of the Jamestown colony, Smith insisted that those who would not work should not eat, and decreed that swearing and loafing must cease.

The Second Shipload. A second shipful of English gentlemen arrived, and loaded their ships with pyrites (false gold), while Smith went on securing food and mapping out Chesapeake Bay. Smith wrote notifying the English Company that the search for gold, and for the Northwest passage had so far proved vain, but urged them to send out farmers, carpenters, blacksmiths, masons, and lumbermen, rather than fine gentlemen who did not know how to work. He was just making the colony more comfortable, and winning the Indians' friendship, when he was accidentally wounded and compelled to return to England. Imme-

diately the Jamestown colonists relapsed into idle ways, cheated or ill-treated the Indians, and therefore spent the awful winter, known in history as "Starvation Time." When spring came, the Jamestown colonists boarded their ships, and were sailing out of Chesapeake Bay on their way home, when they met three vessels, bringing provisions, seed, and cattle. They therefore turned back, rejoicing that they had not been allowed to destroy the settlement buildings, as they were anxious to do before sailing.

The Jamestown Planters. The enlarged colony now thrived under a new charter, and governors were appointed by the king. They found corn, wild grapes, plums, and berries in America, and soon planted grapevines, fruit-trees, and vegetables, besides all the kinds of grain grown in Europe. Hearing the English were learning to smoke, they cultivated tobacco, and shipped it to England, receiving in exchange goods, and even wives! With real homes, on thriving plantations in the New World, the colonists ceased to wish themselves back in England. One tobacco planter, John Rolfe, married Pocahontas, and took her to England, where the "Indian Princess" was visited by the highest in the land! Just as she was about to return to America, with husband and child, she died. There are Americans today who are proud to call themselves her descendants. Claiming the English right to help govern themselves, the Jamestown colonists founded the House of Burgesses (1619) to which each settlement sent representatives. But the very year the Virginians thus asserted their own freedom, they bought twenty negro slaves from a Dutch trader, and

thus introduced slavery on the North American continent. There were not only colored slaves in Virginia, who were bought and sold like cattle, but many white people, English convicts and homeless children, who in order to pay for their passage, had to serve a certain time before obtaining their freedom.

Our Debt. We owe to English courage several attempts to plant colonies. European fruits and vegetables were introduced into America. Self government was started by the House of Burgesses. Slavery was established on the American continent (1619).

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

JOHNSTON, *To Have and to Hold.*

JOHNSTON, *Prisoners of Hope.*

GUMBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 83-100, American Book Co.

GUMBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 246-247, 252-258, American Book Co.

1. Tell the story of Raleigh's gallantry, and attempts to establish colonies.

2. Tell the story of the Jamestown Colony and of Captain John Smith.

3. Tell the story of Pocahontas.

CHAPTER LXVI

THE PURITANS

Hudson. Meantime, Hudson, seeking a Northwest passage for the Dutch, discovered the Hudson River (1609). Soon after, a Dutch trading-post was established on Manhattan Island, part of "New Netherland." During a second journey, in an English ship,

Hudson entered the bay which bears his name. There, a mutinous crew abandoned him, his son, and some sick sailors, in an open boat, and they were never seen again!

The Pilgrims. The English dissenters, who insisted upon a *purser* form of religion, were known as Puritans and Separatists. Persecuted in England, some of them went to Leyden (li'den), Holland, the year Jamestown was founded. Living amid the Dutch, they perceived their children would soon cease to be English. To go on worshipping as they pleased, and still remain English, these Puritans obtained King James' permission to found a colony in the New World. One hundred and two "pilgrims" therefore started out in the Mayflower, but instead of landing near Virginia, were set ashore in New England (December, 1620). Because their last port had been at Plymouth, England, their new abode received this name. Before landing, the Mayflower passengers pledged themselves to be true to their country, king, and religion, and to obey any rules made for the general welfare. Next they elected a governor, and a captain for the small army which was to protect them from the Indians.

The Landing. Landing in winter, in a colder climate than they had ever known, the Pilgrim fathers felled trees to build log huts. The ground was beaten hard for floors, or covered with slabs of wood, for all boards had to be made by hand. The Pilgrims' houses were furnished with the few articles brought with them, and with homemade tables, stools, bedsteads, and cupboards. That winter all suffered so much from cold, sickness, and hunger, that half of the Pilgrims

died. Those who resisted, cared for the sick, buried the dead, and collected firewood to keep from freezing. As they feared attacks of Indians or wild beasts, they erected a combination fort and meeting-house, even before they finished their own huts. They were so



LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS

In December, 1620, the Pilgrims landed from the Mayflower in Massachusetts and gave their colony the name of Plymouth.

very strict about keeping the Sabbath, that even young children had to attend service, and listen to long sermons and prayers.

The First Indian Visitor. Early in spring, the Pilgrims were startled by the appearance of an Indian, who, having learned a little English from the fishermen, greeted them in their own language! They treated him so kindly, that he soon brought an Indian

chief to conclude a treaty with them, and smoke a pipe of peace. The Plymouth governor, who politely returned this visit, wrote an interesting description of the night he spent in the chief's wigwam. Then, in May, the Mayflower returned to England, leaving a handful of brave men and women on the bleak New England coast.

The Colonists. The friendly Indians now showed the settlers how to plant corn. But, while waiting for their harvest, the Pilgrims had nothing to live on but the small stock of provisions left them, with such game, fish, berries, and roots as they could secure. These supplies were very scanty, because none of the men were trained hunters or fishermen, and all were afraid to venture far afield lest they lose their way. The Pilgrims had come down to six grains of corn per meal, with such clams and oysters as they could find, when the Mayflower came back with colonists, supplies, cattle, and hens! This second boatload suffered far less than the first, since its passengers found immediate shelter. Besides, they arrived in autumn and not in winter. To show their gratitude to God for this arrival, and for a fine harvest, the Pilgrims held a Thanksgiving celebration, to which ninety Indians were invited. These brought deer and turkeys, which the Puritan women cooked, and they made pumpkin pies, to take the place of the English apple-tarts. Thanksgiving is now one of our national holidays, the President choosing the last Thursday in November for its celebration.

Massachusetts Bay Colony. In 1628 arrived the first Massachusetts Bay colonists. They came in quest of political and religious liberty, and hoped to convert the

Indians. Their leaders were so strict, that one of them forbade Maypole dancing, and cut the cross out of the English flag, saying it was a popish emblem! In 1630 Boston was founded by Puritans, and during the next ten years about twenty thousand English-speaking people settled in fifty New England parishes, connected by bridges and roads. All male church members had the right to vote, and each village sent representatives to the General Court, or Assembly, where laws were made for all. Knowing the value of education, the Puritans provided for public schools in every village, and in 1636 founded Harvard College, for the training of ministers. The Massachusetts Bay colonists also built the first American trade ship, and began to exchange timber for sugar and molasses in the West Indies. From these they manufactured rum to ship to England.

Religious Matters. John Eliot, "Apostle of the Indians," not only converted many savages, but translated the Bible into their language. Because Roger Williams, a young preacher, did not agree with the Puritans on every point, they were going to send him back to England. But Williams escaped, and wintered among the Indians. The next spring he started the colony of Providence, Rhode Island, buying the land from the Indians, and declaring that all who lived there could vote, except Jews. This was then considered so generous, that Williams is known as the "Apostle of Toleration." New England Puritan families were so large, that their children, on growing up, founded colonies, too. Thus Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, and Connecticut were provided with a hard-working, high-principled population.

Our Debt. The Hudson River and Hudson Bay were discovered. The Dutch founded trading posts on the Hudson River. The Pilgrims made their first settlement at Plymouth, New England. The Massa-



ROGER WILLIAMS' LANDING

chusetts Bay colonies and Boston were founded. Massachusetts, Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Connecticut and Rhode Island were colonized. Toleration was introduced into New England by Roger Williams.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 101-127, American Book Co.

1. Tell the story of Hudson and his discoveries.
2. Tell the story of the Pilgrims' Venture.
3. Tell the story of the Massachusetts Bay Colony.

CHAPTER LXVII

NEW COLONISTS

Virginia. In Virginia, the colonists were also prospering and increasing. Still, their unjust dealings with the Indians caused much trouble, and brought about an attempt on the part of the savages to kill them all (1632). Although this massacre failed, the Indians were no longer allowed to enter the settlements. Many of them, however, owned fire-arms, and hence proved dangerous neighbors. In New England, the Indian tribes, which were treated fairly, remained loyal to the whites in their midst, even when other tribes began to murder settlers (1636-38).

Revolutions in England. The Puritans in England had become very numerous and strong. When Charles I tried to deprive them of political and religious rights, they beheaded him and made their leader, Oliver Cromwell, Protector of the Commonwealth of England. Then the Puritans, in their turn, made Roman Catholics and Anglicans so uncomfortable, that *they* emigrated to America, too. Since none but Puritans were welcome in New England, Church of England people went to Virginia, and Catholics to Maryland. The numerous friends of the beheaded king, in Virginia, called it the Old Dominion, and vainly invited Prince Charles to come and rule them. But, when the Commonwealth ended, and he became Charles II of England, he appointed such poor governors to rule Virginia, that the colonists rebelled, and burned Jamestown (1676), which was never re-built.

The Dutch. Meantime, the Dutch colony on the Hudson, having bought Manhattan Island from the Indians for twenty-four dollars' worth of goods, promised huge estates along the Hudson to any patroon (boss) who brought over fifty colonists supplied with tools, cattle, etc. Dutch colonies were therefore the beginning of many Hudson towns. Under Dutch rule New Netherland prospered greatly, its people being thrifty, God-fearing folk, living in comfortable brick houses. New Amsterdam, their principal settlement, was governed by City Fathers, who held their meetings in City Hall. But the Dutch quarreled with the Puritans in New England, and with the small Swedish colony to the south which they finally seized. Owing principally to the injustice of one of their governors, the Dutch also had trouble with the Indians, and were forced to build a palisade, where Wall Street now stands. So many foreign merchants came to settle in New Amsterdam, that fourteen languages were talked there when the last Dutch governor surrendered to the English war-vessels, sent by the Duke of York (1664). Then New Amsterdam became New York, and thereafter the Dutch were subject to English law. Many Dutch farmers across the river from New York became part of Carteret's (kär'tēr-ēt's) colony of New Jersey (1664).

Pennsylvania Quakers. The return of a Stuart king to the English throne influenced more Puritans to leave for New England. From this king, the Quaker (kwā'-kēr), William Penn, also obtained Pennsylvania, where he helped persecuted Quakers to settle, after formally purchasing the land from the Indians. These English

Quakers proved splendid, hard-working colonists, and treated the Indians fairly.

The Pennsylvania Dutch. Germany, which had long been divided into many small kingdoms, duchies, and bishoprics, suffered untold horrors during the Thirty Years' War. So, when Pas-tor-ius, a Lutheran pastor, proposed to his congregation to emigrate with him to Penn's colony, they gladly followed him across the ocean. They settled in Germantown, near Philadelphia, where they had their own church and school, and continued to talk German. Their descendants still talk a mixture of English and German, known as "Pennsylvania Dutch" because the Quakers could not distinguish German from Dutch! These Germans brought with them all they had learned in the Fatherland, so their descendants are noted as fine farmers.

Happenings Elsewhere. Meantime, in India, a Moslem ruler erected, in honor of his dead wife, the Taj-Ma-häl' (1629), just about when the French and English founded trading stations along the coast of Hindustan. In Russia, Peter the Great taught his people ship-building, which he learned in Holland. During his reign, the Russians, who had already explored and taken possession of Siberia, first began to count among civilized nations. Then, too, Sobieski (sō-byě'skē), the brave King of Poland, rescued Vienna from besieging Turks. They fled, leaving besides other stores, such a stock of coffee, that all Europe began to drink it. Four years later, while the Venetians were besieging Athens, which was still in the Turks' hands, a bomb accidentally fell into the Parthenon, where the Turks had stored their powder. The result was a

tremendous explosion, which left the building the wreck it is now! It had served as a Greek temple until the fifth century A.D., when it became a Christian Church. Then, five years after taking Constantinople, the Turks became masters of Greece, and used the Parthenon as a mosque (mōsk).

Our Debt. More colonies founded in the New World include: the Church of England colonies in Virginia, the Dutch colonies in New Netherland, the Swedish colony, Penn's Quaker colony, and the Germantown colony. New Amsterdam became New York in 1664.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 142-152, American Book Co.

1. Tell about the changes in Virginia and the Dutch Colonies.
2. Tell how Pennsylvania was colonized.
3. What happened elsewhere?

CHAPTER LXVIII

THE LAST COLONY

The Alleghenies. The governors sent to the American colonies by the Stuart kings of England, tried to stop all government by the people. This caused so much trouble, that the colonists rejoiced when a new revolution placed a Dutch Prince and an English princess (William and Mary) on the English throne. The Virginians founded in their honor William and Mary College (1688). They started a printing press. They also decreed no white man should be held in

slavery in America! In spite of its large population, Virginia had not yet tried to discover what lay beyond the Allegheny (ăl'ē-gā-nĭ) Mountain Range. Governor Spottswood now proposed an exploring expedition to a number of planters, who gladly accepted, and returned from their thousand mile ride, full of enthusiasm about the beautiful country they had seen on the other side of the mountains.

Many Men from Many Lands. Because people of every religion and nationality were allowed to settle in the Carolinas, it had Quaker, Huguenot, Puritan, Scotch, Welsh, Irish, Swiss, Swedish, German, and Dutch colonies! In the north its settlers traded in lumber, turpentine, tar, and pitch; those in the south, in rice and indigo. Because they needed laborers, they bought many negro slaves imported from Africa. Look at a map of the coast, and you will see how many islands and bays Virginia and the Carolinas boast. Here daring sailors, smugglers, and pirates came and went, just as they pleased, paying no heed to the English navigation laws. Blackbeard, the most noted of the pirates, is said to have buried great treasures somewhere along shore, where people still hope to find them!

The Thirteenth English Colony. The last of our Thirteen Colonies was founded in Georgia by the Englishman, Oglethorpe (ōgl'thōrp). He brought thither a shipload of debtors, whom he had compassionately freed from prison. This colony founded Savannah (1733), and began to raise both rice and cotton. Thus, in one hundred and twenty-six years, thirteen English colonies had been founded along the Atlantic coast,

within the limits of our present United States. The founder of this last colony lived to see these Thirteen Colonies become independent of Old England, the Mother Country (1776).

European Countries. Meantime, Spaniards continued to send colonists and priests to the West Indies, Mexico, and Central and South America. From



NORTH AMERICA IN 1713

Mexico, Spanish priests entered New Mexico and California, founding mission stations to convert the Indians and teach them civilization. The Portuguese devoted their main energies to trading with the East, and colonized Brazil, their share of the New World. Because Germany and Italy were then

divided up into many small states—often warring against each other, or selfishly thinking only of their own gains—these countries had little political influence in Europe at that time, and next to no intercourse with America.

France. France had become Europe's most important nation, because its religious wars ended, Henry IV,

who had once been a Huguenot, allowed Protestants to worship as they pleased in his realm. He was succeeded by a son and grandson, Louis XIII and Louis XIV, whose clever ministers did great things for France. But Louis XIV, the builder of Versailles, perceiving the Huguenots were becoming so powerful in France that they threatened to set up a republic at La Rochelle, forbade their practicing the Protestant religion and banished their pastors. The result was, that although forbidden to emigrate, hosts of these industrious and thrifty Huguenots, secretly made their way out of France, to settle in Switzerland, Germany, Holland, and England. A number of them even came to America. Wherever they went, they carried with them their good principles, their knowledge, and skill. So there were Huguenot wool and silk-weavers, potters, and manufacturers of all kinds in every country. The loss of so many skilled workers made France much poorer and the countries where they settled much richer.

French Explorers. Meantime, Canada, where none but Catholics were allowed to settle, was thriving. Daring French fur-traders, trappers, and priests, were going farther and farther inland, and exploring the shores of the Great Lakes, where many places bear French names. From the Lakes, by means of rivers and portages, they reached the Ohio and Mississippi Rivers, and explored them from end to end. La Salle (sal), a great Frenchman, was the first white man to sail down to the mouth of the Mississippi. He took possession of all the land this river drains, for Louis XIV. Then, visiting France, he obtained this king's

permission to establish a colony in Louisiana, at the mouth of the Mississippi. Owing to poor maps, his ships missed the entrance to the great river, and were finally wrecked off the coast of Texas. There his colonists suffered great hardships, and La Salle, in



LA SALLE AT THE MOUTH OF THE MISSISSIPPI

La Salle explored the Mississippi from the North, and took possession of the land for the King of France, Louis XIV.

quest of help for them, was murdered by his own men! Still, a few years later, Louisiana was peopled by Frenchmen, and in 1718 New Orleans was founded. The French language is still spoken there, as it is in

Canada, by some of the descendants of the early French colonists. The French next planned to build a line of forts, from Lake Erie along the Ohio to the mouth of the Mississippi, to keep all the lands west of this line for fur trading.

The Rise of Prussia. Brandenburg, afterwards part of Prussia, one of the boundary duchies of Germany, had been created to hold in check the Poles and the Russians. In 1618 it became an Electorate, that is to say its Duke was one of seven Electors who appointed the Emperor for the Holy Roman Empire. In 1701 a Prussian Elector became King of Prussia, a title borne by a Hohenzollern until 1918. Three years after Prussia became a kingdom, the English took Gibraltar from Spain. Ten years after that, German kings of Hanover began to rule England, which boasted four Georges on the throne between 1714 and 1830. Georgia was named in honor of George II.

Our Debt. We owe to Virginians the first crossing of the Alleghenies, to Oglethorpe the founding of Georgia, to the various nations which sent us colonists the benefits their mental, moral, and physical contributions have conferred upon us.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 161-182, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Old France*, p. 280 to end of volume, American Book Co.

1. Tell about the crossing of the Alleghenies.
2. Tell about the French under La Salle.
3. Who founded the thirteenth colony and when?
4. Tell about the rise of Prussia.

GREAT MEN AND REVOLUTION

CHAPTER LXIX

WASHINGTON AND FRANKLIN

George Washington. The year before our thirteenth colony was founded, George Washington was born on the banks of the Potomac. The eldest child of a second marriage, he had older brothers and sisters be-



GEORGE WASHINGTON

As he looked later during the Revolution.

sides five younger than himself. Washington was twelve when his father died, so his mother had to bring up six young children alone. She was such a good, capable woman, that her son often said he owed his mother more than words could tell. At seventeen, Washington was hired to survey a large tract of land, a job which made him strong and self-reliant. At nineteen he visited Bermuda

with a sick stepbrother, whom he tenderly nursed, and from whom he inherited the estate of Mt. Vernon in Virginia. At twenty-one, the Governor of Virginia chose Washington to carry a letter to the French officer

building forts along the Ohio and Allegheny. The Colonies disputed the claim of the French to all the land North and West of the Ohio and Mississippi Rivers, because their grants read "from sea to sea," and hence each colony claimed a strip across the whole continent. Although Washington nearly lost his life several times during this trip, he faithfully delivered this letter. His journal shows he gained much information by this trip, which was to prove very useful to him later on.

Washington's First Battle. To hold the land Virginia claimed, its Governor sent two hundred men to build a fort, where the Allegheny and the Ohio meet. But, before their work was finished, the French drove them away and finished the fort for their own use! Seeing they would lose all hold on the country unless they drove the French away, the Virginians now raised a small force under Washington. He surprised and defeated the foe, but had to withdraw and entrench at Great Meadows, when a large French and Indian force attacked him. In spite of his caution, Washington was so outnumbered that he had to surrender. Because he made a brave stand, he was allowed to march away with flag and arms. This defeat taught Washington how serious a matter war is, and made the Colonies realize that they would have to take vigorous steps if they wanted to hold the western lands.

Franklin. Delegates from all the Colonies therefore met at Albany, where Franklin showed them they must be united, by heading his paper with a snake cut in pieces, each representing a colony, and writing beneath it the words, "Join or Die!" Franklin, who

thus tried to make his fellow-citizens understand the importance of "United we stand, divided we fall!", was the twelfth child of a Boston soap and candle-maker. He himself has told us interesting tales of his boyhood, stories of a whistle and of an axe, which have given rise to American proverbs. At fourteen, he became printer-apprentice to an older brother, and secretly wrote articles which were published in the fourth newspaper printed in our land. Because his brother proved unkind, Franklin ran away at seventeen, and finding no work in New York, went on to Philadelphia.

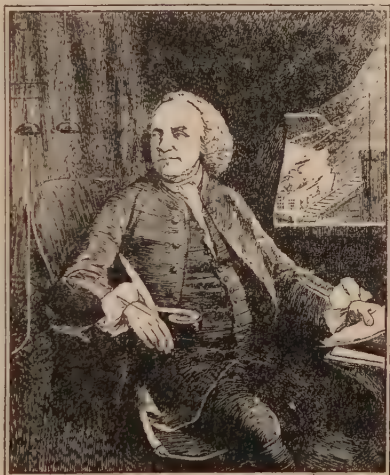
Poor Richard's Almanac. In Philadelphia Franklin worked hard as a printer, spending every spare hour in studying, and reading every book he could buy or borrow. He even learned foreign languages by himself, and rejoiced when sent to England to buy a printing press. But, on arriving in London, no funds for the press reached him, so Franklin had to earn money enough to get home. Early in life he married, and began a printing business, publishing "Poor Richard's Almanac," wherein we find many wise sayings, which helped to mould American character, such as: "Time is money," "Waste not, want not," "Honesty is the best policy," and "No gains without pains." Franklin also published a newspaper, doing personally all the work connected with it, such as carting the paper in a wheelbarrow, writing the articles, setting up the type, printing, and distributing it.

Franklin's Invention. Although so busy, Franklin, wishing to benefit Philadelphia, started the University of Pennsylvania, its first Public Library, Fire Brigade,

Insurance Company, and Hospital. He also invented the first good stoves, eight years before coal was discovered here (1792), and made the first lightning rods. By his kite experiment, Franklin learned more about electricity than any other man in this country knew, and took the first step in the discoveries which have given our times the name of "Age of Electricity."

Public Services.

His manifold occupations did not prevent Franklin from serving his country in political



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

offices for fifty-four years. Wise as Franklin was, the Albany delegates followed his advice only by supplying men and money to help General Braddock, whom the British set in charge of the war. Although Braddock's plans were good, he failed to accomplish his purpose, because he scorned Washington's cautions. He and his men were shot down by the French and Indians in ambush, and Washington prevented the destruction of the whole army only by an able retreat.

Our Debt. To Franklin we owe wise proverbs, the founding of useful public institutions, the invention of the stove and lightning rod, his electrical experiments, his Autobiography, and Poor Richard's Almanac.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

FIELD, *The Holy Cross*

GUERBER, *Legends of the Virgin and Christ*, pp. 199-201, Dodd Mead & Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 191-209, American Book Co.

1. Tell the story of George Washington to 1755.
2. Tell the story of Franklin to 1755.
3. Did each serve his country?

CHAPTER LXX

WHAT LED TO THE REVOLUTION

Frederick the Great. Meantime, great events were taking place in Europe from which we were to derive some advantages. In Prussia Frederick the Great was training a wonderful army, by means of which he took Silesia (sĭ-lē'shĭ-a) from Austria, and about half of Poland. One of his well-trained officers helped Washington to teach our army, — as you will see.

Discoveries. Scientific discoveries benefit not one country only, but the world. Newton, the English mathematician, started a series of experiments, which resulted in the discovery of the law of gravitation. Harvey discovered the circulation of the blood, and sailors were greatly helped by the invention of the sextant. Watching his weary wife, Jenny, spinning, the Englishman Hargreaves (här'grēvz), got his first idea of a spinning machine, which he called the spinning-jenny. It did so much more work in a few hours than any woman could accomplish in a week, that it proved a boon to the world. Of course, spinning ma-

chines are still constantly being improved, but Hargreaves' was the first of its kind.

French and Indian War. A year after the Albany Assembly, British troops drove the French farmers out of A-cā'dī-a, as told in Longfellow's *Evangeline*. This was during the French and Indian War, which in Europe was called the Seven Years' War. On this side



QUEBEC IN 1759

The British forces climbed to the heights, 200 feet above the river, in the night, surprising the French and winning the battle that followed.

of the water the greatest battle was at Quebec, where both generals fell just as the victory was won by the British. Then came the Treaty of Paris (1763) whereby the French gave up Canada and India to the English. Then, too, France gave up New Orleans and all the land west of the Mississippi to Spain, her ally. The Indians, who liked the French better than the British, were so displeased by this treaty, that they continued to fight until their chief, Pontiac, was killed.

The War Bill. The French and Indian War proved so costly that the Mother Country wanted the Colo-

nies to pay a part of the bill. She also insisted that the Colonies trade mainly with England, sending specified articles thither in British ships, and buying most things they wanted from her only. Although the



PONTIAC

An Indian chief, who continued to war against the English, after the French had surrendered Canada to them, in 1763.

Colonies had hitherto been patient, they thought it high time to object. They were not unwilling to pay part of the costs of the war, but they wanted to decide for themselves how the money should be raised. Besides they felt sore, because although there were now about three million Americans, they could not send a single member to Parliament to speak for them, while small places in England were represented by several M.P.'s (Members of Parliament).

Patrick Henry. Great speeches were now made in the Colonies, urging the people to insist on their right (derived from the Magna Charta) to help make the laws they were obliged to obey. In England, many great men besides Burke said the Colonies were right, but Parliament calmly went on to tax sugar and molasses, and to decree that newspapers and law papers be printed or written on "stamped paper" only, supplied from England. Patrick Henry, in the House of Burgesses in Virginia, then made a famous speech,

declaring tyranny should be resisted, and reminding his hearers how bravely people had done so in olden times. One sentence was, "Caesar had his Brutus; Charles I, his Cromwell; and George III . . ."

"Treason! Treason!" interrupted the king's friends. But Patrick Henry firmly concluded, . . . "may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it!" The various speeches made on this subject so encouraged the colonists, that they would not allow a single sheet of stamped paper to be sold, and obtained the repeal (recall) of the "Stamp Act" from Parliament.

The Bloody Massacre. But, although the colonists rejoiced, all trouble was not ended. When Parliament taxed tea, glass, paint, etc., none were bought in America! Then, colonists were forbidden to assemble and discuss things, and red-coated British soldiers broke up all political meetings. Next small fights between citizens and soldiers occurred in New York and in Boston. As five men were killed and several



NORTH AMERICA IN 1763

wounded in the latter place, such excitement prevailed, that Samuel Adams persuaded the royal governor to quarter the British troops on an island in the Bay.

The Boston Tea Party. Some Bostonians, fearing people might buy the taxed tea, now disguised themselves as Indians, boarded the tea ships at Griffin's Wharf, and with their tomahawks broke open the tea chests and poured their contents into the harbor, which thus became the huge tea-pot of Boston's famous Tea Party.

Our Debt. To Longfellow we owe "Evangeline," to Newton the law of gravitation, to Harvey the discovery of blood circulation, the sextant to an American, Godfrey, the spinning-jenny to Hargreaves, an Englishman. To the French and Indian War we owe the fact that our northern neighbors are Englishmen.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 209-228, American Book Co.

LONGFELLOW, *Evangeline*

1. What had happened in Europe during this time?
2. Tell about the French and Indian War, and how did Britain propose to pay part costs?
3. Tell about Patrick Henry, the Bloody Massacre, and the Boston Tea Party.

CHAPTER LXXI

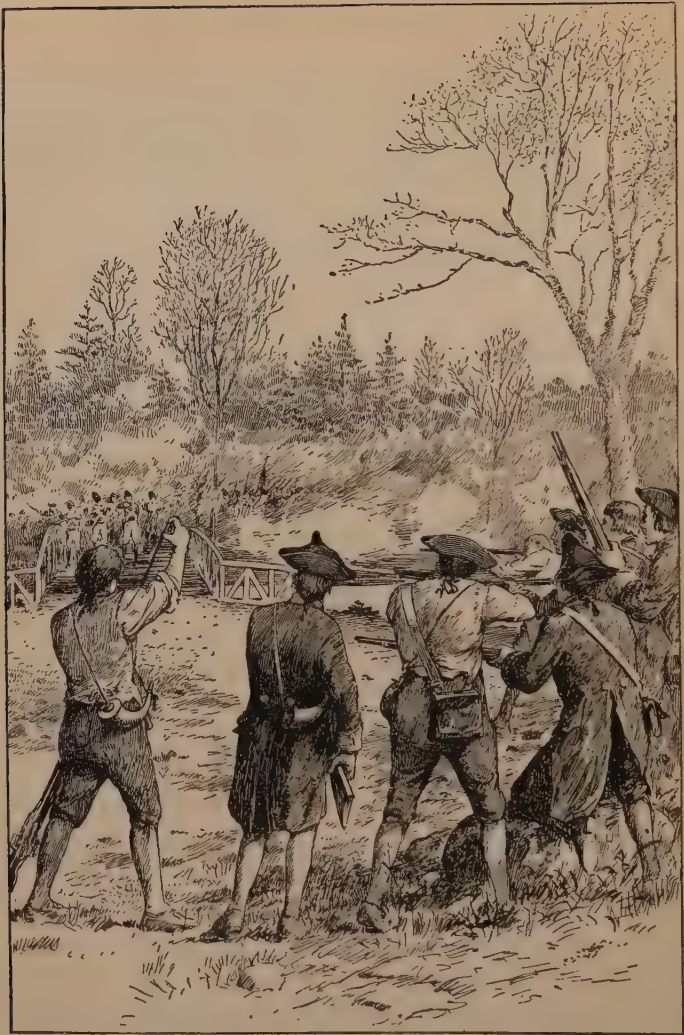
THE MINUTE MEN

Boston Punished. To punish the Bostonians for destroying the tea, Parliament decreed no ships should sail in or out of the harbor until it was paid for, and

obedience assured. When the Bostonians replied they could not and would not stand this, the other colonies applauded them. Then the Thirteen Colonies sent delegates to the "First Continental Congress," in Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia, to decide what to do next. There Samuel Adams, "Father of the Revolution," was directed to send a petition to King George III, asking him to grant the Colonists their rights as free-born Englishmen. This petition was sent to England, although many delegates felt sure it would be scorned, and they would have to fight to secure their rights.

The Minute Men. To prepare for the coming fight, the "three million Americans, scattered over three thousand miles," formed military companies of "Minute Men," ready to answer Liberty's call at a moment's notice. The women, to show how they felt, ceased to purchase imported goods, and although many of them were accustomed to wear silks, laces, and fine linen, they now appeared, even at parties, in garments spun, woven, and made by their own hands.

The Battle of Lexington. For warfare ammunition is needed, so the Americans began to collect powder and bullets. Feeling sure the British troops would try to secure or destroy their stores at Concord (near Boston), the "Minute Men" watching the "Red Backs," were to signal by lanterns from Old North Church Tower whenever they prepared to land. So, when the lights flashed forth one night, Paul Revere, the man on duty, sprang on his waiting horse, and dashing off at a gallop, warned all the people along the road that the British were coming. Immediately the Minute Men assembled on Lexington Common. There, a mere hand-



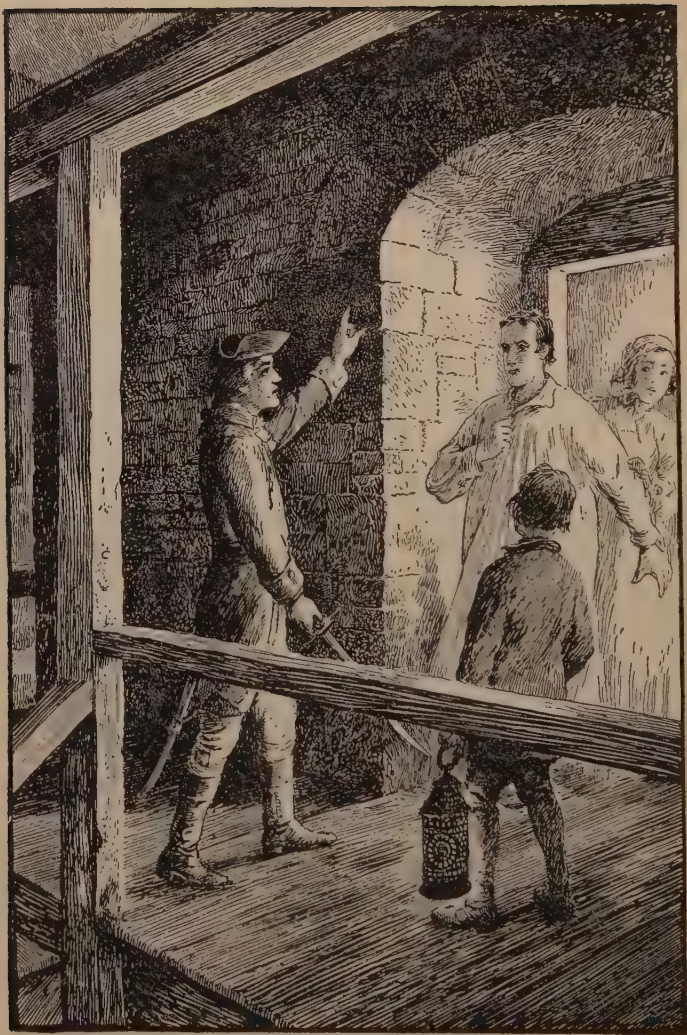
AT CONCORD BRIDGE

The Minute men, assembled at Lexington, were scattered by the British, then met them again at Concord Bridge returning to their barracks.

ful of men were forced to give way before the two British regiments, which marched on to Concord, whence most of the stores had been removed. On their way back, these British soldiers had to run the gauntlet between two lines of fire, for Minute Men were posted behind the stone walls on either side of the road. The next day the Massachusetts Congress notified England, "we determine to die or be free!"

Summons to Arms. Meantime swift riders, as had been arranged, visited every town, village, and farm to summon the Minute Men. Like Cincinnatus, Israel Putnam was found at the plough, but he left his for eight years instead of sixteen days! Two other patriots, Ethan Allen and Arnold, hurried off with "the Green Mountain Boys," to surprise the British at Fort Ticonderoga (tī-kõn-dēr-õ'gà). They thus secured for us the guns, which later forced the British to leave Boston. Meantime, the Second Continental Congress met at Philadelphia and appointed George Washington General in Chief of the Continental Army. On his way to join the army at Cambridge, Washington marked the earnestness of the people, and met a messenger going to inform Congress how bravely the New England patriots had just defended Bunker Hill. When Washington heard the particulars of that battle, he thankfully exclaimed: "The Liberties of the Country are safe!"

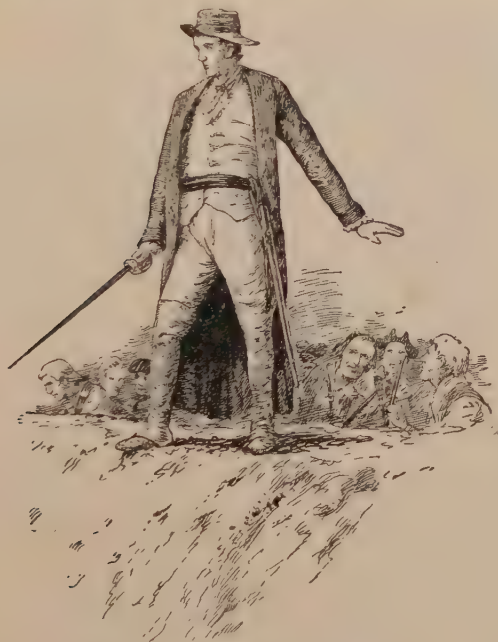
Washington in Command. Standing under the Cambridge Elm, Washington assumed command of 15,000 men, armed with hunting knives and rifles, swords, scythes, and pitchforks, and wearing ordinary clothes instead of uniforms. His first task was to drill and



CAPTURE OF TICONDEROGA

Ethan Allen and the Green Mountain boys surprised Ticonderoga in the middle of the night and forced the commander to surrender.

discipline this army, for which it was difficult to procure food, shelter, arms, and ammunition. By heroic efforts and patience, Washington succeeded not only in drilling his men, but in driving the British out of



PRESCOTT AT BUNKER HILL

The force at Bunker Hill was commanded by Prescott, who ordered the men to fire only when they saw the enemies' eyes.

Boston. Knowing they would next try to secure New York and the control of the Hudson Valley, so as to divide the Northern from the Southern Colonies, Washington hurried thither. But, in spite of his fine generalship, his army was unable to check the larger

and better equipped and trained forces of the British. So, step by step, Washington was driven from Long Island and from New York City. There, brave young Nathan Hale was executed as a spy, and died declaring: "I regret I have but one life to give to my country."

Our Debt. We are indebted to this period of our history for many things, such as: the example given by the unity of purpose of the Thirteen Colonies, the Continental Congress spirit, the Minute Men's patriotic readiness, Paul Revere's Ride, the heroic deeds done at Lexington, Concord, Ticonderoga, and Bunker Hill, Washington's army which compelled the evacuation of Boston, and Nathan Hale's example and words.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

EGGLESTON, *Stories of American Life and Adventure*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 228-248, American Book Co.

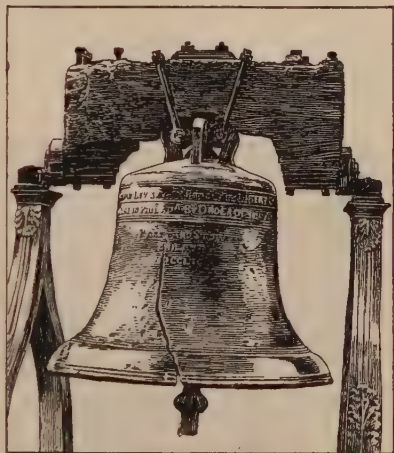
1. How was Boston to be punished for the Tea-party, and who were the Minute Men?
2. Tell about Paul Revere, and the Battles of Lexington and Concord.
3. Tell about the Battle of Bunker Hill, Washington's command, and the evacuation of Boston.

CHAPTER LXXII

DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

1776. Meanwhile, the Second Continental Congress was still sitting in Philadelphia when Richard Henry Lee proclaimed: "These United Colonies are, and of

right ought to be, free and independent States! ” This was so exactly the general opinion that five delegates were appointed to draw up our Declaration of Independence. Written mainly by Thomas Jefferson, it was approved by Congress, and signed by all present on the 4th of July, 1776, the Birthday of our United States. On this occasion the Liberty Bell was rung in Independence Hall.



THE LIBERTY BELL.

The bell which hung in Carpenters' Hall and proclaimed the Declaration of Independence July 4th, 1776.

Washington in New Jersey. Although the Colonies thus claimed their freedom, the British, determined to hold them fast, continued the war. Driven from Long Island and New York, Washington now began to retreat across New Jersey. The British, sure he was on the defensive, grew so careless, that he was able, by crossing the Delaware in the midst of floating ice, to surprise and defeat them, first at Trenton and then at Princeton. Because the British, in general, did not approve of the war, King George III hired German soldiers, Hessians (hěsh'anz), to fight in America, and bribed the Indians to make trouble. Knowing the British planned to send one army from Quebec via Lakes Champlain and George, a second from Niagara

along the Mohawk, with orders to join a third force coming up from New York, Washington took measures to check them. Arnold was sent with an army through the Maine woods to attack Quebec, Stark saved our ammunition at Bennington, and Her'ki-mer, although wounded, directed the Battle of Oriskany (o-ris'ká-nĩ).



GENERAL HERKIMER AT ORISKANY

Wounded in the beginning of the battle at Oriskany, General Herkimer directed his men while leaning against a tree.

Our Flag. Continuing to retreat slowly before the foe, Washington reached Philadelphia. There, in 1777, by order of Congress, he planned the American flag which Betsy Ross made, with thirteen alternate red and white stripes, and thirteen white stars in a blue field, to represent the Thirteen Colonies. Our present

flag still has thirteen stripes; but, for every new State joining the Union, a new star is added; they now number forty-eight. Congress also framed the "Articles of Confederation," which governed the Thirteen Colonies during the war.

Lafayette. Meantime, Franklin had gone to France to seek help. The French king hesitated to grant it, but one of his nobles, the Marquis of Lafayette (lä-fā-yět'), freighted a ship, crossed the Atlantic, and generously offered his help to Congress. Washington sorely needed aid, because a British force was landing near Philadelphia. In the next battle (Brandywine), Lafayette was wounded, and the defeated American army had to abandon Philadelphia to the British.

Valley Forge. Our troops now spent a frightful winter at Valley Forge, without sufficient fuel, food, or clothing. Congress, having fled inland with the Declaration of Independence and the Liberty Bell, supplied with difficulty a small part of the money Washington needed so badly for his brave men. Besides suffering horribly themselves, these men knew their families were doing the same. Still, they drilled without a murmur under the Prussian Steuben (stū'bĕn), who made them good soldiers. Washington's courage, his wife's constant help in knitting socks, making garments, and nursing the sick, and the bravery and patriotism of our countrymen and countrywomen, who were ready to die to secure freedom for their children, alone saved the day.

The British Retreat. The two British armies hardly stirred from New York and Philadelphia, although a

third army was marching down from the north expecting to meet them. Instead, this army had to surrender at Saratoga to the Americans. The news of this victory forced the British force at Philadelphia to hurry



DANIEL BOONE

The pioneer of Kentucky, Daniel Boone, escaped the Indians many times, and fought in the Revolutionary War.

back to New York. During its retreat, in spite of treachery in his ranks, Washington won the victory of Monmouth. Once more the British tried to control the Hudson Valley, where Wayne (wān) took Stony Point, and where Washington gave Arnold charge of West Point. Along the frontier, and in places far inland, farms and villages meantime suffered from Indian raids, in which many Americans were killed. In Kentucky, the brave pioneer and hunter, Daniel Boone, had established a small settlement. It defended itself heroically against the Indians, the women and girls

showing as great courage as the men. To punish the raiding Northwest Indians, General Sullivan marched through the wilderness, waded through swamps, and crossed swollen streams, until he reached the settlements along the Illinois. There, he informed the people they would henceforth have to obey Congress, which freed them from British rule.

Our Debt. The Declaration of Independence was signed July 4, 1776, at Philadelphia. The first American flag was made by Betsy Ross in 1777. Lafayette brought help from France for the Colonies.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 248-282, American Book Co.

1. Tell about the Declaration of Independence.
2. What did Washington do in New Jersey?
3. Tell about the flag; Lafayette's arrival; the Battle of Brandywine.

CHAPTER LXXIII

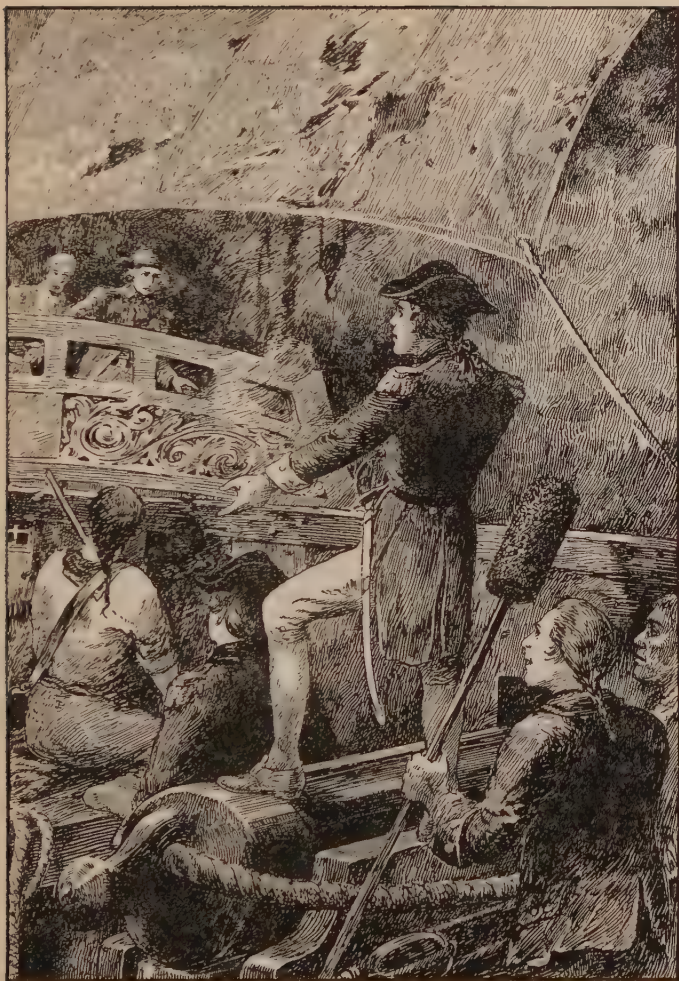
TREACHERY IN OUR MIDST

John Paul Jones. From the beginning of the war, American seamen had manned the few ships we owned, or could buy or seize. The best known of American Naval Commanders during the Revolutionary War, is John Paul Jones, who flew the first American flag on the Atlantic. He also commanded the frigate which the French gave us, naming it *Bonhomme* (bön-om') *Richard*, after Franklin's famous almanac. In that vessel, in spite of great odds, Jones attacked a larger British man-o'-war, the *Serapis*. Its commander, having as he thought, disabled his foe, summoned Jones to surrender. Coolly answering, "I have not yet begun to fight!", Jones fought on so bravely, that the British had to surrender! Then he transferred his men to the *Serapis*, watched his own vessel sink, and

returned to France, where Franklin presented him to Louis XVI and Marie Antoinette.

Southern Campaign. Having failed at Boston and New York, the British seized Savannah, and began sweeping northward from there. They were hindered at first mainly by the daring southern patriots, Morgan and Marion, nicknaming the latter "the Swamp Fox" because he always escaped their pursuit. Having defeated an army sent south by Washington, the British fancied they would win the war, and force the Colonies to obey the Mother Country!

André. Angry because Washington had been obliged to reprimand him for extravagance, Arnold secretly offered to surrender West Point to the British. To plan this surrender, Major André (ăn-dră') was sent from New York to meet Arnold. All was settled, and the young Englishman, with the necessary papers, started back for New York. As the frigate which had brought him had dropped down stream, André procured a horse, and was riding through Tarrytown, when he was stopped by three patriots who insisted upon searching him. In his boots they found the papers, and although offered bribes to let him go, they held him fast, and sent word to Washington and Arnold to look out! Hurrying to West Point, Washington arrived there too late to arrest Arnold, the traitor. For, on learning that André had been seized, Arnold hurried down to the river, and was rowed out to a British frigate, where he was received in silence! The men who rowed him, when asked to come aboard, too, indignantly refused, declaring *they* were loyal to their country!



JOHN PAUL JONES

The bravest of our seamen was John Paul Jones, who took the *Serapis* with the *Bonhomme Richard* and was received at Court.



GENERAL MARION

Nicknamed the Swamp Fox, Marion defended the South, and escaped all attempts at capture by the British.

The Traitor. Washington now vainly offered to exchange André for Arnold. But, although the British

could not give up the traitor, they hotly protested against André's hanging as a spy, forgetting how they had treated Hale! Arnold now fought with the British in the South, but was never fully trusted by them. He lived twenty years in England, shunned by all, and once sadly stated he had not a friend left in America! His last request was: "Let me die in my old American uniform, in which I fought my battles. God forgive me for ever having put on any other!" His children, ashamed of his treachery, changed their name when they grew up.

Our Debt. John Paul Jones won our first great naval victory. Morgan and Marion by feats of Southern daring, hindered the British troops.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 293-311, American Book Co.

1. Tell about the Bonhomme Richard.
2. Tell about Arnold and André.
3. What campaign now took place?

THE CONSTITUTION

CHAPTER LXXIV

THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT

End of the War. All patriots, like Washington, though saddened by Arnold's treachery, were cheered by a victory in the South. The British, under Cornwallis, however, marched on until they arrived in Virginia, where they expected the New York forces to join them. Feigning an attack upon New York to detain the British there, Washington sent Lafayette down to Virginia, and joined him, as soon as the French fleet appeared in Chesapeake Bay. Hemmed in between Washington's army and this fleet, Cornwallis had to surrender at Yorktown, October 19, 1781, and the Revolutionary War came to an end! But Washington had to keep a restless, discontented army on guard at Newburgh, to watch the British until the Treaty of Paris was signed, our Independence recognized, and New York evacuated (emptied of the enemy) in 1783.

Washington Resigns his Commission. As the last boatload of British soldiers left, Washington, who disbanded his army at Newburgh as soon as peace was signed, rode into New York, and took leave of his officers at Fraunces' Tavern. Then, going straight to Congress (sitting at Annapolis), he there resigned his commission. For more than eight years Washington

had devoted — without pay — his talents, time, and strength to his country, besides advancing more than \$63,000 of his own money to keep things going. He and the other American patriots immediately went “back to the plough,” calling the patriotic society they formed “Sons of Cincinnatus,” in memory of the old Roman dictator (page 115). Washington was its first president, and many of its members, instead of back pay, accepted from Congress grants of farms in the Northwest, where new towns, such as Marietta and Cincinnati, soon arose.



FRANKLIN AT THE COURT OF FRANCE

Franklin's Return. Franklin's duties abroad also ended with the signing of the treaty. During his eight year sojourn in France, he had met many scientific men, amongst others, Vól'tä and Ampère (än-pâr'), whose names are used in measuring electric currents. He also saw the first balloon ascend from the park of

Versailles in the presence of Louis XVI and Marie Antoinette. Although the war was over and our army consisted of only eighty men, much remained to be done, since the debt that the Colonies had piled up in winning their independence still had to be paid. This Congress did partly by selling land in the northwest territory.

Tories. Nearly a hundred thousand Tories (tō'riz), friends of the British king, left this country to settle in Canada, Florida, and Bermuda, which were still under King George's rule. As usual, after a war, it took some time to restore order and get things running smoothly. Then the people discovered that the "Articles of Confederation," which had bound the Thirteen Colonies together since 1777, were not sufficient, and decided to make a Constitution for the United States.

The Constitution. So, in 1787, the Constitutional Convention met at Philadelphia with Washington as its President. Here, for four months, its members disputed, before they framed our Constitution. This provides that laws shall be made by Congress, composed of two Houses, the Senate, and the House of Representatives. Each State, large or small, elects two Senators, and a given number of voters elect a Representative. To satisfy the Southerners, it was decided that five slaves should count as three white men in apportioning representatives, and that Congress should allow the importation of slaves until 1808.

The President. To see that laws made by Congress are carried out, a President and Vice President are elected every four years. To settle any dispute between States — each of which governs itself — there is

a Supreme Court with nine judges. Thus the new Constitution provides a Congress to make laws, a President to enforce them, and the Supreme Court to insure justice to all. Local matters are settled by separate States, but treaties with other countries, matters of trade, war, coining, post-office, and customs, are the business of the United States Government. James Madison was chief framer of this Constitution, which it was agreed should go in force as soon as nine or more States were willing to adopt it. All but two had accepted it by August, 1788, but those two (Rhode Island, and North Carolina) soon decided to do so.

Our First President. The first Presidential election resulted in naming Washington President and John Adams Vice President of the United States. Notified of his election, Washington left Mt. Vernon, to serve his country again. On his way to New York, he was loudly cheered by all. At New York, on the spot where his statue now stands, he took the Presidential oath and promised to obey the Constitution. Besides the white people, whose freedom had been proclaimed in 1776, the first American census (1790) showed there were some 737,000 negro slaves in the United States!

The Cabinet. Washington had a hard task before him, because everything was new, nobody knew what he was expected to do, and many important matters had to be settled. Among others were, questions of money, weights, measures, etc. Instead of the English pounds, shillings, and pence, the decimal system with its dollars, dimes, and cents was introduced. But, unfortunately, the English measures were retained. So, instead of using the metric system, as France and

thirty-three other nations do, our school children still have to learn complicated "tables." Washington picked out four able men to advise him and form a Cabinet, which every new President arranges to suit



HAMILTON ADDRESSING THE CABINET

The first Cabinet, chosen by Washington, was less numerous than the present ones. Hamilton was Secretary of the Treasury.

himself. To teach people to respect our Government, Washington insisted upon a certain amount of ceremony, went about in a fine coach drawn by four horses,

attended Church in state, and gave formal balls, where he sometimes danced the minuet!

Indian Troubles. Because the Indians had sworn white men should never plant corn on the Ohio, pioneers in that section were exposed to constant attacks. So Washington, unable to leave Government affairs, waged war against the Red Men through General Wayne.

Our Debt. The Revolutionary War ended, leaving us free from England. The Constitution of the United States was made and our Government organized. Washington was our first President.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn

GUERBER, *Story of the Thirteen Colonies*, pp. 315-326, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 13-40, American Book Co.

1. How did the Revolutionary War end, what peace concluded it, and where did Washington resign his commission?
2. When and where was the Constitution made and adopted?
3. What were the duties of Congress, of the President, and of the Supreme Court?

CHAPTER LXXV

THE FRENCH REVOLUTION AND WASHINGTON'S PRESIDENCY

The French Revolution. The very year government under our Constitution began (1789), a Revolution broke out in France. Badly governed for many years, and stimulated by the example given by the Thirteen Colonies, the French felt the time had come to make reforms. So Louis XVI called together the States-

General, composed of the nobility, the clergy, and the third estate.

The Privileges Relinquished. The nobles and clergy wanted few changes, but the Third Estate was determined to frame a just Constitution for France like that of the United States. Such was the excitement



THE BASTILLE

The Bastille, a fortification in Paris which for 420 years had harbored prisoners. The mob tears it down in 1790.

in Paris at this news, that street fights occurred. Then the mob seized and tore down La Bastille, long used as a prison for political offenders. To pacify the people, the nobles and clergy, who until then had en-

joyed their feudal "class" privileges and paid no taxes, voluntarily gave up their rights. Thus feudalism came to an end in France, and many other changes took place there. Unfortunately, some of these re-



MARIE ANTOINETTE

The wife of Louis XVI, Queen Marie Antoinette, was taken to the guillotine in a cart, a priest of the country sitting beside her.

forms were too sudden, and the uneducated mob exercised its new rights in a violent way. Many nobles therefore emigrated to foreign countries, to await better times.

The French Republic. After two years of great confusion, a French Republic was proclaimed, and the weak King and his family thrust into prison. The nobles who had fled, the Queen's brother, Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire, and many other rulers of European countries, who were afraid their subjects might want to depose them and set up republics, too, now declared war against France.

The Reign of Terror. Immediately, the French patriots volunteered in a body to fight this co-al-i-tion (alliance of many powers against one), singing the Marseillaise (mär-sě-lāz'), which a young officer composed for them. Because the royal family and the nobles still left in France hoped the coalition would succeed, the French Republicans arrested and guillotined all the aristocrats they could seize, including the King and Queen! This was the "Reign of Terror," which so horrified the rest of the world that France found no friends to support her. At the beginning of this upheaval, the French expected the United States' aid, in return for that which France had given us. But Washington, disapproving of the violent way in which the French Revolutionists were trying to secure their freedom, and feeling that the United States had more than enough to do to attend to its own affairs, declared we would remain neutral.

Second Term. Sorely against his will, Washington had to serve as President a second term, during which interesting things happened. From his home in Philadelphia, whence the Government had removed from New York, — Washington journeyed to the neighborhood of his beloved Mt. Vernon. There he laid the

corner-stone of the Capitol, in the city which, in his honor, was named Washington.

The Cotton Gin. Meantime Eli Whitney, a young New Englander, on his way south to act as tutor in a planter's family, had met Mrs. Nathaniel Greene, wife of the Revolutionary General. While visiting her, he



THE COTTON GIN

Eli Whitney giving the last touch to the cotton gin he invented, and which greatly lessened the slave labor.

devised, at her suggestion, a machine to free cotton from its seeds. By means of this cotton-gin one slave could do three hundred times as much work in an hour! This wonderful labor-saving invention was stolen from its inventor, who never made a penny by it, although it made the fortune of many others. With

more cotton to spin and weave, other machines became necessary, and the price of cotton goods became so moderate, that plenty of clean clothes could be obtained.

Slaves. In fact, cotton-growing became so profitable, that planters imported hosts of slaves from Africa. The descendants of these slaves now number about thirteen millions! Coming directly from tropical jungles, many of these negroes were about as civilized as men of the Stone Age. Captured by slave-hunters, hurried on board waiting ships, chained fast, and allowed poor food and little space, air, or exercise, many died while crossing the ocean. On landing, these bewildered savages were bought in gangs by planters, whose overseers compelled them, under the lash, to work in the cotton fields. Besides such rough field hands, who still worshiped their primitive gods, there were also the descendants of earlier slaves, who, trained in Christian households from early childhood, served as house servants, and showed wonderful devotion to kind masters.

Johnny Appleseed. Washington's successor, Adams, first occupied the White House. In those days, lights were out by ten o'clock, and life was far simpler than it is now. Washington was a "city of magnificent distances," and the Capitol seemed far from the White House, when you had to plod over muddy roads! During Adams' presidency, a quaint pioneer, known as Johnny Appleseed, tramped through the Northwest, planting seeds he collected at cider mills. He instructed the women and children in neighboring log-huts to keep these places clear of weeds, and to prevent cattle from trampling the young shoots. From time to

time he visited his nurseries, to transplant or graft these young trees. Thanks to his kindly industry, good apple-trees were soon growing all over the Northwest, and in many places, wild apple-trees, the result of his planting, are still blooming and bearing small sour apples which birds and squirrels love.

Death of Washington. During our second President's administration, a national sorrow befell the country, for Washington died at Mt. Vernon after a few days' illness! He had so endeared himself to every American by his whole-hearted, unselfish devotion to the country he served so many years as General and President that all felt he well deserved to be called "Father of his Country!" It was rightly said of him, also, that he was "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." His tomb, in the garden at Mt. Vernon, is still visited by high and low, and all colored people gratefully remember that Washington set free many of his slaves in his will, providing that all the rest, who were attached to Mrs. Washington, should be free at her death.

Our Debt. We owe much to Washington for his wise measures during his two terms as President, as well as for his generalship during the Revolution. The invention of the cotton gin and other machinery has been of great influence.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 40-55, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Modern France*, pp. 61-117, American Book Co.

ATKINSON, *Johnny Appleseed*.

1. Tell about the French Revolution and state why we did not help.

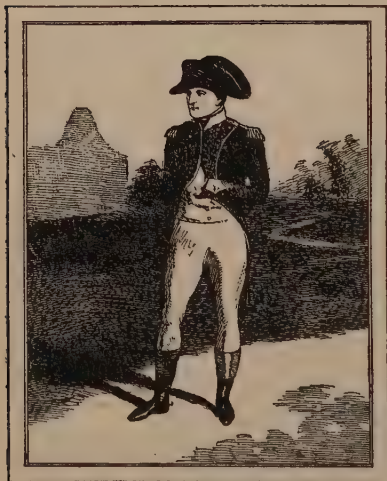
2. Tell about Washington's second term, and death.

3. Who was Johnny Appleseed?

CHAPTER LXXVI

LOUISIANA PURCHASE

Napoleon Bonaparte. The French Republic, having to resist the efforts of the surrounding countries to force it to become a monarchy once more, appointed Napoleon Bonaparte general of one of its armies. He led his troops into North Italy, which was then under



NAPOLEON AS FIRST CONSUL

the rule of Marie Antoinette's brother, the Emperor of Austria, and by a series of brilliant victories, wrested it from him. Hating the English most of all France's foes, Bonaparte next planned to take India from them. On the way thither, he seized Malta and Egypt, but his plans came to naught when Admiral Nelson destroyed his fleet in the battle of the

Nile. It was then that Ca-sa-bi-an-ca's son "stood on the burning deck," and perished rather than disobey his father's last command. The English knew India was safe, and thought Bonaparte held fast in Egypt! But he slipped through their lines, and returned to France. There, finding things going badly, he changed the Directorate government to a Consulate. Bearing the title of First Consul himself, and using the two

other consuls as ministers, Bonaparte conquered North Italy a second time. This new triumph, and the fact that Bonaparte governed France very ably, made him more popular than ever. So he now determined to invade and conquer England, a plan requiring so much money, that he sold Louisiana to the United States for \$15,000,000.

The Louisiana Purchase. The land Jefferson, our third President, bought from Consul Bonaparte for the United States extended from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains. By this purchase, the United States became twice as large as before! Wishing to know what the country was, for which we were paying \$15,000,000, Jefferson sent Lewis and Clarke to explore it, and if possible reach the Pacific. Starting from St. Louis, founded by the French as a fur-trading post in 1764, these men rowed up the Missouri, passed through the Gate of the Rocky Mountains, and guided by a squaw, reached a place where streams flowed down either side of a mountain, to empty into the Gulf of Mexico and into the Pacific!

Lewis and Clarke Expedition. These brave explorers suffered greatly from cold, hunger, and fatigue, and their horses were stolen by the Indians. Still, they finally sailed down the Columbia River to the Pacific Ocean. The mouth of the Columbia had already been visited by an American ship (1792) in quest of a cargo of furs to exchange in China for tea. The fact that Americans first visited the Columbia Valley, gave the United States, later on, a claim to that land.

Canning Food. Lewis and Clarke kept a journal of all they saw and heard, and described how the Indians

speared, smoked, and dried salmon on the Columbia River. Until Napoleon's time, people had pickled, salted, dried, or smoked meat, fish, and vegetables. But Napoleon encouraged a clever French chemist to experiment until he discovered the present food-canning process. Thanks to Appert's (ä-pär') invention, since greatly improved, we enjoy food from any part of the globe at any season. Columbia salmon, for instance, is now caught in huge nets, sealed in tins, and sent everywhere. In spite of a hard homeward trip, Lewis and Clarke returned safely, and eloquently described to President Jefferson the wonders of the land they had explored to help complete our map.

Pike's Peak. Another explorer, General Pike, seeking the source of the Mississippi, discovered Pike's Peak in Colorado, near the wonderful Garden of the Gods. Accounts of the quantity of game seen by all these explorers, determined Astor to send a party of trappers across the continent. They built a fur-trading station (Astoria) at the mouth of the Columbia River, where the Indians brought the furs they secured, and exchanged them for trinkets, clothing, fire-arms, powder, bullets, and rum.

Our Debt. To Napoleon's hatred for England we owe the Louisiana Purchase. To the Frenchman, Appert, we owe the canning process. We are indebted to Lewis and Clarke, and to General Pike, for the exploration of the West, and to Astor for our first colony on the Pacific Coast.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

EGGLESTON, *Stories of American Life and Adventure*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Modern France*, pp. 120-156, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 55-60, American Book Co.

1. What did Napoleon do on returning from Egypt?
2. Tell about the Louisiana Purchase.
3. Who discovered Pike's Peak and where is it?

CHAPTER LXXVII

WINNING OUR PLACE IN THE WORLD

Napoleon's Triumphs. Bonaparte was impatiently waiting for favorable winds to waft his many boats, rafts, war engines, and troops to England. But, clever as he was, he did not perceive the use he could have made of the steamboat, just invented by the American Fulton, who exhibited a small model on the Seine, and offered to sell him his idea. It was while Bonaparte was waiting thus to attack England, that the French Senate bestowed upon him the title of Emperor of France, so in 1804 he became Napoleon I. To punish the upstart who dared assume a crown, the kings and emperors of Europe formed a new coalition against France. Napoleon, hearing huge Austrian, German, and Russian armies were threatening to enter Northeastern France, promptly transferred his army from the West to the East, and beat his enemies one after another, entering Vienna and Berlin in triumph. For some time after that, the Germans, Austrians, and Russians were his allies or subjects, and between 1807 and 1810 Napoleon was "master of Europe!" French culture became known wherever his armies went, and the whole European continent underwent a change.

Napoleon's Downfall. Thus Napoleon triumphed over everybody, except the English, who fought against him in Spain and Portugal, and encouraged others, especially Russia, to oppose him. In 1813, Napoleon undertook a campaign in Russia, which proved disastrous, and wherein thousands of brave men died of cold and wounds. This crushing defeat, wherein the climate fought for Russia, caused many of Napoleon's allies to join his foes, and after the "Battle of Nations" at Leipzig, they wrested from him, one by one, all his conquests. Although fighting like a lion at bay, Napoleon was forced to ab-di-cate (lay down his crown) at Fontainebleau (fôn-tĕn-blō'), in 1814, and to retire to the Island of Elba. After eight months there, he suddenly returned to France, where he again ruled as Emperor one hundred days. Then, beaten by the English and Prussians at Waterloo, in Belgium (1815), Napoleon was sent to St. Helena, where he remained a prisoner, until his death from cancer, in 1821.

The Steam Engine. Meanwhile, although it was known as a toy by the Greeks, the steam-engine was re-discovered by a Frenchman, Papin (pa-pan'). His machine also was found only in laboratories and considered a mere curiosity. Watt, who as a boy had watched steam lift the lid of his mother's teakettle, was called to repair such a steam-engine for the University of Glasgow. In doing so, he suddenly perceived the use he could make of his boyish observations, and invented the piston-rod engine. Steam-engines now soon replaced horses in hoisting coal from mines. Because Watt was always asked "how many horses his engine could replace," he calculated its force as

“horse power,” a term still used. Steam-engines were immediately put to many uses, but Watt himself vainly tried to devise a “steam-carriage.” Two Americans, Fitch and Fulton, first used steam-engines to move paddle-wheel boats. But Fulton’s device proved the best; and after vainly offering to sell the idea to Napoleon, he returned to New York, where an American (1807) supplied funds to build the *Clermont*. It ran



THE CLERMONT

The first Hudson steamboat, built by Fulton in 1807.

from New York to Albany in thirty-two hours,—a rate of speed then considered dangerous! In fact, people were so afraid the *Clermont*’s boiler would burst, that it first had to tow a passenger barge. But people soon grew accustomed to new inventions. In 1811 a steamboat ran from Pittsburgh to New Orleans, and presently others began to ply to and fro on all the great lakes and rivers.

Aaron Burr. Meantime, our country had been greatly stirred, because Aaron Burr, a clever but unprincipled man, killed in a duel Alexander Hamilton, one of our greatest patriots. People then perceived that duelling, excusable perchance in the Middle Ages, was entirely out of date and wrong, and framed laws against it. Burr, shunned by many of his former friends, next planned to seize New Orleans and become King of Louisiana! Fortunately his plans were discovered before they could be carried out. But, although he was arrested and tried, the proofs of his guilt were so cleverly hidden or destroyed, that he left court a free man! Still, public opinion has ever since ranked him as a traitor, like Benedict Arnold.

Sea Fights. Our United States, a new nation, was of no great account in the world in the 18th century, or even during the very beginning of the 19th. It had to win the confidence and respect of longer established and more powerful nations. One move in doing this consisted in fighting the Moorish pirates in the Mediterranean, where our brave seamen did more to check piracy in two years than all the other European countries in three centuries!

The War of 1812. Under Madison, our fourth President, the United States had a second war with Great Britain, because the British in Canada excited the Indians in the Northwest to attack American pioneers, and because English warships took six thousand seamen from our vessels for their navy. Although these men had become American citizens, the British claimed "once an Englishman, always an Englishman." This second war was fought mainly on the water, although

the British once landed troops to burn down our Capitol and the White House! Our Patent Office was spared only because it contained records of inventions beneficial to the whole civilized world!

The Star-Spangled Banner. It was just after the burning of Washington, that the famous song, "The Star-Spangled Banner," was composed by Francis Scott Key. During the War of 1812, our country was personified by "Uncle Sam," instead of by "Uncle Jonathan," Washington's old adviser. The Treaty ending the war was signed in Ghent, just before the battle of New Orleans, which was won by our General Jackson. Since then, the two English-speaking nations have been at peace. As is always the case, this war cost many precious lives, and increased the United States' debt to \$127,000,000. When it ended, our country had 19,000,000 inhabitants, so if each citizen had then paid about \$7, our national debt could have been settled in full.

The Safety Lamp. Our war with England ended the year that Napoleon was beaten at Waterloo and sent to St. Helena. The brothers of beheaded Louis XVI now reigned in turn in France, and Europe rejoiced to have a breathing spell after twenty-two years of incessant fighting! Because coal grates and stoves, iron "puddling," and steam-engines all required much fuel, coal miners were becoming more and more numerous, and



THE DAVY LAMP

Davy's safety lamp reduced the danger of explosions in the mines. Exposed flames had frequently ignited the gases that gathered underground.

Davy's invention of the safety lamp proved a great boon.

Our Debt. Watt's steam-engine, Fulton's steam-boat, and the invention of the safety lamp for miners marked important steps of progress. The War of 1812 proved the new government's strength.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Modern France*, pp. 156-239, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 70-91, American Book Co.

1. Tell the story of Napoleon from 1804 to his death.
2. Tell the story of the first steam-boats.
3. Tell about the War of 1812.

CHAPTER LXXVIII

PROGRESS

Improvements. Under our fifth President, James Monroe, occurred the Era of Good Feeling. Washington was rebuilt; factories, started to supply our needs during the war were enlarged, and manufacturing became easier, thanks to the coal dug from our own mines. Besides, canals were dug to further trade; the Erie Canal, for instance, making it possible to transport freight for one tenth of the amount charged before. New roads such as the "National Pike," running from the Potomac to the Ohio, also furthered trade, travel, and emigration. Hosts of pioneers moved along them, on their way to purchase farms in

the Middle West, where the best land then sold for \$1.25 an acre!

The Missouri Compromise. In 1820 our Union comprised equal numbers of free and slave States. But settlers in Missouri had increased so rapidly, that they now asked to join the Union as a free State, which would disturb the balance. This proposal greatly excited the Southerners, and hot debates were held in Congress, where Webster, Clay, and Calhoun made famous speeches. The result was a Compromise, providing that Missouri should be admitted as a free State, but that slavery should be forever prohibited in other parts of the Louisiana Purchase north of the southern boundary of Missouri.

The Monroe Doctrine. Because South America (except Brazil), Central America, and Mexico, had all been colonized by Spaniards, Spain was long all powerful south of us. But, after the American Revolution, these States, one by one, shook off the Spanish yoke, until by 1822, Spain governed no land on the American continent. The principal European rulers, afraid the Republican spirit would spread in Europe, too, now formed the Holy Alliance, pledging themselves not only to help each other retain their crowns, but also to force the South American colonies once more to obey Spain. On hearing this, Monroe declared that while our Government would not interfere in European quarrels, Europeans would no longer be allowed to meddle in American affairs, or to plant further colonies on the Western Continent. Thus, the famous Monroe Doctrine (1823) means: "Hands off, Europe! America is for Americans only."

Lafayette's Visit. Lafayette re-visited the United States in 1824 and was amazed at all the changes he saw. He left in 1783 a struggling, indebted country of 3,000,000 inhabitants, and found a prosperous nation of nearly 20,000,000 due to the natural increase of population and to the arrival of 250,000 foreigners since the Declaration of Independence. Lafayette had left thirteen small Colonies, along a narrow strip of the Atlantic Coast, and found twenty-four flourishing States, with a territory reaching westward to the Rocky Mountains, and southward to the tip of Florida, which we bought from Spain (1819). Although there were now no slaves in the Northern States, they had greatly increased in number in the Southern States, where they formed the whole working population. In comparison with the European countries, suffering from the effect of many wars, bad government, and great poverty, our United States seemed a Paradise!

Our Debt. Roads and canals were built. The speeches of Webster, Clay, and Calhoun have come down to us as masterpieces. Florida was purchased from Spain in 1819. The Missouri Compromise and the Monroe Doctrine have had a large effect on our later history.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

BALDWIN, *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 91-101, American Book Co.

1. Which highway made westward emigration easier?
2. What were the Missouri Compromise and the Monroe Doctrine?
3. Relate Lafayette's visit in 1824.

CHAPTER LXXIX
USEFUL INVENTIONS

Different Views. Under President John Quincy Adams, and President Andrew Jackson, our country continued to increase in wealth and population, as well as in a spirit of democracy. The one great drawback was that North and South had different opinions, interests, and ways of living. In the North, people were on an equal footing. In the South, the great planters lived somewhat like lords in the Middle Ages, with hosts of slaves for vassals. These different opinions and interests caused hot debates in Congress, and bad feeling between the two sections of our country. This finally became so marked, that the Southerners threatened to leave the Union! Whereupon Webster made a famous speech, in which he said the memorable words: "Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable."

Railways. The Erie and many other canals were a great improvement, but there were many places where they could not be built. In

1807 a horse-drawn car on a track served to convey blocks of granite to Boston. This hint was all that was necessary. In 1830, a small locomotive took passengers a short distance along the Baltimore and Ohio railroad. The initial suc-



AN EARLY LOCOMOTIVE

cess of this undertaking has resulted in the construction in less than one hundred years, of the most

wonderful locomotives, hauling huge trains all over our country.

Inventions. Steamboats now began to cross the Atlantic in twenty days, and express companies tagged and shipped goods as the Mesopotamians had done thousands of years before. The greatest invention of the time, however, was the McCormick Reaper which revolutionized farming, by enabling one man to do the work of many, and thus grow huge fields of grain. Spinning, weaving, and even knitting, instead of being done at home, were now done faster, better, and cheaper by machines which were constantly improved. The invention of friction matches in 1837 made it also easier to light fires, candles, and whale-oil lamps, and the use of coal-fires for cooking and heating increased household comfort. Besides, streets began to be lighted by gas in some cities!

Panics and Riots. Although Jackson declared, "I leave this great people prosperous and happy," Van Buren, our next President, saw our twenty-six States in sore straits, owing to a great fire in New York and a panic in the money market. Less money meant less work, and as less work meant less food, hungry people made "bread riots." Imagining the President somewhat to blame for these troubles, our voters next elected Harrison, who died after a month at the White House, and was replaced by Vice President Tyler.

An Oregon Mission. Under Jackson, some Oregon Indians had come to St. Louis asking for the "White Man's Bible," and teachers to read and explain it to them. This request touched the hearts of people in the East, who sent them missionaries. One of these,

Marcus Whitman, proved not only a good Christian, but a dauntless pioneer, and a patriotic citizen. He was the first to take white women, one his bride, in wagons, over the Rocky Mountains, a feat which required patience, ingenuity, and courage. When he arrived in Oregon, both British and Americans were trying to secure that section for their governments. The Americans claimed it belonged to them, because Gray, and Lewis and Clarke first visited it, and because Astoria was an American settlement. The British insisted it was still open country, and should belong to the nation which sent most settlers. When Whitman heard that Americans in the East deemed it impossible to cross the Rockies in wagons, and that there was some talk of giving up his mission, he undertook a terrible five months' ride, to inform easterners of what *he* had done, and of what should still be done, to secure Oregon for the United States. On his return, Whitman guided a party of emigrants, whom he encouraged to accompany him. Crossing the plains in their "prairie schooners," these pioneers were amazed to behold huge herds of buffaloes. Then after a journey which seemed almost endless, they were delighted to reach the beautiful forests and rich valleys of Oregon. Because over twelve hundred Americans entered this section in three years, Oregon now forms part of our United States. Our northern boundary, which had been fixed from the Atlantic to the Rockies in 1842, was continued four years later to the Pacific, and has never been changed. Meanwhile, changes had been taking place in Europe, where, for instance, Queen Victoria began in England a reign which was to last sixty-five years.

Our Debt. We owe to these years Atlantic steamboats, the beginning of the express business, McCormick's reaper, improvements in manufacturing, friction matches, and gas lighting.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 106-117, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 320-323, American Book Co.

1. What views were held in the North and in the South concerning slavery?
2. Tell the story of Marcus Whitman.
3. Name the sovereign of England at that time.

CHAPTER LXXX

THE TIME OF GREAT CHANGES

The Mormons. People in the United States are allowed to practice any religion they please, as long as it does not teach anything contrary to our laws. In 1827, Joseph Smith claimed to have found, buried in a hillside, the "Book of Mormon" (môr'mŭn), or account of a people chosen by God to people America hundreds of years before. He declared he was the prophet of Mormonism, and made converts, who followed him to Ohio, Missouri, and Illinois. The Mormons changed their abode so often, because they believed men should have several wives at once. Other people felt differently, and reminded them that our laws do not permit polygamy (pō-līg'ā-mĭ) (plural marriages). This resulted in fights, in one of which

Smith was killed, so Brigham Young, the new prophet, persuaded the Mormons to emigrate to Utah, then under Mexican rule.

Charities. During the Colonial Period, America had no real hospitals, or asylums for orphans, deaf-mutes, blind, idiots, and insane. Little by little, such charitable institutions, which had long existed in Europe, were started here, too. Thus all the unfortunates were provided for, except the Indians and Negroes! They still did not have the right to "life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness," which in our midst all are supposed to enjoy. The people in the North, who had voluntarily given freedom to their slaves, and had made laws to prevent further slavery, now formed "Abolition Societies." These published papers and books. Their views were shared by our best writers, who, during "The Golden Age of American Literature," boldly expressed their opinions. These writers had a large circle of readers, because after Webster's Dictionary came into use, and everyone spelled in the same way, American books became very popular.

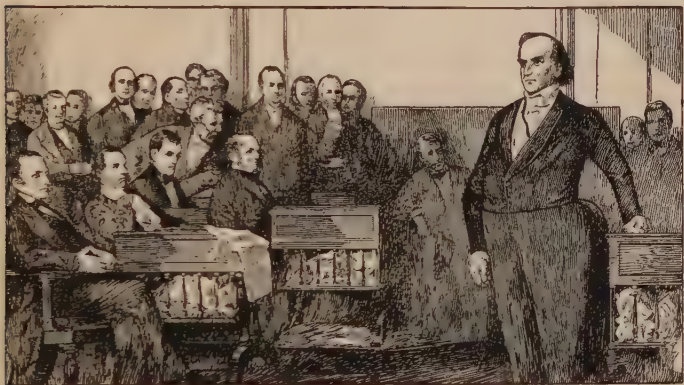
Inventions. The improvements made in every kind of tool and machinery, from ploughs to printing presses, were constant. The invention of photography on glass (Daguerreotype) (dă-gěr'o-tīp) enabled people to secure better portraits than some of the hideous oil paintings and black paper silhouettes (sīl-ōō-ětz') (outlines) then so frequently seen. The sick were infinitely benefited by the discovery of anaesthetics (ăn-ěs-thět'ic) (pain-killers), such as laughing gas, ether, and chloroform (klō'ro-fôrm), which have made operations so much safer and less painful. The

greatest invention, however, was Samuel Morse's electric telegraph, the first line being laid between Washington and Baltimore in 1840. Since then, telegraph lines have been run in every direction, and messages travel thousands of miles in a few minutes. Thanks to telegraphy and steamboats, any new discovery, invention, or event is soon known throughout the civilized world. Goodyear's discovery for vul'can-iz-ing (hardening) rubber resulted not only in supplying us with waterproof coats, shoes, and boots, but in coating cables or pipes, through which the telegraph wires are strung, which now carry messages under water and even across oceans! Any number of other uses have since been found for rubber, which comes mainly from South America. The invention which most interested the women, however, was Howe's sewing machine, thanks to which garments are made much more easily, quickly, and perfectly than before.

Texas. All this time our population was increasing rapidly, so pioneers were starting new homes in every direction. Some Americans, such as Austin and Houston, went down into Texas, although it then belonged to Mexico. In time, so many other Americans joined them, that they rebelled against Mexican rule, and after two battles, compelled their former masters to recognize the independence of "The Lone Star Republic." But soon the Americans in Texas concluded it would be wiser to join the Union, and Texas was finally admitted as a State (1848).

The Mexican War. An unsettled boundary between Texas and Mexico, resulted in disputes which brought about the Mexican War. In its course our armies

seized New Mexico and California, and marched in triumph into Mexico City. By treaty our southern boundary was finally fixed, we buying from Mexico for \$20,000,000 all the land Spain owned north of the Rio Grande and the new frontier. This purchase started new problems, for it gave us the Mormons, who had prospered so greatly in Utah, that they were now very numerous. Besides the Northern tax-payers insisted



DANIEL WEBSTER

Hayne's speech in the Senate was answered immediately by Daniel Webster, ending: "Liberty and union, now and forever."

that *all* this land should be free soil, while the Southerners wanted some of it, at least, to be slave soil. This question caused further eloquent debates in Congress, where the greatest speakers on both sides were Webster and Hayne. It was finally settled by the Compromise of 1850, which did not satisfy either party.

Our Debt. This was the Golden Age of American Literature. To this time, too, we owe the invention

of photography, anaesthetics, electric telegraphy, the sewing machine, and the vulcanizing of rubber.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Conquest of the Old Northwest*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 117-130, American Book Co.

1. Who were the Mormons and where did they settle?
2. Tell about the Texas Rebellion, and the War with Mexico.
3. Who were Webster and Hayne, and why did they dispute?

GOLD AND SLAVERY

CHAPTER LXXXI

CALIFORNIA

The Land of Gold. The land bought from Mexico included California, named and explored by Spaniards, and visited by Drake on his voyage around the world.



A SPANISH MISSION

Missions were established by the Spanish priests in the "garden spots" of California and the Indians converted.

Spanish priests between 1776 and 1820 had established there, in "garden spots," a chain of Mission stations,

extending as far north as San Francisco. Each Mission was not only a christianizing and civilizing center, but an agriculture station, where the Indians were taught all they were able to learn. Aside from the Spaniards in these Missions, there were only a few white trappers, traders, and ranchers, in the whole section. Still, many rumors reached the East of California's wonderful climate and soil.

Sutter's Mill. To reach California, one had to cross endless plains, ă'l'kă-lī deserts, and the awful Rockies! This was almost impossible until our government sent Frémont (frē-mōnt') to find and blaze trails across



SUTTER'S MILL

them. He was helped by Bridges and Carson, famous trapper-guides, whose names now figure on our maps. Among other places Frémont's party visited the California ranch of a Swiss settler, Sutter. There, in a mill race in the Sacramento Valley, were found some shiny lumps which proved to be gold! Although Sutter tried to keep this discovery secret, it soon leaked out, and immediately began a rush to the place to find gold!

The Gold Fever. As soon as the news that gold had been found in California got across the Rocky Mountains, it was flashed by telegraph to all parts of the continent, and was soon known all over the world. The result was a mad rush to California in 1849. The "Forty-Niners," as the gold-seekers were called, arrived by various routes. Some sailed "around the Horn," others came via the Isthmus of Panama, others through Mexico, and hosts plodded afoot across "The Great American Desert" (as Arizona and Nevada were then called), leaving a trail of dead horses and oxen along their way. Among these gold-seekers were lawless men of various nations, but fortunately there were enough staunch Americans to insist that our Constitution be obeyed. They formed Vigilance (vĭj'ĩ-lǎns) Committees, and until proper courts were established, kept order, pistol in hand, and in extreme cases resorted to lynch (lĭntsh)-law. Still, it took so short a time to people California, and organize its government, that it was admitted as a State in 1850, the very year the first submarine began to run under water.

Shifting Population. The year 1848, marked for us by the Mexican War, was a year of great political changes in Europe. France, which since the Revolution had changed government many times, now became a Republic again. Everywhere people insisted upon more freedom, wanted more political rights, and were restless and dissatisfied. After the discovery of gold in California, America seemed the Land of Opportunity to all these people. Many foreigners therefore came pouring into our country. The English, however, preferred to emigrate to Canada, South Africa, or Aus-

tralia (where gold was discovered in 1852), because they wanted to remain English men and women. Still, the English had already contributed to our country their language, and the sum of civilization they had inherited through Greek, Latin, Celtic, and Anglo-Saxon channels, a mixture which resulted in keen intellectual power and strength of character. We owe mainly to the English our "decision, energy, independence of thought and action, our love of plain-dealing and fair play, our reluctance to run away from danger, our tendency to oppose force by force, and our determination to die game."

Irish Emigrants. Owing to the potato-famine in Ireland, and to the Irish distaste for English rule, hosts of these people emigrated to America. We are told some 5,000,000 Irish thus became American citizens. They are noted for their good-nature, quick wit, imagination, generosity, ready sympathy, and joviality. As they are not afraid of a fight, many have become policemen. Their less desirable national traits are that some of them are inclined to quarrel, fight, drink, and be shiftless. But the good they have contributed to our nation far outweighs the bad. The many Scotch-Irish colonists in the Carolinas and in Pennsylvania made splendid pioneers, because they belong to the race of darers and doers, and are known for their "stick-to-it-iveness."

Our Debt. The Spanish missions introduced civilization into California. The discovery of gold brought the "Forty-Niners" to California. Millions of Irish emigrants came to this country.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

EGGLESTON, *Stories of American Life and Adventure*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 139-147, American Book Co.

1. Give an account of the discovery of gold in California, and tell three ways of getting there in 1849.
2. What was the Vigilance Committee?
3. How soon did California become a state?

CHAPTER LXXXII

WHAT HAPPENED IN THE FIFTIES

Prospecting. Between 1850 and 1855 California's population increased fourfold, and the men prospecting for gold discovered other great sources of wealth, such as borax, asphalt, and wonderful farm land. California is now covered with great orchards, where grow the grapes, peaches, pears, plums, apricots, almonds, figs, oranges, grapefruit, etc., which are daily served on our tables, fresh or canned. Prospectors also discovered by accident our National Park in the Yosemite Valley, and the famous grove of Big Trees.

The Spread of Trade. As our people were already planning a railway to the Pacific coast, our government sent a fleet to Japan, to arrange for some way to trade directly with that country. The Japanese were then very different from what they are now, because no foreigners were allowed to enter their country, and even ship-wrecked sailors were cruelly treated and often killed. Admiral Perry was sent to Japan with gifts — and guns. He obtained an interview with the

ruler of Japan, explained his purpose, and succeeded in making a trade-treaty with Japan, which has greatly benefited both countries. He also arranged that shipwrecked sailors should thenceforth be helped and sent home as soon as possible. This treaty made a wonderful difference to Japan; for since it was signed, that country has taken an important place among civilized nations. A similar treaty also enabled us to trade with China.

English Wars. Meantime the Russians, who had discovered and owned Alaska, were fighting the English, French, Turks, and Sardinian forces in the Crimean War, where wonderful feats of bravery were performed. The English soldiers were also fighting in India, where the East India Company was having trouble with some of the Indian Princes. This war not only ended in England's favor, but since then India has been under the British Empire.

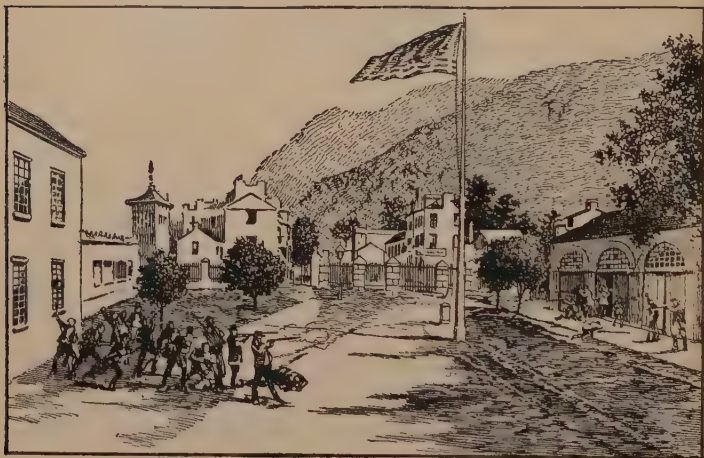
The Slavery Question. The Compromise of 1850 had satisfied no one, as we have seen. When slave-catchers came north to drag runaway slaves back to their masters, the northern abolitionists, unable to go openly against the law, organized the "underground railway," to help fugitive slaves to cross the border to Canada, where no one could seize them. More than ever the North longed to right the wrong begun here in 1619. Many Southerners, too, would gladly have set their slaves free, but knew they were like children, accustomed to be fed, clothed, trained for work, and doctored. Because they did not know how to take care of themselves, they would, if free, starve or be a menace to others. "Uncle Tom's Cabin," a novel written by

Harriet Beecher Stowe, showing some of the dark sides of slavery, and idealizing others, made people laugh, cry, and *think*. Thus it helped to bring about the Civil War, which ended slavery forever in our country, as it had already ended among the other most civilized nations.

Kansas. It had been decided in Congress that Kansas should settle by popular vote whether it should enter the Union as a free or slave State. So the North helped people who were against slavery to settle there, while the South helped settlers in favor of keeping slaves. As both sides were often unwise, there were many fights in "bleeding Kansas," before it entered the Union as a free State. While the quarrel between North and South was daily growing worse, New York, following London's example, held a World's Fair, or exhibition. There, people saw for themselves many of the wonderful things lately invented, such as the latest McCormick reaper, which proved that its inventor "had done more for the cause of agriculture than any man living."

John Brown. Meantime, almost crazed by the fighting in Kansas, John Brown, a New Englander by birth, imagined God had sent him to end slavery in America. In 1859 he went to Virginia with a small party of friends, seized the United States Arsenal there, arrested a few slave-holders, and told the slaves they were free! In doing this, Brown was going against the laws of both country and state. So he was arrested, tried, and hanged! His crazy attempt caused such excitement North and South, that, as the time for the Presidential election drew near, many public political debates were

held. Douglas, the Southern candidate, argued each state in a *free country* should decide by vote, for or against slavery. Lincoln, the Northern candidate, stated slavery was morally wrong, and therefore should not spread any farther than our Constitution allowed.



From an old print
THE FIGHTING AT THE ENGINE HOUSE, HARPER'S FERRY

He added, that out of the 31,000,000 white men then in our country, only about one-third wanted slaves! This was made quite clear by Lincoln's election by a large majority as sixteenth President of the United States.

Petroleum. The year Lincoln was elected (1860) the first petroleum wells were sunk in Titusville, Pennsylvania, and began to supply us with oil. Used at first only as a remedy for rheumatism, this oil is now one of our most valuable commercial products. It supplies us

with light, heat, gasoline, coal-tar products, medicines for many ills, etc.

Our Debt. The Indian Rebellion placed India under British rule. "Uncle Tom's Cabin" was written. Our first World's Fair was held in New York. Petroleum was discovered.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

EGGLESTON, *Stories of American Life and Adventure*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 149-150, 156-159, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Modern France*, pp. 281-284, American Book Co.

1. How was a trade treaty made between the United States and Japan?
2. What was meant by Bleeding Kansas?
3. Tell of John Brown's life and raid.
4. When and where was petroleum discovered?

CHAPTER LXXXIII

LINCOLN'S EARLY CAREER

Lincoln's Boyhood. You all know something about Lincoln's boyhood, and are aware that he said he owed a great debt to his mother, who died when he was only nine. His step-mother, also, encouraged him to learn all he could. As pioneers, the Lincolns had a hard life and few opportunities for education. But Abraham conscientiously did his best to educate himself, working sums by fire-light after a hard day's work at clearing the forest and splitting rails. At seventeen he made his first of two trips to New Orleans, on a flat-boat laden

with produce. Seeing a slave auction there, he vowed: "If I can ever hit that thing (slavery), I'll hit it hard!" As a result of



ABRAHAM LINCOLN

this trip, Lincoln invented a machine to free flat-boats from snags, the model of which can be seen in our Patent Office. While acting as postmaster and clerk in a country store, Lincoln earned his nickname of "Honest Abe." Then, having finished his law studies under great difficulties, he settled at Springfield, where he won several cases by his common sense, desire for jus-

tice, kind-hearted sympathy, quick insight into people's motives, and fine moral qualities.

Lincoln and Douglas Debates. In this famous series of political debates, Douglas had every advantage of appearance, breeding, education, and eloquence. But *he* cared only to be elected, while Lincoln, homely, awkward, and self-educated, was "doing his level best" for what he considered right. His argument was that all people have equal rights. Knowing continual differences of opinion on that subject were bad for the country, he declared: "A house divided against itself

cannot stand. I believe this government cannot endure permanently half-slave and half-free. I do not expect the house to fall, but I expect it will cease to be divided. It will become all one thing or all the other." This speech proved prophetic!

The South Secedes. When Lincoln was *elected*, everybody had wondered whether the Southern States would carry out their threat and leave the Union. This doubt was settled by South Carolina's senators and representatives leaving Congress for Charleston, S. C., and there deciding upon the long threatened break. South Carolina's example was promptly followed by six other Southern States. Those seven formed the Republic of the Confederate States of America, with slavery for its corner-stone, and adopted a flag composed of three red and white bars, and seven white stars in a blue field. Jefferson Davis, its President, had his seat first at Montgomery and then at Richmond. When the Southerners proposed to haul down the "stars and stripes" floating above the Custom House at New Orleans, to replace them with the "stars and bars," Secretary Dix telegraphed: "If any person attempts to haul down the American flag, shoot him on the spot!" You see, he, like the rest of the Northerners, believed "once a state, always a state," and deemed it impossible for those in the South to leave the Union.

Lincoln's Inauguration. Although it had been rumored that Lincoln would be murdered before he could become President, he took the oath March 4, 1861, and plainly stated in his inauguration speech that in his opinion no State could leave the Union.

He added that since the Constitution allowed slavery in certain States, he had no intention of meddling with it; but that he would keep his oath to guard the rights of the United States. Then he concluded: "In your hands, my dissatisfied countrymen, and not in mine, is the momentous issue of civil war. The government will not assail you. You can have no conflict without yourselves being the aggressors."

Our Debt. We owe to Lincoln the example of efforts to improve himself, to help everybody, and to be strictly honest.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 161-172, American Book Co.

1. Tell about Lincoln's youth.
2. What were the Douglas-Lincoln Debates?
3. Did the Southern States secede before Lincoln's Inauguration?

CHAPTER LXXXIV

THE CIVIL WAR BEGINS

Fort Sumter. A month after his inauguration, Lincoln sent a ship with food and supplies to Fort Sumter. The Confederates, warned that "firing upon that fort would inaugurate a civil war greater than any the world had yet seen," nevertheless fired the first shot, April 13, 1861. At the end of thirty hours, having neither food, powder, nor shelter left, Major Anderson hauled down our flag and surrendered, bargaining that the seventy men, who had so bravely resisted seven thousand, should bear away their arms and flag.

Volunteers. True to his promise not to begin nor provoke war, Lincoln had hitherto made no preparations. Now, he issued a call for three-month-volunteers to uphold the Union. Although everybody believed the war would soon be over, a great wave of sorrow swept over the land, because both North and South honestly believed themselves right. As for the President, having sworn to uphold the Constitution, he was obliged to do so, although heartbroken at the prospect of bloodshed.

General Lee. Nearly all the Southerners in the United States army chose to serve their States. One of these, General Robert E. Lee, educated at West Point, and one of the finest generals and men the world has ever seen, became head of the Confederate army. Like other Southerners, he then believed States could leave the Union, although no one believes that now. Look at our map, and you will see that between the Confederate and Northern States there were a few neutral States. Four of these joined the Confederacy, which was finally composed of eleven States, while the Union numbered twenty-three!

The War Begins. When you come to study United States history thoroughly, you will learn all about the many great battles, and the heroism displayed on both sides by our countrymen, all convinced they were doing right. The North suffered at first sundry defeats, but, as it had the most men, the most money, and the most factories, it became stronger and stronger, while the South became weaker and weaker. General Lee was far abler than any Northern general until the fourth year of the war. Then Ulysses Grant took command of

the Northern armies. During the war many inventions were made, the chief ones being iron-clad vessels, Ericsson's Monitor (which played the part of a Union David against the Confederate Goliath), and the screw-propeller.

Emancipation. Throughout the war Lincoln's tender heart ached for the suffering both sides were enduring, and he mourned like a father over the bright lives suddenly quenched, or changed to life-long martyrdom. As time went on, he realized "the war to uphold the Union" was really a war to right a wrong which had lasted almost two centuries and a half! He sadly declared we were paying with our tears and our blood for the tears and blood Americans had drawn from hosts of slaves! So he vowed that as soon as our troops won a battle, he would issue an Emancipation (ě-măn-sĩ-pā'shŭn) Proclamation, setting all slaves free. This vow was kept, after the Battle of Antietam (ăn-tě'tăm), in January, 1863. Two years later, when the Civil War ended, Congress added a Thirteenth Amendment to our Constitution, forbidding slavery, forever, in our United States.

National Cemetery. Because many Americans lost their lives and were buried on the Gettysburg (gět'iz-bûrg) battlefield, our Government set it aside for a National Cemetery. It was dedicated by Lincoln in a beautiful, simple speech, ending with the statement that it is the duty of all Americans to see "that these dead shall not have died in vain; that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom; and that government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth!" It was to deck the graves of these soldiers, and those of all we love, that

Memorial Day was appointed as a National holiday, like Thanksgiving and the Fourth of July.

The Red Cross. All through the Civil War, kind-hearted women, North and South, heroically nursed the sick and wounded, for in those days trained nurses were few. One of these women, Clara Barton, entered a military hospital at the beginning of the war, and proved so able, that four years later she was placed in charge of all hospitals at the front. After the war, Clara Barton went on helping wherever she could, and



CLARA BARTON

during the Franco-Prussian War (1870-71), worked nobly in France. In 1881 was founded the Red Cross Society, about whose good work everybody knows.

Our Debt. We are indebted to the Civil War period for the invention of iron ships, the Emancipation Proclamation, the Thirteenth Amendment, Memorial Day, and the Red Cross Society.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *The Perfect Tribute*, Charles Scribner's Sons, N. Y.
GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 172-215, American Book Co.

1. Tell about Fort Sumter.
2. What was the Emancipation Proclamation, when was it published?
3. Who dedicated Gettysburg? What is the Red Cross Society and when was it founded?

CHAPTER LXXXV

END OF THE CIVIL WAR

The March to the Sea. The war had to be fought to a finish because, although North and South wished it were over, both sides were still as far from agreeing as ever. By "Marching through Georgia," destroying everything in a sixty-mile-wide strip, from Atlanta inland to Savannah on the sea, Sherman hastened the end of the Civil War agony. Then he joined Grant, who soon after compelled Lee to abandon Richmond, the Confederate Capital. Lincoln was with the Union troops when they entered that city. The colored people, who had not dared claim their freedom while the city was in Southern hands, now crowded around the President, exclaiming: "May de good Lord bless you, President Linkun!" and were surprised to see him raise his hat as politely to them as to the white people!

The Surrender. On April 9, 1865, at Appomattox (ăp-ô-măt'ŭks) Court House, General Lee surrendered to General Grant. The Civil War was over, and "Johnnies" and "Yankees" ceased to be foes, shook hands as Grant and Lee had done, and shared their food and tobacco like brothers. Nearly a million lives had been lost, and many million dollars' worth of property ruined. But the war definitely settled two long-disputed questions, first that no State can leave the Union, second, that all men *are* free and equal. Of course the North rejoiced. Now, the Southern States are as proud as the Northern to form part of our Union.

Lincoln Assassinated. On the fourth anniversary of the hauling down of the United States flag at Fort Sumter, Anderson hoisted it up again, and on the evening of that day, Lincoln, to please some friends, went to the theater. He was sitting quietly in his box, when a man stole up behind him, and shot him through the head! Then the assassin jumped down on the



THE SURRENDER

General Grant and General Lee discussing the terms of surrender.

stage, brandished his pistol, crying in Latin: "So be it ever with tyrants," and dashed out of the stage door! There he mounted a waiting horse and galloped off, before people could realize what had happened or stop him! Carried into a neighboring house, Lincoln died a few hours later, sincerely mourned by North and South, who realized he had been as wise, merciful, kind, and just, as a man can be. The whole country went into mourning, and few dry eyes were seen when his

body was carried to Springfield, his home town, to be buried. The President's murderer was pursued and shot, and others, who had planned to murder the Vice President, members of the Cabinet, and General Grant, were tried and punished.

The End of the War. Obligated to replace Lincoln, who had just begun a second term, Andrew Johnson did his best. But many mistakes were made, and the South suffered much more than was necessary or right. Because the keepers of Libby and Andersonville war-prisons had been cruel, they were punished. Before disbanding, the Union troops were reviewed by the President, in Washington. The Revolutionary Army veterans had formed the Cincinnati Society, so the Civil War Veterans formed that of the Grand Army of the Republic (G. A. R.). Since then, in every public procession, veterans of the Civil War have been given the place of honor. But their ranks are growing thinner and thinner, and soon the G. A. R. will be only a glorious memory.

Lee's Advice. Lee, who had fought so bravely for the Confederacy, or "Lost Cause," nobly told his soldiers: "Remember that we are one country now. Do not bring up your children in hostility to the Government of the United States. Bring them up to be Americans." He also declared: "Whatever opinions have prevailed in the past with regard to African slavery, or the right of a State to secede from the Union, we believe we express the almost unanimous judgment of the Southern people, when we declare that they consider these questions were decided by the war, and that it is their intention, in good faith, to abide

by the decision." As long as he lived, he urged peace and harmony, especially to the Southern women, who proved less ready than the men to "shake hands and forget." But these women, in many cases, had lost their nearest and dearest, besides their money, servants, and homes, and were left utterly bereft! Lee died in 1870, and was buried near the college chapel of the Washington and Lee University, where his name is linked to that of the Father of his Country. Both proved good Virginians, as well as great Americans.

Our Debt. Another debt to the Civil War is the example of Lee as a generous loser, and of Grant as a merciful victor.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *Fifty Famous Stories Retold*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 215-252, American Book Co.

1. Describe the March to the Sea. State where it began and ended, and who commanded it?
2. Describe the surrender of Lee to Grant, tell where it took place, and the date.
3. What advice did Lee now give the Confederates?

RECONSTRUCTION AND IMMIGRATION

CHAPTER LXXXVI

RECONSTRUCTION

Mexico. During the Civil War, France, which since the time of Napoleon I had been in turn an Autocracy (ô-tôk'rà-sǐ), a Constitutional Monarchy, a Republic, and an Empire, sent an army to place Maximilian (măk-sǐ-mĭl'yăn), brother of the Emperor of Austria, on the throne of Mexico. Thereupon our Government reminded France that by the Monroe Doctrine, Europeans were not allowed to meddle with affairs in America! The French, therefore, reluctantly withdrew their army, and soon after Maximilian was executed by his foes. In 1867 Mexico became a Republic; but as many of its citizens are uneducated, it still suffers from frequent revolutions, and has many bandits. This makes it an unpleasant neighbor now and then. That same year we bought Alaska from Russia, for seven and a half millions, a sum then considered extravagant. But Alaskan furs, timber, and fishing, paid for the country, long before gold was discovered there.

Negroes. One by one the southern states were readmitted to the Union, their senators and representatives sitting in Congress, and helping make our laws

as before. But it took years before order in the South was fully restored. For a long while, the colored people were worse off than before the war, as far as food, shelter, clothing, and care were concerned. Now, they are taught to look out for themselves, to form industrious and thrifty habits, and to do their duty as citizens of a great country. In some cases, colored men, like Booker Washington, have risen from slavery to act as leaders for their race. Still, we should always remember how many generations it took to civilize us, and be patient with colored people, some of whose great-grandfathers were savages when brought to America. Although "war scars" can still be seen in the South, that section of our country is now as prosperous and as loyal as the North. Before the war, there were few or no factories in the South, now there are hosts of them, and at every exhibition the "New South" proudly displays the work of its people.

Atlantic Cables. A year after the Civil War ended, the Atlantic cable was relaid and messages sent across the sea. Cyrus Field laid this cable and had many difficulties to overcome, between 1854 when he began the work, and 1867 when it was completed. On the first successful cable, four hundred messages were sent before it stopped working. Then cables broke or were lost; but Field began again and again, until he not only succeeded in laying a cable that worked perfectly, but found a way to fish up and splice broken cables. Many cables now run beneath the Atlantic and Pacific waters, so we can telegraph all around the world!

Grant. Grant, twice elected President, saw the completion of an ocean-to-ocean railroad, whose last spike

was driven near Ög'dēn. Letters thereafter were carried across the continent by railway, a great improvement on the "Pony Express." Trains crossing the continent were often stopped at first by herds of buffaloes, which were slain in such quantities for their skins that they rapidly disappeared. In two years some 3,500,000 were



AN EARLY TRAIN

The coming of the railroad was soon followed by the disappearance of the herds of buffaloes that often stopped the first trains.

slaughtered by white and red men. Now, buffaloes are kept in National Parks, where no one is allowed to hunt them, for they are very rare. The prairies, their former feeding ground, are ploughed and sowed by power, and when the grain is ripe, improved reapers, cut, thresh, and fan the grain. This is carried by numerous railroads to huge grain mills, where it is ground to flour, to supply bread to our own people and to many others. In 1870 there were about thirty-nine million inhabitants in the United States. Wealth had greatly increased; steam furthered commerce and com-

munication; and a Weather Bureau warned farmers and seamen of coming storms.

Our Debt. We find a debt to these years in the laying of Atlantic cable, the purchase of Alaska, the cross-continent railroad, and the organization of the Weather Bureau.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

B. WASHINGTON, *Up From Slavery*.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 252-268, American Book Co.

1. What occurred in Mexico during our Civil War, how was it stopped, and what became of Maximilian?
2. Give an account of the laying of the Atlantic Cable.
3. Which presidents succeeded Johnson, and what did they do?

CHAPTER LXXXVII

OUR CENTENNIAL

The Franco-Prussian War. After 1806, when Germany ceased to belong to the Holy Roman Empire, its many states formed a loose confederation, of which Prussia became the most important member. Thanks to Bismarck's (bīs'märk) ambition, Prussia seized part of Denmark and Austria. Then, in 1870, having forced France to declare war, Bismarck induced the German Confederation to help Prussia, by declaring the Fatherland in danger! Because he was prepared for this war, France's unprepared forces had to surrender, and Napoleon III was made a prisoner. The French, for the third time, changed their Government into a Republic, and prepared to defend Paris, which

the Germans besieged for three months. When no provisions were left, and when the cold and famished inhabitants were pounded by German guns, the city had to surrender. The fact that the King of Prussia was proclaimed Kaiser of a new German Empire, in the palace of Versailles, made the humiliation still worse. Peace conditions proved very harsh, since Bismarck exacted two provinces (Alsace and Lorraine), \$1,000,000,000, and the right to enter Paris in triumph! As the only alternative was to see the capital reduced to a rubbish heap, the French had to submit. During the Franco-Prussian war, Italy, which had long been trying to form a united country, chose Victor Emmanuel for its king, with Rome for capital. The Roman Catholic world hotly resented this move, and the Pope, who had until then ruled the "Eternal City," has since considered himself the "Prisoner of the Vat-i-can."

Chicago Fire. In 1871, a lamp upset in a Chicago cow-shed, caused a fire which wiped out the whole city and ruined many people. Help was sent from all sides to the starving, homeless Chicagoans, who, with wonderful courage, immediately began to rebuild their city. Their dauntless energy has been richly rewarded, for Chicago is now, with the exception of New York, the largest city in our Union. Other fires in Michigan, Boston, and New York, caused further losses, which helped bring about the "panic of 1873."

Stanley, — Livingstone. The year the Franco-Prussian war ended, an American newspaper sent Stanley to find Dr. Livingstone (liv'ing-stŭn), an English explorer, lost in the heart of Africa. Livingstone

had explored the Congo (kǒn'gō) and Zambesi (zǎm-bē'zǐ) Rivers, and crossed Africa several times. Stanley finally found him near the great lakes, Victoria Nyān'zā and Albert Nyanza, discovered a few years previously by Speke (spēk) and Baker. After being relieved, Livingstone, in spite of ill-health, went on exploring until he died (1873).

Arbitration. When disputes between our country and Great Britain in regard to Civil War damages and boundary matters were settled by arbitration, we felt we had taken a long step in the right direction. We also realized that the 300,000 Indians, who had always been unfairly treated, deserved some re-dress. So, proper food was supplied them, and Indian boys and girls learned, in Government schools, to help their people become good citizens. Still, lack of consideration, shown by white settlers to Indian tribes, has caused several Indian battles, in one of which Sitting Bull surprised and killed General Custer (1876).

The Centennial. In 1876 Centennial celebrations were numerous, and Revolutionary battles were commemorated. The greatest of all was, however, the Centennial of the Declaration of Independence, at Philadelphia, celebrated by a World's Fair. Here, again, wonderful exhibits were brought from all parts of the globe, and visitors beheld machinery of all kinds invented to make work easier. To show our progress, the earliest and latest locomotives, trains, ships, etc., were exhibited. Among the novelties were bicycles, typewriters, Bell's telephone, and Edison's electric lights, inventions which have since constantly been improved.

358 RECONSTRUCTION AND IMMIGRATION

Our Debt. The third French Republic was formed, and Italy was united. Stanley and Livingstone set wonderful examples of courage and endurance in their African explorations. The bicycle, telephone, typewriter, and electric lights were invented.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

GUERBER, *Story of Modern France*, pp. 294-315, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 270-274, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the English*, pp. 334-339, American Book Co.

1. Tell about the Franco-Prussian War.
2. Tell about the Chicago Fire, the Stanley-Livingstone meeting, and the arbitration treaty.
3. What was the Centennial, where was it held, what was exhibited?

CHAPTER LXXXVIII MORE IMPROVEMENTS

Immigration. As our number kept on increasing by leaps and bounds, owing not only to the increase of our native population, but to the ever growing number of immigrants pouring into our country, new problems arose. Immigrants from civilized countries, with good health, fair records, and intending to learn our ways and become useful citizens, were welcome. But vast numbers of Chinese laborers, who only wanted our money to carry or send back to China, were unwelcome. Congress is always devising new laws in regard to those who shall be allowed to enter our country, and those who shall be shut out. Still, we were planning so

many new railroads, canals, and improvements, such as the Eads (ēdz) bridge across the Mississippi at St. Louis, and the deepening of its channel near its mouth, that many hands were needed. Between 1870 and 1880 three million foreigners arrived, of which one-third were Germans, who settled in the Middle West. These people proved as a rule valuable citizens.

Great Events. Between 1880 and 1890 occurred the murder of President Garfield (gär'fēld). It was followed by a Civil Service Bill, decreeing that persons seeking certain Government places should prove their ability to fill them by passing examinations. The Yorktown Centennial was followed by the opening of Brooklyn Bridge, and the Cotton Exposition in New Orleans, showing how our exports of that one staple had grown in a hundred years from eight bales to many millions. The negroes (no longer slaves, but free), who grew all this cotton, kept our own mills busy, besides supplying many mills abroad. They were becoming self-reliant and thrifty, were earning fair wages, and learning to be good American citizens. Another improvement was the fact that letters were carried to any point of the Union for two cents, although stamps had been in use here only thirty-eight years.

Grant. After serving two terms as President, Grant had made a tour of the world, and was received everywhere with great honor. Then he started in business, but, owing to a dishonest partner, failed and was left penniless. Although suffering from a cancer in the throat, Grant began writing his memoirs, and, speechless and in great pain, went on working at them until they were finished. These Memoirs are his legacy to

his family and also to our nation. Grant received a public funeral, which many of his old southern foes attended to show their respect. His tomb, on Riverside Drive, New York, bears the most famous saying of this "Silent Man": "Let us have Peace."

Increase. Meantime, so many states had joined the Union that we had forty-two stars on our flag. Population went on increasing and everybody was so eager for land, that when Oklahoma was opened to settlers in 1889, a wild rush occurred. The fifty thousand people who entered it at noon, had stores open and were printing newspapers in several "mushroom" towns, before sunset on the same day! That year also marked the one hundredth anniversary of our Constitutional government. The Centennial of our first President's inauguration was honored by the erection of the Washington Memorial Arch in New York.

Calamities. A bursting dam caused a flood at Johnstown, Pa., which cost many lives and caused great losses. But it also called forth wonderful deeds of heroism and charity, as did also a great fire at Seattle. A spirit of real brotherhood was further shown by the Pan-American Congress, where met delegates from North, South, and Central America, to exchange ideas, and further business and friendship between all parts of the Western Hemisphere. But, although we were ever more inclined to patience and fair-dealing, a few of our citizens occasionally forgot to leave things to courts and a police to settle. Thus, some Italian immigrants belonging to a society organized to rob and murder, were seized in New Orleans. The excited mob, instead of letting justice take its way, broke into the

prison and lynched eleven men! As they were not yet American citizens, Italy claimed \$25,000 for these men's families, and people all over the world received an impression that Americans were only partly civilized, since they had no respect for the laws they themselves made! Thus, you see, countries — like families — are judged by the conduct of their citizens or members!

Our Debt. The Civil Service Bureau was formed. The spirit of brotherhood was exhibited in great calamities. The building of the Eads and Brooklyn Bridges and the deepening of the Mississippi entrance were great engineering feats.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

ANDREWS, *Ten Boys*, Ginn.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 278-300, American Book Co.

1. Why did vast numbers of immigrants come to this country?
2. Tell of Grant's journeys and memoirs.
3. What was the effect of lynching?

TWO WARS AND CONCLUSION

CHAPTER LXXXIX

SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

The Columbian Exposition. By the census of 1890, we heard that during the past decade (dĕk'ād) (ten years), more than five million foreigners had entered our ports, thus raising our population to sixty-three million. Besides numerous immigrants, we had foreign visitors from all parts of the world during the Columbian Exposition, which marked the four hundredth anniversary of Columbus' discovery of America. Every nation contributed something to this exposition, where exact copies of Columbus' three ships attracted much attention. There were also automobiles, wonderful machines, and lighting devices, invented by geniuses like Edison and Tesla. To offset the festivities at Chicago, there were during this decade many strikes, some of which had to be checked by our army; and disputes about coinage and tariff — or the amount of duty to be paid on foreign goods before they can enter the country. We also arbitrated in a dispute regarding the boundary of Venezuela.

The Spanish-American War. During Cleveland's administration, wireless telegraphy was discovered by the Italian Marconi, and the X-rays by a Swiss scientist, Roentgen (rûnt'gĕn). Then, too, our United States was concerned by disturbances in Cuba, where

the people were trying to win their independence from Spain. The Mother Country, by treating this colony cruelly, roused our sympathy in its behalf. So the Cubans were able secretly to obtain arms, ammunition, and other supplies from the United States. To protect Americans living in Cuba during this war, our Government sent our warship "Maine" to Havana. While anchored there, at a spot indicated by the Spanish authorities, the Maine blew up, killing two hundred and sixty of our men. When experts reported that the Maine had been destroyed by a mine fired beneath it, a general clamor arose for war against Spain. Congress therefore declared war, April 21, 1898. Because we maintain only a small army, volunteers were called. While these were being trained, a fleet under Dewey (dū'ī), at Hōng'kōng, was ordered to Mǎ-nǐ'á Bay, to bottle up or destroy the Spanish ships, which might otherwise cross the Pacific and bombard our western coast. Dewey boldly ran into Manila Bay before he was expected, and in two hours' time destroyed eleven Spanish vessels, only eight of his men suffering wounds, and none of his ships being badly damaged. By this victory, our western coast was made safe, but as the eastern coast was still exposed, the "Oregon" made a 15,000 mile journey around South America, breaking all speed records.

End of the War. The Spanish fleet, which threatened our eastern coast, ran into Santiago (sǎn-tē-ä'gō) Harbor, Cuba, to refit, and was there cleverly blockaded by our fleet. To make sure it should not escape, a vessel was sunk across the entrance, but it drifted and left a passage. Meantime, our army landed in Cuba,

where, helped by Garcia (gär-thē'ä), the Cuban leader, it defeated the Spanish forces. When the the Spanish fleet, in a desperate attempt to avoid capture in Santiago Harbor, suddenly sailed out, its ships were sunk by our vessels. The war was over, and by the Treaty of Paris (October 1, 1898) Spain gave up all claims to Cuba, Porto Rico, and the Philippines for \$20,000,000. We annexed Porto Rico, but Cuba is now governing itself, and the Philippines are fast learning to do the same. We also allowed the Sandwich or Hawaiian Islands to join us, and annexed Tutuila (tōō-tōō-ē'lä) as well as Guam (gwäm) and Wake Island, useful stopping-places between Hawaii and the Philippines.

Our Debt. Wireless telegraphy and the X-rays have proved of untold benefit. The Spanish-American War left us with new possessions and dependencies.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

SCHWARTZ, *Five Little Strangers*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, pp. 300-334, American Book Co.

1. Give a description of the Columbian Exposition, tell where it was held and in what year.
2. Give an account of the Spanish-American War.
3. What did the United States gain thereby?

CHAPTER XC

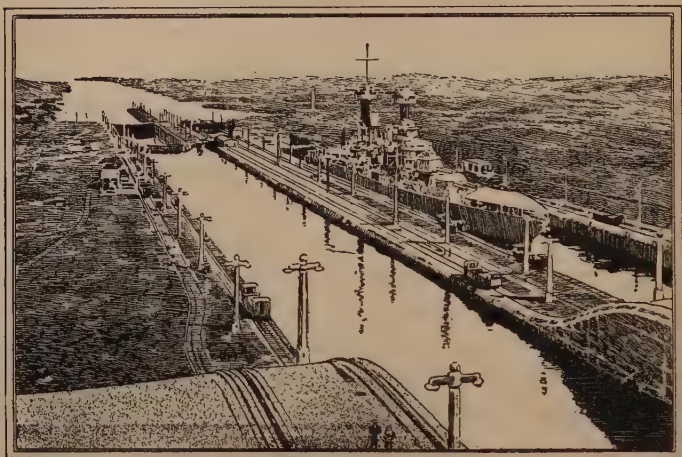
THE PANAMA CANAL

Census of 1900. The census of 1900 showed we had nearly seventy-six million Americans, and that three and a half million emigrants had arrived in ten years.

Most immigrants, hitherto, had come from northwestern Europe, and had become good citizens. From the Scandinavian Peninsula had come farmers and lumbermen, who had gone to the northwestern states, and many expert seamen. From Germany and Poland, hosts of mechanics, laborers, and technical men. From Switzerland, France, Belgium, and Holland, a few immigrants of the better class. Now, the southern Europeans began to flock to our shores, such as Italian laborers and fruit venders, Greek confectioners, and ever increasing representatives of the various central European nations. Some Irish and a few Scotchmen came, but very few English. That was because England was then fighting the Boer (bōor) war, which left it in control of the greater part of Africa. Then came the death of Queen Victoria (1901), who had reigned sixty-three years over Great Britain and had also borne the title of Empress of India. So many famous Englishmen, writers, statesmen, explorers, and inventors lived during her time, that it is generally known as the Victorian Age.

Panama Canal. The Panama Canal is the biggest piece of work we accomplished at the beginning of the 20th century under Roosevelt. By cutting the Canal across the Isthmus, the passage Columbus had vainly sought was at last made! A canal had been first planned by Ferdinand of Spain; centuries afterwards a railroad was built at the cost of many lives. Then, after building the Suez Canal (1869), the French undertook that of Panama, but failed. When Major Walter Reed discovered that mosquitoes inoculate people with malaria and yellow-fever, a systematic fight was begun

against them. Marshes were drained, doors and windows screened, and pure water was supplied to prevent typhoid fever. Thus, the Canal Zone became a healthful region, and Americans began to build the canal.



THE PANAMA CANAL

U. S. Maryland in the middle east chamber of the Gatun Locks.

It was opened in 1914, and it was estimated it would soon pay for itself, and become a source of gain, like the Suez Canal.

The Russo-Japanese War. A war between Japan and Russia, after costing many lives and much money, ended by arbitration conducted at Portsmouth, New Hampshire. Immediately after its conclusion, overpopulated Japan sent us thirty thousand emigrants in one year! To prevent the West from being overrun by Japanese, a "gentlemen's agreement" was made to prevent too great immigration.

Mistaken Idea. The 1910 census showed we had nearly ninety-two million inhabitants, and that Jews, Russians, Finns, Hungarians, Slovaks, Poles, Greeks, and Italians were pouring into our country, at the rate of twenty-four hundred per day! Many of these newcomers, belonging to the most ignorant class, fancied they could pick up gold in our streets. Besides, they had made trouble for their own governments, and fancied that "land of the free" meant a land where they could behave as they pleased. So, new laws had to be devised, for although we derive benefits from every land which sends us people to work and to learn our ways and language, new laws have had to be devised so that order and peace should be maintained.

Roosevelt's Journeys. During Taft's administration, ex-President Roosevelt went to Africa, whence he sent home many additions to our natural history museums. He was also officially present at the funeral of Edward VII (1910), and visited sundry European courts, being received everywhere with marked distinction.

Wilson. During Wilson's first term, the United States had to mount guard along the Mexican frontier. That country was undergoing one of its revolutions, due partly to bad government, but mainly to the ignorance of the bulk of the population. There were also disturbances in Europe, particularly in the Balkans, where contentions have been so frequent that that country is known as "the cockpit of Europe." The last Balkan war (1913) robbed Turkey of all its possessions in Europe, except Constantinople and its neighborhood. This warfare weakened the various nations,

and made Europeans anxious to leave the countries that are never at rest. So hosts of the Central European population were emigrating to America, when the Great War broke out (1914).

Our Debt. The building of Panama Canal afforded a lesson in sanitation, as well as shortened many sea routes. The Russo-Japanese War was ended by arbitration.

READINGS AND QUESTIONS

LEONARD AND JACOBS, *The Nation's History*, pp. 547-548, 579-583, Henry Holt and Co.

COCHRANE, *Story of Modern Mechanism*.

1. Give the story of the Panama Canal and the date of its opening.
 2. Tell about the Russo-Japanese War. Where was the treaty signed?
-

CHAPTER XCI

THE GREAT WAR

Causes of Trouble. Wilson had barely become President, when the worst war the world has ever seen occurred in Europe. Now everyone, of course, wants to get all he can, and every man is entitled to what is rightfully his; but, when anyone wants more, trouble ensues. If you look at a map drawn before the war, you will see that many countries in Europe touch each other. We touch only Canada and Mexico, still *we* have not always kept the peace with our two neighbors! Most countries in Europe, having more than two neighbors, have had more opportunities than we to quarrel, and to stir up or be forced into war.

Prussia. Having become head of the new German Empire, after her triumphs over Denmark, Austria, and France, Prussia decreed that every German should be drilled as a soldier from early childhood. Thus, Germany, believing — like Bismarck — that “blood and iron” should rule the world, built up a wonderfully large, well-trained, and obedient army. Such training and teaching presently warped the German mind.

Germans. Germany had three Emperors, of whom the first was Bismarck’s tool; the second, a sick man, who bore the title of Kaiser only a few months, and the third, Kaiser William II, of whom you have heard a great deal that is not to his credit. But, before this Kaiser became over-ambitious, he did many great things for Germany. He provided good schools, whose motto was obedience, thoroughness, and efficiency. By law, pensions were assured to the old and sick, and the country became very prosperous. The Germans were so proud to have transformed some two hundred small states into a rich and prosperous empire, that they believed themselves superior to all other nations! Because German families are apt to be large, population increased so fast, that Germany had not room enough for all her citizens. The Government, wishing to keep her children German, insisted that theirs was the greatest, best, and most civilized race, and that no matter where they went, German interests *must* come first. Some Germans were content at home, others considered they were too heavily taxed to support the military system, and a few longed for more freedom. Those who objected to taxation, military service, or subjection, left the country and settled elsewhere.

Many came to America, adopted our language and ways and became naturalized. They, their children, and grandchildren, are now counted among our most loyal, efficient, and honored citizens. But others came here merely to get all they could, to escape their citizen duties in Germany, and perform none here! Now, a man who won't work does not deserve to eat, and one who won't do his duty as citizen of some country, does not deserve the protection of any country. Besides these two large classes, a few Germans were sent over here to get everything they could for themselves and for Germany, and to make the United States as nearly German as possible!

Made in Germany. To sell the goods made in Germany, agents went everywhere, and German ships carried German wares to every country. While it is perfectly fair to sell all you can, it is not fair to object if others do the same. When Germany began to teach in her schools that the world would never be right until it was all German, other nations laughed at such a notion. But Germany was planning to get the world's trade and the world's mastery in her hands, although when the Great War began (August 1, 1914), hardly anyone beside Germany and her allies, believed any civilized nation *could* harbor such a crazy idea!

Serbia. Under the pretext that Serbia was responsible for the murder of her Crown Prince, Austria sent her a message which could only provoke war. If attacked, Russia was pledged to help Serbia, and France to help Russia. Germany, on the other hand, was the ally of Austria and Italy. Planning to whip France, by reaching Paris in less than three weeks, and

then turn all her forces against Russia, Germany broke her treaty with Belgium, and forced her way through that country to reach France on her unprotected side. Although King Albert of Belgium protested his country was "not an open road," and reminded Germany that she had pledged herself to respect Belgium's neutrality, he was curtly informed that a treaty was a mere "scrap of paper"!

France Invaded. The small Belgian army did its noble best, but the Germans, having prepared every move, swept on, killing those who resisted, setting fire to houses, and ruining towns. In a few days all but a small part of southwestern Belgium was in their hands. England, also bound by treaty to uphold Belgian neutrality, immediately sent troops across the Channel. None of the countries, except Austria and Germany, being prepared for war, Belgium, France, England, and Serbia got the worst of it at first. But, although regiment after regiment was mowed down by the deadly German artillery, brave men held their ground, retreating step by step only when there was nothing else to do. The Germans were dangerously near Paris, when Joffre (zhô-fr'), a clever French general, defeated them in the Battle of the Marne (märn). From there, he drove them back many miles, but was unable to push them out of his country. Entrenched in northern France, the Germans held out month after month, and year after year, against the "Allied" forces, which fortunately kept growing stronger all the time.

The New Crusade. At first, Serbia, Russia, France, Belgium, and England alone opposed the "Pan-German scheme." This was to seize most of Europe

to begin with, then Asia, Africa, and America! But, when the world in general saw Germans stealing machinery and destroying Belgian and French shops, mills, mines, etc., so *they* alone should henceforth manufacture and sell the wares the world needs, other nations joined the Allies. People who love fair play and liberty felt this was a new crusade; the crusade of all who wished to remain independent, to preserve their nationality, language, and laws, and not to allow one man or nation to rule all others!

Germany's Plans. During the four and a quarter years of warfare — worse than any the world had ever known — it seemed as if all the evil passions and all the wickedness of the world were unchained, and many heroic young lives were sacrificed to check Germany's mad career. Although her plans did not succeed as quickly as she hoped, Germany felt sure she would triumph in the end. So, she began to issue orders to the world at large! Our Government, for instance, was told its ships would be allowed to sail only to certain ports, and at certain times! Because these orders were simply ignored, a warning was published in our papers that ships and passengers, venturing where Germany forbade them to go, would do so at their own risk!

The Lusitania. The Lū-sĩ-tā'nĩ-à, — an English ship — carrying many American men, women, and children, was soon after sunk by German submarines! When our Government asked an explanation from Germany, she answered that since we were selling arms to her enemies, she had the right to sink the ships! Still, we are told there were neither arms nor ammunition on the Lusitania.

The United States Enters the War. By killing our citizens, sinking our vessels, sending spies to destroy our canals, bridges, and ammunition works, stirring up strikes here, and trouble in Mexico, Germany finally forced us to take a part in the war. We joined the Allies in April, 1917, after they had been fighting three years to defend the world's liberty! Our men, money, ships, airplanes, cannons, etc., proved of great use, arriving as they did when the other nations were nearly exhausted. On reaching France, our General Pershing, standing by Lafayette's tomb, simply said: "Here we are, Lafayette!" showing that America intended to repay in kind France's services during our Revolutionary War. Pershing placed our troops at Joffre's disposal, so they could help, as Wilson said, "to make the world safe for democracy." The three million boys in our army bravely did their "bit" in this war for humanity, wherein many lost their lives or their health. Meantime, in Russia, German agents stirred up a terrible revolution during which, after being forced to abdicate, the Czar and all his family were basely murdered.

The Armistice. The time came when Germany was exhausted and had to beg for an armistice. It became possible to make peace with Republican Germany, because the Kaiser had abdicated and fled to Holland. Peace had been made with Austria; Italy had broken her alliance and joined the Allies, since the war was not a war to defend Germany from attack. The armistice signed (November 11, 1918), the greatest Allied statesmen vainly tried to frame just terms of peace, and to form a League of Nations. The aim of

this League was to prevent future wars, and to make sure that every nation, while retaining its own freedom, did not interfere with that of any other. Many European Nations accepted the Treaty of Versailles and the League of Nations but, although President Wilson went twice to France, and helped frame both, our Congress refused to ratify either.

Recent History. The next elections upheld Congress' decision by making Harding our President. He made a separate peace with Germany, and was the first to address the whole people by radio. On his return from a journey to Alaska, he was taken ill and died. He was succeeded by Vice-President Coolidge, who continued his efforts to reduce expenses. The election of 1924 proved the President's efforts had been appreciated, for he was elected by a large majority as thirtieth President of the United States.

Our Debt. The World War taught us that war is wrong, and that we should henceforth resort to arbitration.

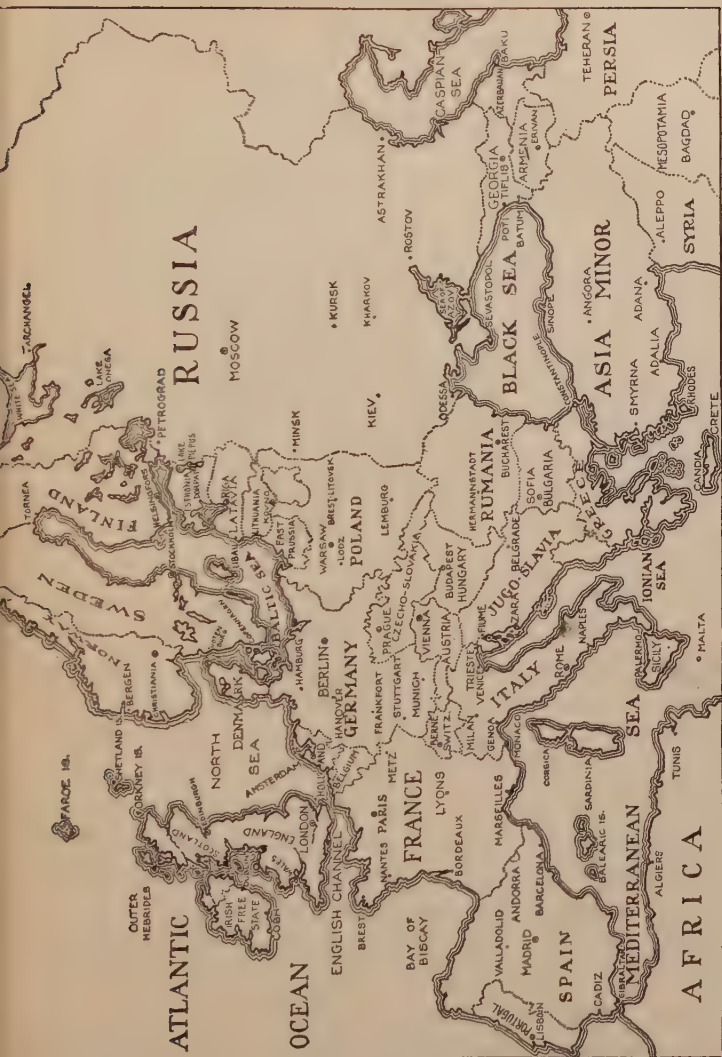
READINGS AND QUESTIONS

BALDWIN, *American Book of Golden Deeds*, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of the Great Republic*, p. 337 to the end, American Book Co.

GUERBER, *Story of Modern France*, p. 316 to the end, American Book Co.

1. Tell the story of the Great War.
2. When did America join the Allies?
3. What happened elsewhere since then?



EUROPE IN 1923

CHAPTER XCII

SUMMARY

Primitive Man. Civilization is a slow and gradual process, to which each person and nation contributes a share. In the preceding pages we have had a bird's-eye view of the world's history. It shows us how each individual, generation, and nation has in turn something to pass on to the next. The hardest and longest task was that of primitive man, because he had to find out how to feed, clothe, house, and defend himself and family. Still, from the early Stone Age he gradually advanced, until he knew about as much as our Red Indians did when Columbus discovered America.

The River Valley Colonies. Emigration started early, and colonies transplanted the knowledge gained in their original home to rich river-bottoms in China, India, Mesopotamia, and Egypt. There, each colony progressed along separate lines. Settlers in the Tigris-Euphrates valley taught the world brick-making, the use of the potter's wheel, printing on clay, divisions of time, the rudiments of astronomy, and irrigation. Egypt taught quarrying, stone-construction and carving, furthered agriculture and medicine, and evolved geometry. The Assyrians contributed somewhat in architecture and sculpture, but more in the science of warfare and in war engines.

The Mediterranean Shore. The Phoenicians, the master-craftsmen, traders, and navigators of their

time, enriched the world by their alphabet, and by the products of their own industry and that of Assyria, Babylonia, and Egypt. The Jewish people, chosen by God to teach the world morality and religion, migrated from Mesopotamia to Palestine, and thence to Egypt, thus absorbing the culture of both lands. Then, led by Moses into the desert, the Jews received the Ten Commandments, the basis of moral law in all civilized countries.

Greece. The knowledge and culture of Egypt, Phoenicia, and the East, were conveyed by colonies to North Africa, Italy, Spain, and Greece. An inborn love of beauty, added to a vivid imagination, transformed and improved all the Greeks inherited from their predecessors. Their mythology, to which all educated people constantly allude, their music, poetry, art, science, and ideas on physical training, have enriched the whole world. Then, too, Athens, Europe's first republic, has served as a model for all others.

Rome. Rome profited by all Greece knew, had done, or had gained from others. Greek culture, thus adopted by Rome, was carried to all the lands she, in her turn, conquered,—France, Belgium, Holland, Germany, England, Spain, Austria-Hungary, the Balkans, western Asia, and north Africa. Besides, Rome taught these people her laws, language, religion, and mode of warfare, as well as the art of building roads, bridges, aqueducts, theaters, and baths. Roman culture was threatened with destruction by hordes of barbarians who were held in check only by her victorious armies.

Christianity. When the Roman Imperial power



SUMMARY MAP FOR THE



STORY OF OUR CIVILIZATION.

had become so great that the Mediterranean was a Roman lake, Christ appeared, unrecognized as the Messiah by the Jewish people, who bade the Romans crucify Him. But, seventy years after His birth, while His disciples were spreading His doctrine, Jerusalem was seized by the Romans, and the Jewish people, scattered to the four corners of the earth, made the books of the Old Testament known to all. Christian persecutions merely increased the number of converts until finally the Roman Empire officially adopted the religion it had first scorned.

Barbarians. Early in her career, Rome was threatened by the Gauls, who settled in northern Italy, where they learned from those they had tried to destroy, bestowing on them in exchange some of their physical vigor. Caesar's conquest in Gaul, his dealings with the Helvetians, his sallies into Germany and England introduced Roman law, ideas, and manners to these nations. Under Roman rule, for some four hundred years, Gaul, Switzerland, and Spain received so indelible a Latin stamp that a large percentage of the words in those languages are Latin, and they are still called Latin countries. The barbarian invasions of the fifth century located the Saxons in England, the Burgundians and Franks in France, and the Visigoths in Spain. These people joined the Romans in stopping the Hun raid in France, and thus saved Roman civilization from complete shipwreck.

Fall of the Western Roman Empire. The fall of the Western Roman Empire, after Rome had been sacked by barbarians, emboldened German tribes to settle in northern Italy. Then the Saracens, or Moors, who

had invaded Spain, threatened Gaul, but were driven back into the Iberian Peninsula, where they retained a hold until Columbus' time. After defeating the Germans in north Italy, Charlemagne bestowed their lands on the Pope, thus transforming him into a temporal as well as a spiritual ruler. Charlemagne did much to civilize western, and even central, Europe because, thanks to his wars, most of the people became Christians. The raids of Norman pirates next forced French nobles to fortify their castles, so as to shelter themselves and their vassals, until the Normans settled at the mouth of the Seine, and in the course of a century and a half, became French.

The Norman Conquest of England. The year 1000 witnessed a great religious revival, during which rich gifts were bestowed upon churches and monasteries. Mostly from these donations sprang the cathedrals, abbeys, and chapels of the Middle Ages. In 1066 the Norman conquest of England transplanted Norman-French culture, feudalism, and chivalry into England.

Crusades. Twenty-nine years after the Conquest, began the Crusades, which extended over some two hundred years. They diminished warfare at home, encouraged the rise of chartered towns, and enabled East and West to learn much from each other.

The Printing Press. During the Hundred Years' War, the English dropped the French language, although they occupied most of France until driven back by Joan of Arc. Next the efforts of many European reformers were furthered by Gutenberg's printing press. The taking of Constantinople by the

Turks brought a new wave of Greek culture to western Europe, thus furthering the Renaissance, or New Birth, of letters and arts.

Discoveries. A desire to trade with the Far East — depicted in glowing colors in Marco Polo's book of travel — and the fact that the Turks barred the old routes, made Venice, Genoa, and Pisa long for a sea route to India. Portuguese expeditions had nearly rounded the Cape of Good Hope, when Ferdinand and Isabella drove the Moors out of Spain, and Columbus, after eighteen years' vain efforts, obtained the royal support. In 1492 he sailed from Palos, stopped at the Canaries, and steering due west, discovered the Bahamas, Cuba, and Haïti. Three later journeys failed, however, to bring him to the India he sought, which Vasco da Gama, his Portuguese rival, reached by sailing around Africa. Spaniards and Portuguese sent the first colonies to the New World, where they introduced their language, religion, customs, and civilization.

England. Meantime, after being weakened by the Hundred Years' War, and by the Wars of the Roses, the English were prospering once more under Henry VII, when Columbus discovered America. The Cabots explored the North American shore in King Henry's behalf, but returned minus silks or spices. The Reformation, discouraged at first in England, was finally adopted by Henry VIII, who became head of the Anglican Church. His young son dying early, was succeeded first by a Catholic and then by a Protestant sister. Thanks to English fighters, writers, and statesmen, the Elizabethan Age proved an era of great prog-

ress. England's attempts to rob Spain of part of the New World's booty proved most successful, and about fifty years after Magellan, Drake, the Englishman, also sailed around the world! The execution of Mary Stuart and the defeat of the Spanish Armada assured Elizabeth's hold on her throne, and England's naval supremacy.

English Colonies. During James' reign, first the Jamestown, then the Plymouth colonies were founded, the former for gain, the latter to secure religious freedom to the Pilgrims. A few years later, Boston was founded,—also by Puritans, who emigrated to America in large numbers, because they were persecuted at home. Puritans, Huguenots, Lutherans, and Quakers sought here “a place to worship God” as their conscience dictated. Their descendants formed the bulk of our population during the Colonial Period. Then, with a change of Government, in England, persecuted Catholics and staunch Royalists also came over. Foreign tongues were heard only in New Amsterdam, where the Dutch held sway until 1664, and where stray foreigners were made welcome, in Pennsylvania, where many Germans settled, and in the Carolinas, where struggling colonies of Swiss and French were started. So, when the Revolution broke out, the Thirteen Colonies were English, and would have remained true to the Mother Country had their rights been respected.

American Stock in the West. Immediately after the Revolution, most of the pioneers bound for the Western region started from New England and Virginia. But, with the establishment of the United

States Government, foreigners began to arrive and to become citizens.

Immigration. Of late years, the tide of immigration has risen, until just before the Great War, more than a million foreigners entered our ports every year. Coming from Italy, Austria, Poland, Russia, and the Balkans, and knowing nothing of our language, customs, or ideals, these later immigrants have been hard to deal with properly. Our laws had hitherto kept out only the diseased, idiotic, criminal, or pauper classes of other countries. Now Congress has restricted all immigration. The unadaptable Chinese have been barred out by law, and Japan has been requested to restrain her people from emigrating to America. There are whole communities of Hungarian, Polish, or Russian miners or laborers, who, not knowing our language, grumble, strike, or prove troublesome in other ways. Those who want to change our Government to suit their fancy are undesirable immigrants. Still we believe the majority of these will obey our laws, if they understand them. In many cases they can do so only through their children, who, attending our schools, learn our language and ways, provided teachers and schoolmates loyally help them. As Roosevelt said: "Much has been given to us and much will rightfully be expected of us. We have duties towards others and duties to ourselves; and we can shirk neither. We have become a great nation, forced by the fact of its greatness into relations with other nations of the earth; and we must behave as beseems a people with such responsibilities."

INDEX

- Abolition Societies, against slavery, 329
- Abraham, Canaan, 55, stories, 54, sacrifice, 57
- Acadia, farmers exiled from, 283
- Acanthus, plant, 104
- Accolade, 182
- Achilles, hero of Iliad, 72
- Acropolis, fortress of Athens, 102, theaters dug in, 105
- Actium, battle of, 158
- Adam, first man in Bible, 54
- Adams, Samuel, petition of, 287, leader, 286
- Adams, John, President, 312, vice-president, 305
- Adams, John Quincy, President, 325
- Adriatic Sea, pirates in, 150, Pyrrhus' army crosses, 133, Venice founded, 178
- Aegean Sea, colonies on, 88, road, 129, Theseus crosses, 47
- Aegeus, father of Theseus, 47
- Aeneas, hero of Aeneid, 81
- Aeneid, debt to, 82, 160, Virgil's Epic, 81
- Africa, around, 87, 88, 91, 238, 244, caravans to, 112, connected, 29, Christian slaves, 205, Dido in, 80, first to, 74, Hannibal back to, 139, Livingstone in, 357, north, 135, northwest coast, 142, point of, 229, Romans in, 136, Roosevelt in, 367, sail around, 228, seize, 372, sent to, 79, slaves from, 252, 273, 312, Stanley to, 356, Tlemcen in, 202, Vandals from, 169, wares from, 228
- African, around the coast, 87, 88, caravans, 228, coast, 80, exploration, 358, savage trade, 37, slaves, 228, 350
- Agamemnon, tragic end of, 105
- Age, of Pericles, 105, 106, 222, of Electricity, 281
- Agincourt, battle, 215
- Agriculture, 29
- Ahasuerus, same as Xerxes, 99
- Aix-la-Chapelle, fair at, 175, 178
- Aladdin, 173
- Alaric, 166
- Alaska, bought, 352, discovered, 338, Harding in, 374
- Albany, Congress at, 279, 281, 283, steamboat, 319
- Albert of Belgium, 371
- Albert Nyanza, Lake, 357
- Albi, French town, 246
- Albigenses, crusade against, 246, 250
- Alcibiades, age of, 111, career of, 112, treachery of, 109, youth of, 108
- Aldus, Venetian printer, 224
- Alexander, battles, 125, 126, 127, campaigns, 143, death, 129, 130, Diogenes and, 124, general, 132, Greeks with, 142, youth of, 123
- Alexandria, Alexander buried at, 129, founded, 126, 127, 130, library at, 133, lighthouse at, 131, many, 128, Pompey murdered, 154
- Alfred, English King, civilization, 189, Danes, 187, 193, laws, 188, youth, 186
- Algebra, from India, 172
- Alhambra, palace in Spain, 202
- Ali Baba, Arabian Nights, 173
- Allah, Mohammedan God, 172
- Allegheny-ies, 272, cross, 273, range, 277, 279
- Allen, Ethan, takes Ticonderoga, 289, 290
- Allied Forces, 371
- Allies, 372, America joins, 373
- Ampère, a French electrician, 303

- Alphabet, Phoenician, 37, 38
 Alps, Hannibal crosses, 136, mountains, 119, 120, over the, 146
 Alsace, French province, 356
 America, attempt to end slavery, 339, berries in, 262, between Europe and, 94, colonies, 250, come to, 336, 368, 370, discovery, 232, emigrated, 240, English baby in, 258, founder of Republic, 77, Huguenots, 275, intercourse with, 274, land of Opportunity, 335, middle in, 352, Mormons in, 328, named, 238, negroes in, 353, no charities, 329, none bought, 285, not a friend in, 301, only Americans in, 323, return from, 262, rights to, 260, slaves in, 273, 339, 200,000 Spaniards in, 257, vegetables, 263, wanted to seize, 372, World's War in, 373.
 American-s, be, 350, blood, 346, British¹ Surrender, 296, build canal, 366, bulk of, 187, census, 305, 364, citizens, 336, 359, 361, colonies, 272, continent, 263, defended, 343, England disputes with, 327, flag, 297, Fulton an, 317, great, 357, history, 41, in Cuba, 363, inhabitants, 303, Indian weapons, 10, in, 330, Liberty, 211, mainland, 240, many, 372, minute men, 287, newspaper, 356, Norse discovery, 192, pioneers, 320, popular books, 329, proud of, 280, revolution, 313, ships, 267, 315, sons of Cincinnatus, 117, staunch, 335, two, 319, uniform, 301, Washington's² death, 313, waters begin, 229
 Americus Vespucius, name, 238
 Amphitheater in Rome, 162
 Anaesthetics, 329, 332
 Ancestor, worship of, 8
 Ancient Times, end of Roman Empire, 169
 Anderson, Major, Sumter, 344, flag, 349
 Andersonville, confederate prison, 350
 André, Major, conspires, 298, 300, death, 301
 Angles, arrival, 174, England ruled by, 168, 186
 Anglesland, England, 186
 Anglican, Church, 256
 Anglo-Saxon, civilization, 336, conquer, 210, language, 197, race, 187
 Animals, 7
 Annapolis, Congress at, 302
 Antietam, battle of, 346
 Antioch, Crusaders take, 201
 Antony, Actium, 158, second triumvirate, 147
 Apex, 51, 52
 Apis-bull, death of, 51, divinity of, 50, respect for, 126, stabbed, 96
 Apollo, colossus, 132, temple of, 101
 Apostle-s, of Indians, 267, preaching, 166, toleration, 267
 Appendicitis, Egyptians knew, 53
 Appert, French Canner, 316
 Appleseed, Johnny, 312
 Appomattox Court House, surrender, 348, 349
 Aqueducts, Roman, 145
 Arabesques, Moslem, 223
 Arabia, coffee from, 4, conquest, 172, Mohammed, 171
 Arabian, Desert, 31, gulf, 32, Nights, 172, 173, outcasts, 56
 Arab-s, 172, brought compass, 199, hands of, 200, numbers, 172, taught by, 223
 Arbela, Alexander's third battle, 126
 Archimedes, 135, 136, since, 249
 Architecture, debt, 160, Roman, 163
 Archon, elected, 92, ruler in Athens, 76
 Argos, founded, 64
 Aristoi, aristocrats, 76
 Aristophanes, comedy, 112
 Aristotle, curiosities, 128, tutor, 124, 127
 Arizona, 335
 Ark of Covenant, temple for, 78, 96
 Armada, fleet, 256, 257
 Armistice, 1918, 373
 Arnold, Benedict, exchange, 301, Green Mountain boys, 289, Maine, 294, treachery, 298, 300, West Point, 296, 320
 Arthur, legendary, 168, nephew of John, 211

- Articles of Confederation, 295, 304
 Asia, bridge to Africa, 29, Buddhists, 90, conquer, 124, 128, 172, friends in, 97, Greeks in, 130, idea of, 228, land off, 213, marriage, 128, Phoenicia, 67, Polo in, 227, Pompey in, 150, regions in, 41, ruins in, 198, seize, 372, through, 167, Turkey in, 223, wares in, 228, western, 164
 Asia Minor, beyond, 101, cities, 97, Ephesus, 123, Hannibal, 140, land of, 140, province of, 154, Timur has, 220, won by Rome, 142
 Assembly, General Court, 267
 Assyria, 41, destroyed, 85, sculptures, 44, tribute to, 83, under Persia, 87
 Assyrian, cruelty, 84, tribute, 83, wanes, 80
 Astor, founds Astoria, 316, 327
 Astronomy, 29, 35
 Athene, 64, 102, 103
 Atlanta, Ga., 348
 Atlantean, Atlantis, 94, 242
 Atlantic, 37, 94, 232, 236, 272, 324, 326, 327, 353, 355
 Athenian-s, blame Socrates, 111, comedy, 111, Demosthenes an, 122, distressed, 100, in Greece, 46, king dies, 76, labor, 102, law giver, 92, lettered, 68, lose, 101, Persians against, 93, punish, 97, renew war, 109, republic, 77, Xenophon, 110
 Athens, Alexander to, 124, beauty of, 107, Classic Age of, 106, debt, 76, example, 94, 111, founded, 63, head of Greece, 109, history of, 93, importance of, 106, loss of power, 111, Parthenon, 271, Pericles at, 101, Persians at, 100, quarrel, 65, race to, 98, republic of, 77, tyrants at, 110, victory over, 123
 Attila, the Hun, 168
 Augsburg, the Fuggers of, 207
 Augustan Age, 158, 160
 Augustus, emperor, 158, died, 159
 Austin, Texas, 330
 Australia, gold in, 335, 336
 Austria, attacks Serbia, 371, barbarians in, 118, duke of, 209, hat of, 208, Mexican Emperor, 352, part of, 355, peace with, 373, ruled by, 222, 243, seizes Burundy, 226, Silesia from, 282, triumphed over, 369, ultimatum, 371
 Austria-Hungary, Charlemagne, 175, conquest, 163
 Autobiography, Franklin, 281
 Autocracy, in France, 352
 Avignon, papal residence, 220
 Aztecs, King of, 242, Mexico, 25
- ## B
- Baalbec, 79, 80
 Babel, 28
 Babylon, Alexander dies, 129, capital, 41, center of, 85, customs, 42, end of, 83, in, 95, master of, 95, near, 110, rebuilt, 96, return, 128, ruined, 42, taken, 87, way to, 56, wise men, 159, writing, 86
 Babylonia, 41, ended, 87
 Babylonian, 42, feasting, 87, marriage, 43, stories, 87, suffer, 84
 Bab-el-Mandeb, 87
 Bacon, 212, 213
 Bagdad, 173, 176
 Baker, discoverer, 357
 Balboa, 240, 241
 Balkans, cockpit, 367
 Baltic Sea, 37
 Baltimore, 325, 330
 Bannockburn, battle of, 213
 Barbarian, 166
 Barcelona, Columbus in, 233, 235
 Barton, Clara, 347
 Bastile, fortress, 215, 308
 Batavia, founded, 248
 Battle of Nations, 318
 Bayeux, French town, 196
 Becket, Thomas à, 199, 213
 Beginning of Christianity, the, 157-173
 Belgian army, 371, shops, 372
 Belgium, Charlemagne, 175, oil paint, 222, Roman civilization, 152, 153, treaty with, 371, Waterloo, 318
 Belshazzar, king of Babylon, 86, 87
 Bennington, battle, 294
 Benvenuto Cellini, sculptor, 226
 Berlin, capital of Prussia, 317

- Bethlehem, in Palestine, 159
 Bible, books of, 79, calls, 28, debt, 87, first, 224, 225, illustrated, 191, Indian, 267, individual, 256, many, 245, story-ies, 54, 55, 85, 99, translated, 247, 250, travelled with the, 246, use of, 59
 Bicycles, invented, 357, 358
 Big Trees, 337
 Bismarck, minister, 355, 356, like, 369
 Blackbeard, pirate, 273
 Black Prince, 214
 Bleeding Kansas, 339
 Blondel, Richard's bard, 304
 Bloody Mary, queen of England, 253
 Bloody Massacre, Boston, 285
 Boadicea, English Queen, 160
 Boer War, with England, 365
 Bohemian, Huss, the, 246
 Bonaparte, Napoleon, 314, 315, 317
Bonhomme Richard, Jones' ship, 297, 299
 Booker Washington, teacher, 353
 Boone, Daniel, 296
 Boston, Mass., British leave, 291, evacuation, 292, failed, 298, fire, 356, founded, 267, Franklin, 280, leave, 289, massacre, 285, near, 287, tea-party, 286, train from, 325
 Boston Tea-Party, 286
 Borneo, Holland owns, 249
 Bosphorus, strait narrow, 88, Crusaders cross, 201
 Bo-tree, center of earth, 90
 Bow, weapon, 10
 Bow Bells ring, Whittington, 219
 Braddock, General, dies, 281
 Bramanism, religion of India, 90, 190
 Brandenburg, province in Germany, 277
 Brandywine Battle, 295
 Brazil, colonize, 274, discovered, 238, except, 323
 Bridge-s, 334, 359, Brooklyn, 359, of Nations, 29, Roman, 145
 Bricks, baked, 35, sun dried, 26, wall of, 58
 Britain, Caesar in, 152, converts in, 164, long ago in, 174, occupy, 168, Roman culture in, 153, 160, wall in, 167
 Burmah, Asia, 170
 Burr, Aaron, vice-president and traitor, 320
 Byzantium, Constantinople, founded, 88, 91, name changed, 165
- C
- Cabinet, murder the, 350, the new, 306, under Washington, 305
 Cabots, father and son, 236
 Cadiz, Gades, 136
 Cadmus, a Phoenician, 63
 Cairo, museum, 53, 71, pyramids near, 51, sphinx near, 49
 Caesar, Julius, 141, 148, 153, 154, 155, 156, 160, 285
 Calais, town in France, siege, 215, English lose, 218
 Calhoun, orator in Congress, 323, 324
 California, armies take, 331, discovery of, 257, Drake in, 254, forty-niners, 335, gold in, 333, 334, missions, 274, population, 337
 Calvin, reformer, 247, 250
 Cambyzes, Persian king, 96, unlike Alexander, 126
 Canaan, land of, 55, sweeping through, 57, wall between, 58
 Canaanites, 40
 Canada, British in, 320, Catholics in, 275, cross to, 338, French in, 244, 276, give up, 283, Tories in, 304
 Canal-s, Egyptian, 49, of Panama, 240, planned, 365
 Cannae, battle of, 137
 Canonized, 161, 218
 Canterbury, tales, 213, 214, tomb at, 199
 Canute, king, 193, 194
 Cape Cod, 236, around, 248
 Cape of Good Hope, Prince Henry names it, 229, sails northward, 238, ship around, 241
 Cape Henry, 260
 Cape Verde, 228
 Capetian Kings, in France, 192

- Capitol, arrived at, 150, citadel, 119, U.S., 311, 312, 321
- Capua, town in Italy, 137, 139
- Cornac, in France, 118, 120
- Carolina, bays, 273, named, 250, Scotch-Irish, 336, settlers, 273
- Carolingian, dynasty, 175
- Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia, 287, 293
- Carthage, Dido founds, 135, driven to, 81, end of, 140, five powers, 142, found, 37, 82, near, 139, take, 141, treatment of, 143
- Carthaginian, lesson, 143, peace, 136, race, 135
- Cartier, 244
- Caspian Sea, between the, 127, to, 143
- Cathay, China, 227
- Cathedral, Aix-la-Chapelle, 175, built by, 190, Canterbury, 174, Milan, 220
- Catholic Countries, 224, in Canada, 275, Mary in, 253, not agree, 256, ruled the, 254
- Cato, against Carthage, 150, orator, 142
- Caxton, English printer, 224
- Celebes, to Holland, 249
- Celtic, descent, 184, inheritance, 336
- Central, Africa expedition, 69, Plateau, 143, America colonized by Spaniards, 323, delegates, 360, Asia, conquered, 172, family, 18, hordes, 117, America, Columbus' last journey, 238, priests, 274, Europe, home of, 18, hosts of, 368, pope, 185, various nations, 265, Italy, cities, 87, Park, obelisk, 71
- Chaldea, divided, 41, ruined, 87, the city of Ur, 54
- Châlons, battle, 168
- Champagne, 179
- Champlain, 244
- Charlemagne, 171, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 181, 184, 186, 188, 192
- Charles I of England, 285
- Charles II of England, 269
- Charles IX of France, 250
- Charles the Hammer, kills Saracen, 172, saves Europe, 174, victory, 173
- Charter, Great, 211, 212, new Charter, 262
- Chaucer, writer, 213, 214
- Chesapeake Bay, 260, 261, 262, 302
- Children, 9, crusade, 205
- Children of Israel, 54, 57, 58, 59, 60
- China, anarchy, 167, Cathay, 227, chickens from, 228, cities in, 236, emperor of, 91, furs for, 315, go to, 165, money in, 358, printing in, 170, river shores of, 24, showing, 229, trade with, 338
- Chinese, 14, 45, 91, 127, 165, 199, 213, 219, 223, 227, 358
- Chivalry, Knighthood, 182
- Christ, before, 48, 57, 81, 88, 89, 146, birth of, 6, 157, 159, charity, 165, entry of, 198, error in, 190, Gauls before, 118, intended, 245, 246, killed, 159, prophet, 171, 172, second coming, 189, serve, 202, teachings of, 160, 161, 166, to Calvary, 201
- Christian, architecture, 191, awe, 197, became, 240, beginning, 81, 82, 159, belong, 185, Canute a, 194, Charlemagne, 175, church, 272, count time, 172, dawn of era, 49, driven out, 203, era, 223, early, 170, Europe, 191, excommunicate 198, expect, 189, exposed, 163, faith, 190, household, 312, martyrs, 248, missionaries, 171, 174, monks, 165, persecution, 164, Roman, 161, Scots, 210, sure, 172, Turks and, 228, ways, 187, Whiteman, 336, world, 190
- Christianity, existed, 68, in Italy, 165, in Rome, 161, spread of, 159, 160, 164, 248, stamped out, 174, Turks against, 224, New World, 239
- Church, 165, 170, 174, 181, 191, 198, 211, 219, 220, 249, 252, 272, 307
- Cicero, orator, 150
- Cincinnati, Sons of, 303, 350
- Cincinnatus, 115, 303, Putnam, 116, 289
- Civil Service, 359, 360
- Civil War, 344-349, bring about, 339, damages, 357, debt, 347, 350,

- during, 352, end, 353, in Italy, 147, over, 348, veterans, 350
 Clarke and Lewis, fish, 316, journey, 315, Rocky Mountains, 327
 Clay, the orator, 323, 324
 Cleopatra, and Caesar, 154, queen of Egypt, 157, fled and died, 158
 Clermont in France, 200, steamboat, 319
 Cliffs, dwellings, 243, tombs in Egypt, 52
 Clovis, Frank king, 169
 Cockpit of Europe, The Balkans, 367
 Code, Caesar's, 155, debt, 156, Justinian, 170
 Coligny, French general, 257
 Cologne, town in Germany, 188
 Colonial Period, 329
 Colonies, claim all land, 279, debt piled up, 304, force obedience, 298, freedom claimed, 293, help from France, 297, payment, 284
 Colosseum, 162, 163
 Colossi, big statues, 74
 Colossus of Rhodes, Apollo, 132
 Columbia River, Lewis and Clarke on, 315, 316
 Columbus, Christopher, 41, 88, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 238, 240, 243, 245, 362, 365
 Commoners, 184
 Commons, House of, 212
 Communes, in France, 211
 Commonwealth of England, Cromwell, 269
 Compass, Chinese invent, 199
 Compromise, of 1820, 1850, 338
 Concord, battle, 287, 288, 292
 Confederates, army, 345, 346, Southerners, 344
 Confucius, Chinese teacher, 91
 Congo, River, 357
 Congress, 289, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 302, 303, 304, 305, 323, 325, 331, 343, 346, 358, 374
 Connecticut, colony, 267, 268
 Constantine, emperor, Christian, 165
 Constantinople, city, capital, 166, church, 170, 185, crusaders, 201, empire, 180, except, 367, fall of, 223, 224, five years after, 272, founded, 89, home of learned, 223, named, 165, obelisk at, 71, patriarch at, 185, rescue, 205, rule, 206, transported to, 103, Turks, 228
 Constitution, 302-332, allowed, 340, centennial of, 360
 Constitutional Convention, Carpenter's Hall, 304
 Constitutional Monarchy, France, 352
 Consul, elected yearly, 113, French, 314
 Continental Army, 289
 Continental Congress, 292
 Corinth, destruction of, 142, Diogenes at, 124
 Corinthian Capitals, invention of, 104
 Cornwallis, general, 202
 Cortez, conquest of Mexico, 242, treasures, 243
 Cotton Gin, machine, 311, 313
 Cranmer, English Reformer, 252
 Crassus, general, conquerer of Spartacus, 148, died, 153, funds, 157
 Crécy, battle of, France, 214
 Crimean War, French, English, Italians fight Russians, 338
 Croesus, 93, 95
 Cromwell, Oliver, Protector, 269, dies, 285
 Crown Prince, 370
 Crusade, finance, 211, the first, 201, many, 205, new, 371, the second and third, 203
 Cuba, 4, 231, 362-363
 Cubans, leader, 364, rebel, 363
 Curtius, sacrifice, 120, 121
 Custer, general, Indian war, 357
 Cyrus, Persian king, back to, 95, died, 96, enters Babylon, 86, visit to Media, 83
 Czar, king of Russia, 224, 226, murdered, 373
 Czeck, Bohemian, 246

D

- Dalmatia, coast, 203
 Damascus, crusaders take, 173
 Danes, 178, 187, 192, 193, 197
 Daniel, 61, 85, 86

Danish, murder, 193, raid, 186
 Danube, 163, 164, 188
 Dardanelles, Hellespont, 97
 Darius I, dies, 98, named by horse, 96, 97
 Darius II, death, 127, flees, 126
 Davis, Jefferson, 343
 Davis, discoverer of N. W. passage, 252
 Declaration of Independence, 293, 295, 297, 357
 Delaware River, 293
 Delian Confederacy, 101
 Delhi, Timur at, 220
 Delos, league of, 101
 Delphi, oracle, 76, 122, empire destroyed, 95
 Demosthenes, orator, 122
 Denmark, barbarians, 118, chief, 170, part of, 175, 355, triumphed over, 369
 Desert, 52, 56, 60
 De Soto, discovers Mississippi, 243
 Dewey, Commander of Navy, 363
 Diaz, navigator, 228
 Dictator, Roman ruler, 115
 Dido, founder of Carthage, 80, 135, heroine of epic, 81
 Discoveries, Conquests, Crusades, 192-206
 Domesday Book, registry of England, 196
 Douglas, 340, 342
 Drake, 254, 258
 Druids, stone buildings, 120, Caesar's, 153, priests, 118
 Duke, Mathilda wife of William, 196, of York, 270, ruler of Brandenburg, 277
 Dutch, buy from, 249, colonies, 270, 272, 273, dykes, 210, explorers, 263, found, 268, pilgrims lived with, 264, Prince, 272, reformer, 246, slaves from, 262, windmills, 214
 Dutch East India Company, 248
 Dynasty, royal family, 49, 51

E

Early Stone Age, 31, 62
 Ear of the King in Persia, 95

East, Americans, 327, capital of, 166, Christians, 185, conquest in, 127, culture in, 156, drowned in, 203, emperor, 205, India Co., 338, information, 232, learned from, 205, 223, of California, 334, plague from the, 107, trade with the, 274, 326, west to, 317, wise men from, 159, wonders in the, 154
 Edison, inventor, 357, 362
 Edward I, king of England, 213
 Edward III, king of England, 213, 214
 Edward VI, king of England dies, 252
 Edward VII, king of England dies, 367
 Egbert, Saxon king, 186
 Egypt, Alexander in, 126, buried in, 129, Christ in, 159, Cleopatra back in, 157, conquered, 172, fleshpots of, 60, from, 172, glory of, 69, Helen in, 74, history of, 41, in Africa, 29, invaded, 57, kings of, 45, murdered in, 154, Napoleon in, 314, pursues to, 158, ruled in, 97, search in, 51, Solon in, 93, story told, 87, sun in, 88, temples in, 71, Turks in, 228, twin culture, 31, wall of, 58, wonderful prosperity in, 78, wonders of, 49
 Egyptian-s, arrival of, 88, belief of, 50, 53, 58, book of dead, 40, borrowed alphabet, 38, built houses, 30, 32, columns, 103, east to west, 88, fished, 32, galleys, 158, inscriptions, 33, left alone, 31, peasants, 69, priests, 59, 69, pyramids, 52, rise of, 96, sculptor, 72, Solon, 93, visiting the, 32, year, 155
 Elector, in Germany, 277
 Elizabeth, queen of England, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258
 Emancipation Proclamation, 346, 347
 Emperor, Caesar, 158, Charlemagne, 176, Constantine, 165, 170, Constantinople, 201, eastern, 184, 204, empress, 265, 369, Germany, 211, 222, Holy Roman, 310, Kaiser, 369, Nero, 161, of Austria, 314, 352, of France, 317, one hundred

- days, 318, one west, 165, origin of, 42, seven electors, 277, suffered, 219, three, 365, two, 166
- Empire of France, 352, of Spain, 243
- England, Anglesland, 186, attack, 317, belonged to, 253, Boer War with, 365, book of, 196, bound for, 371, boundary of, 210, Caesar's, 152, changes in, 222, cities in, 189, concluded in, 321, conquest, 193, 315, Danes raid, 192, 193, defend, 257, Elizabeth of, 258, favor, 338, Franklin in, 280, free from, 307, handkerchief in, 254, hatred in, 316, heroes in, 187, Huguenots in, 275, in, 197, iron and tin in, 37, king of, 195, 203, 204, 215, 260, 269, known in, 153, Mayflower to, 266, notice to, 289, petition, 287, pilgrims, 264, primate of, 174, printing in, 224, Puritans in, 269, raid, 186, reformation in, 252, return to, 261, Romans in, 160, ruin, 267, rule, 202, 256, sailed for, 236, saved, 257, seize, 211, tales in, 213, tobacco, 262, towns, 253, trade with, 284, twenty years, 301, war in, 212, wealth, 256
- English, army, 216, art and literature, 257, barons refuse, 211, 213, beaten by, 318, Black Prince, 214, came, 258, character, 196, coin, 252, colonies, 254, 261, 273, converts, 263, cross from, 267, discoverers, 236, drove out the, 218, emigrate, 365, execute Wallace, 213, fight, 338, first, 251, German, 271, Gibraltar to, 277, giving the, 215, 283, gold, 336, hated, 314, language, 18, 171, laws, 273, learned from, 265, letters, 38, literature, 253, mathematician, 282, money, 305, pilgrims, 199, 264, poetry, 214, princess, 272, Quakers, 271, right, 262, seamen, 250, sent vessels, 244, ships, 250, 263, 372, smoke, 262, sold to the, 217, speaking, 321, speech, 151, 197, tarts, 266, to Canada, 335, trading, 271, translating the Bible, 246, 250, vessels, 257, warships, 270, 286, 320
- Ephesus, city in Asia Minor, 97, temple at, 123
- Epirus, home of Pyrrhus, 132, 133
- Eric, the Red, discoverer of Vinland, 192
- Erie Canal, 322, 325
- Eternal City, Rome, 356
- Ethiopia, Alexander's empire to, 143
- Euphrates, Babylon on the, 41, followed the, 32, length of the, 24, northern, 220, Pompey on the, 150
- Europe, afoot in, 201, benefit to, 239, between, 94, brought, 205, changes in, 327, 335, clear idea, 228, 239, coalition of, 317, cockpit, 367, compass, 199, 200, conquer, 98, disturbances in, 367, elephants in, 133, events in, 202, fish in, 244, government of, 77, grain in, 262, happenings in, 282, in, 257, India to, 132, influence, 274, introduction to, 129, invasion of, 117, 118, Mohammed in, 220, master of, 317, model republic, 210, named after, 63, Northwestern, 365, over, 224, plague in, 215, powerful, 254, preached, 203, reform of, 247, rejoiced, 321, sacred places, 199, saved in, 174, seized in, 371, settled in, 170, settling of, 120, Spain in, 243, spread, 323, to, 97, Turkey in, 223, wars in, 197, 283, 368, western, 153
- European-s, and, 368, change, 317, coin, 206, colonies, 239, countries, 274, 310, 324, courts, 367, language, 116, learn alphabet, 38, minds, 245, more, 320, nations, 120, 236, 374, not come, 352, rulers, 323, sail, 244, see, 246
- F
- Fabian policy, delay, 137, 139
- Fairs, 170, 171, Alfred encouraged, 188, sold, 189
- Fall, of Constantinople, 223, of Eve, 54
- Families, debt, 4, human, 18
- Fatherland, German, 271, 355
- Ferdinand, canal of, 365, daughter of, 252, king of Spain, 243
- Feudalism, on oath, 179, 180

- Field, Cyrus, lays cable, 353
 Fire, 11, 14, 20, 26, 280
 First Consul, Napoleon, 314
 First Continental Congress, 287
 Florence, town in Italy, 71, 206, Medicis in, 226
 Florida, course altered, 231, discovered, 240, from, 243, in, 250, purchased, 324, tip of, 324, Tories in, 304
 Forty-Niners, 335, 336
 Forum, public place in Rome, chasm on, 120, 121, new, 155, public place, 115, senators slain, 119
 France, aid Russia, 370, barbarians, 89, boats from, 244, both treaties of, 374, brother of king, 206, Caesar conquers, 152, change in, 335, Charlemagne, 186, churches, 172, cities, 189, Clermont, 200, constitution of, 308, converts in, 164, 246, court of, 303, culture in, 153, Eastern, 166, English out of, 218, feudalism end, 309, fight, 211, 216, foes of, 314, Franklin in, 295, Gauls in, 118, free from, 185, gets name of, 169, gives, 283, governed by, 315, help, 297, immigrants, 365, important, 274, infidels in, 246, king of, 250, language of, 196, metric system in, 305, over, 369, pirates afraid, 178, poorer, 275, pope in, 220, possession of, 215, powerful, 275, reformer in, 246, renaissance, 226, returned, 298, 314, 321, revolution in, 307, robbed, 194, ruled all, 175, sent Maximilian, 352, separate, 184, sixteen provinces in, 215, south-eastern part, 166, take possession of, 244, unprotected, 371, war against, 310, 347, we reach, 373
 Francis I, king of France, 247
 Franco-Prussian War, 347, 355-356
 Frankland, 169
 Franklin, in France, 295, inventions, 281, introduces Jones, 298, named for calendar of, 297, returned, 303, shows Congress, 279, youth, 280
 Frank-s, descent, 184, fight Huns, 168, kingdom, 201, language, 184, Merovius a, 169, noble, 172
 Frederick, the Great, 282
 Freedom and War, 207-221
 French, army, 178, brothers, 214, chemist, 316, claim, 279, contribute, 226, courage of, 218, crown, 215, crusade, 200, 201, daring of, 275, dictated, 227, farmers, 283, failed, 265, fight, 338, fleet, 302, guard, 371, heroine of, 218, hesitation, 295, in Canada, 277, in Jerusalem, 201, king of, 185, 202, 211, 215, language, 184, 196, 197, massacre of, 206, museum, 251, New Orleans, 276, officer, 278, retake Calais, 253, senate of, 317, sent vessels, 244, shot down, 281, station, 271, steal, 372, submit, 356, time, 307, town, 196, translation of Bible, 250, twice in, 226, war with, 286, withdrew, 352
 Frenchman-men, another, 244, La Salle a, 275, 276, Papin a, 318, peopled by, 276, reads hieroglyphics, 331
 French republic, first, 310, 314, third, 358
 Fuggers of Augsburg, 207
 Fulton, inventor of steamboat, offers to Napoleon, 317, steamboat, 319, 322
- G
- Gades, Cadiz, founded, 136
 Gaels, or Gauls, 197
 Galileo, inventor, 249, 250
 Gallic language, 184, liberty, 152
 Garfield, 20th president, assassinated, 359
 Gates of Thermopylae, Greece, 100
 Gaul, arrive, 117, blue-eyed, 90, Caesar in, 148, 151, Caesar conquers, 152, eight campaigns, 153, enters, 118, fought, 168, into, 169, Marseilles founded in, 89, through, 136, 146, young, 119
 Geneva, Switzerland, 247
 Genoa, cities, 194, Columbus born at, 229, commerce, 214, war with, 227
 Georges, four, 277, George II, 277, George III, 285, petition, 287,

- the Hessians, 293, Bermuda under, 304
- Georgia, named, 273, Colony, 277
- German-s, agents, 373, army, 317, belief, 203, besieged, 356, Bible into, 247, 250, Caesar against, 151, confederacy, 355, emigrants, 359, emperors, 219, empire, 369, force, 356, forests, 159, in Italy, 175, kings, 277, language, 184, mind, 369, nobles, 224, people, 273, prepared, 371, princes, 207, reformers, 246, soldiers, 293, steal, 372, succeeded, 188, sunk, 372, talk, 271, tribes, 167, 169, towns, 207
- Germantown, colony, 271, 272
- Germany, asks peace, 373, back to, 151, barbarians, 118, believed, 369, border of, 277, broke treaty, 371, cease, 355, civilized, 188, conquered, 175, culture, 153, divided, 271, 274, emperor, 211, escape, 370, fairs in, 170, forests in, 174, Hapsburgs in, 222, Hohenstaufen in, 202, Huguenots in, 275, immigrants, 365, invited, 372, king of, 203, known in, 152, Luther in, 247, madness in, 372, peace with, 374, prisoner in, 204, Romans in, 161, ruled by, 243, seized by, 226, separate, 184, tribes, 186
- Gessler, Tyrant of Swiss, 208, 209
- Gettysburg, 346
- Gibraltar, 37, 88
- Gladiators, 147, 150, 165
- God, True, bade Moses, 59, chosen by, 338, Christian, 169, judged by, 183, murmurs against, 60, priest of, 55, sent Joan, 216, serve, 170, slavery, 339, temple of, 78, ten words of, 59, under, 346, worship, 56
- God-s, Heathen, boundary, 109, called 8, dawn, 69, Egyptian, 49, of Greece, 62, Heaven, 91, one, 118, sea, 63, sky, 62, 103, 126, sun, 76, 132, war, 82
- Goddess, of Beauty, 81, of the Hearth, 82, of Wisdom, 64
- Gold, fever, 335, 336, metal, 19
- Gold and Slavery, 333-351
- Golden, Age, 76, age of American literature, etc., 329, 331, age of English literature, 253, Pelopidas, 111, statue, 86
- Goths, conversion of the, 174, invasion of the, 166
- Government, not interfere, 323, 352, Lee's speech, 350, of the people, 346, our, 306, 307, 372, places, 359, schools, 357, warship, 363
- Grand Army of the Republic, G. A. R., 350
- Grant, Ulysses, S., commander of army, 345-346, memoirs, 359-360, murder, 357, surrender of Lee, 348, 349, twice President, 18th, 353-354
- Gray, Captain in Oregon, 327
- Great Britain, arbitration, 357, monasteries, 174, Victoria dies, 365, vikings in, 178, war of 1812, 320
- Great Council, 212
- Great War, 1914, beginning, 368, 370, end, 374, pray to Joan, 218, refer to, 166, 205, 220
- Greece, arts in, 78, Thebans masters of, 120, capital of, 63, cities, 65, converts, 164, debt, 91, defenders of, 100, end of, 142, finest of, 101, gods speak in, 76, Great, 77, invasion of, 97, 110, masters of, 272, mistress of, 111, north of, 122, owe to, 75, parts of, 67, plainest, 104, Pompey conquered, 154, possession of, 224, punish, 98, size of, 62, strongest city, 123, Visigoths in, 166, visited, 107
- Greek-s, allies, 100, architects, 102, 145, army, 127, attacks, 97, books, 106, 130, church, 185, 226, cities, 94, 101, 122, 129, 133, city-states, 77, colonies, 88, 109, colonists, 77, 78, columns, 104, conquers, 124, convinces, 123, culture, 133, 226, emigrating, 89, 365, 367, engine toy, 318, examples, 105, fight, 110, force, 100, fire myth, 11, games, 66, 147, gods, 112, heroes, 74, historian, 85, inherited, 336, in Alexandria, 131, king, 76, language, 75, love of beauty, 65, name, 165, plays, 163, poet, 72, return-

ing, 110, Rosetta Stone, 33, settle, 90, simple, 272, statues, 106, taught, 223, temple, 146, time, 68, traded with, 118, tragedy, 191, traitor, 100, united, 142, unbelievable, 106, war, 106, war prisoners, 144, world, 130
 Green Mountain Boys, 289, 290
 Gregory, a pope, 174
 Guilds, 183, 189
 Gulf of Mexico, 315

H

Hadrian, emperor, 164
 Hale, Nathan, 291, 292
 Hamburg, city in Germany, 207
 Hamilton, Alexander, 306, killed, 320
 Hammurabi, first lawgiver, 42, laws, 45
 Hanging Gardens, Babylon, 85
 Hannibal, Carthaginian General, at Cannae, 138, death, 140, hates Romans, 137, rafts, 138, Zama, 139
 Hanover, English Georges, 277
 Hansa League, in Germany 207, 210
 Hapsburg, royal dynasty, 222
 Harding, 29th President, 374
 Hargreaves, spinning, 282, 283, 286
 Harrison, Benjamin, 326
 Harvard College, 207
 Harvey, circulation of blood, 282, 286
 Hastings, battle, 196
 Hawaiian Islands, 364
 Hebrews, Jews, 54, Alexander, 126, Bible, 56, Golden Age, 79, masons, 190, people, 161
 Hegira, era of Moslems, 172
 Helena, Mother of Constantine, 165
 Hellenic World, Greece, 130
 Hellespont, strait, Alexander on, 125, by way of, 97
 Helvetia-ns, Switzerland, 151, 207
 Henry, Patrick, 284, 285
 Henry V, of England, 215
 Henry IV, of France, 274
 Henry, the Fowler, defense against, 188, the navigator, 228, 233
 Henry VIII, defender of the Faith, 252, protestant, 253
 Herculaneum, 163, 164
 Hercules, pillars of, 37, 64
 Herkimer, General, Oriskany, 294
 Hermann, German leader, 159, death of, 161
 Herod, 159
 Herodotus, historian, 106
 Heroic Age in Greece, 64, 65
 Hessians, Germans, 293
 Hierarchy, order, 180
 Hieroglyphics, 32
 High Priest, in Palestine, 126
 Hindus, 45, 90, 190
 Hindustan Stations, 271
 Hippocrates, medicine, 107
 Hippocratic Oath, 107
 Hiram, king of Tyre, 79, 190
 Hohenstaufen, royal family, 202
 Hohenzollern, royal family, 277
 Holland, all, 175, Austria seizes, 226, believe, 250, conquering, 152, government, 153, 249, Huguenots, 275, immigrants, 365, learned, 271, marshes, 174, 207, oil paint, 225, pilgrims, 264, spectacles, 226, tribes settle, 146, vessel of, 248, windmills in, 214.
 Holstein, cow, 4
 Homer, epics, 75, Iliad, 74, 87, poems of, 107, Ulysses, 74, written, 75
 Horatius, Roman hero, 113, 114
 House of Burgesses, founded in Va., 262, 263, speech, 284, of Commons, 212, of Lords, 212, of Lancaster, 222, of Representatives, Congress, 304
 Houston, Texas, 330
 Hudson, discovers river, 263, dies, 264
 Hudson, Bay, Hudson dies, 264, discovered, 258, River, along, 270, discovery, 263, 268, Valley control, 291, 296
 Huguenots, Carolina, 273, colony, 250, massacre, 251, once a, 275
 Hungarians, country of, 168, immigrate, 367
 Hundred Years' War, England and France, 214, 215, 216

Huns, barbarians, burgs in Germany, 188, 189, Châlons, battle, 168

I

Iberian, Spain, 140, peninsula, 178
Iceland, discovered, 192, visited, 197
Iliad, Homer's epic, 72, 81, poems, 75, war of, 73

Illinois, Mormons in, 328, State, 296
India, Buddha in, 90, 91, Chinese in, 165, cities in, 236, converts in, 164, East India rule, 341, era in, 170, establishment in, 229, further on, 229, give to, 283, goods to, 132, go to, 128, lettuce in, 228, Moslem rule in, 271, numbers in, 172, passage to, 241, reach, 238, 239, river establishments in, 24, road to, 233, 252, sail to, 244, sea route to, 129, take, 314, Timur in, 220, to, 42, trade with, 234, 236, 248, Turks in, 198, visited, 241, war in, 338, west to, 233

Indian-s, ambush, 281, arrowheads, 10, attack, 265, called, 231, captive, 258, charities, 329, convert, 367, 274, country, 21, disguised, 286, dances, 20, driven away, 192, fairly, 271, force, 279, friends, 261, from the, 270, furs, 316, ill-treat the, 260, 262, liked the, 283, North Western, 320, Oregon, 326, princes, 338, princesses, 262, raids, 296, rebellion, 341, slaves, 234, speak, 244, spears, 10, stolen, 315, taught, 334, trouble, 269, 270, 307, unfairly treated, 357

Infantry, foot-soldiers, 149

Infidels, unbelievers, 205

Inquisition, 248

Inventions and Discoveries, 222-257

Ireland, famine, 336

Iron Age, 19

Isaac, sacrifice, 57

Isabella of France, 214, Isabella of Spain, 243, daughter of, 252, grandson of, 248, great-grandson of, 253

Isaiah, prophet, Book of Bible, 61

Islam, Moslem, 171

Israel, captivity of, 83, Kingdom of, 79

Israelites, Hebrews, 54, govern the, 78, in desert, 60, multiply, 157, out of Egypt, 59, remain, 58, resistance of the, 83

Italians, Alaric with the, 166, citizenship, 133, 146, cities, 194, 226, contributions, 226, emigrants, 365, lynched, 360, Marconi, 362, pilots, 238, pride of, 165, universities, 249

Italy, Ally of, 370, arrived in, 81, broken all, 373, Charlemagne in, 176, claims in, 361, Columbus applies to, 230, common, 157, converts, 161, defend, 167, divided, 274, Florence in, 226, Germans rule, 188, Greeks in, 78, into, 136, 146, invade, 140, march through, 147, part of, 194, plundered, 178, Pyrrhus in, 133, rebellion, 356, ruled by, 243, southern, 77, sweeping, 119, tragic, 206, united, 358, Vandals in, 169, work in, 248

Ivan, 214, the third, 224

J

Jackson, Andrew, general, 7th President, Battle of New Orleans, 321, Oregon Indians, 326, president, 325

Jamaica, 21, 234

James I, king of England, 260

Jamestown, burned, 269, colonists, 262, founded, 260, 264

Japan, Buddhist religion, 91, chickens from, 228, cities of, 236, location of, 229, ruler of, 338, trade, 337

Japanese, trade treaty, 337, war, 366

Jason, Golden Fleece, 78, thrilling story, 65, tragedy, 105

Java, 4, Batavia founded, 248, 249

Jefferson, Thomas, 3d President, describes wonders of West, 316, writes declaration, 293

Jerusalem, Palestine, Alexander at, 126, besieged, 85, church at, 165, escort into, 202, into, 199, return

to, 162, ruled, 78, Saracen, 200,
sent back, 195, taken, 161, 201,
203, 205, temple at, 79, 80
Jewish, captains, 85, kingdoms, 79,
kings, 78, prophets, 80
Jews, or Israelites, 54, back to
Jerusalem, 95, exiled, 162, Guilds,
190, hates the, 99, immigrants,
367, not vote, 267, persecuted,
159, 212, rebel, 161, scattered, 164
Joan of Arc, heroine of France, 215-
218
Joffre, French commander, Marne,
371, troops from America, 373
John, English king, 211, 212
Jones, John Paul, commander,
battle, 297, 298, 299, 301
Johnson, Andrew, 17th President,
350
Joseph, in Egypt, 57, foster-father,
159
Judah, kingdom in Israel, 79
Judea, Bethlehem of, 159
July, Caesar's name, 155
Jupiter, statue of, 103, 150, Woden
is, 151
Justinian, emperor of Rome, 170
Jutes, ruled, 168, 186

K

Kaiser, German emperor, 356, 369
Karnak Temple, Egypt, 70, 71, 72
Key, Francis Scott, composer, 321
Khan, Kublai, 227
Knights, errant, 182, Grail, 181, 188,
Hospitaler, 202, Templar, 202
Knox, Scotch reformer, 256
Koran, Moslem Bible, 172, 173
Korea, Asia, 91

L

Labor Unions, 183
La Bastille, France, 308
Labrador, 192, 236
Labyrinth of Crete, 45, 48
Lafayette, Marquis of, came, 295,
297, revisits, 324, sent to Va., 302,
tomb of Washington, 373
Lake Dwellers, 15, 17, 236
Lancaster and York, in England,
222

Lao-Tze, Chinese teacher, 91
La Rabida, monastery, Spain, 229,
230
La Rochelle, France, 275
La Salle, explorer, 275, 276
Latin, assassin of Lincoln, 349,
calendar, 160, classics, 160, in-
herited, 336, lectures in, 249,
writings, 184
Latium, 81
League, of Delos, 101, of Nations,
105, 373-374, of States, 105
Lee, Richard Henry, proclaimed,
292
Lee, Robert E., General of Confed-
eracy, advice, 350, dies, 351,
head, 345, surrender, 348, 349
Leipzig, battle, 318
Leonidas, Greek Captain, 100
Lepidus, triumvirate, 157
Lewis and Clarke, Expedition, 315,
316, 327
Lexington, battle, 287, 288, 292
Leyden, Holland, pilgrims, 264
Libby, Confederate prison, 350
Liberty, the bell, 293, 295, call, 287,
safe, 289, Webster, 325
Lictors, 12, Roman attendants, 149
Lief the Lucky, sees Vinland, 192
Lincoln, Abraham, 16th President,
assassination, 349, buried, 350,
debates, 342, election, 343, Gettys-
burg, 346, inauguration, 346,
north candidate, 340, 13th amend-
ment, 347, volunteers, 346,
youth, 341, lions, 8
Lisbon, Portugal, 229
Livingstone, English explorer, 356,
357, 358
Lombards, Germans in N. Italy,
176
London, docks, 219, example, 339,
Franklin at, 280, obelisk, 71
Lorraine, Province of France, bone
of contention, 184, Franco-
Prussian War, 356, Joan of Arc,
215-216
Louis XIII, XIV, of France, 275,
Louis XVI, balloon, 304, brothers,
321, Jones introduced, 298, pris-
oners, 310, revolution, 307, wife
of, 309

Louisiana, explored, 316, named, 276, purchase, 316, 323
 Luther, Martin, reformer, 246, 247
 Lutheran Church, 247, 271
 Luxor, temple in Egypt, 70, 71, 72
 Lycurgus, lawgiver of Sparta, 66

M

Macedonia-n, one of five, 142, Philip of, 122
 Madison, James, 4th President, author of the constitution, 305, War of 1812, 320
 Magellan, circumnavigation, 244, strait of, 241
 Magna Carta, American rights, 284, English rights, 211
 Magyars, Hungarians, 164
 Maine, founded, 267, 278, warship, 363
 Mainz, city of Rome, 188, stolen press, 224, 225
 Malta, Island, Bonaparte takes, 314
 Manhattan Island, 270, 363
 Manila Bay, Philippines, 363
 Maracaibo, Lake, S. America, 236
 Marathon, battle of, 98, hundred years since, 119, races, 98, since, 109
 Marco Polo, Venetian traveler, 227, book, 232
 Marius, Roman hero, 146, 147
 Marie Antoinette, wife of Louis XVI, balloon, 304, brother, 314, executed, 309, Jones introduced, 298, prisoner, 310
 Marc Antony, Roman triumvirate, 157
 Marne, Battle, 371
 Marseilles, France, founded, 89, 91
 Marion, the Swamp Fox, 298, 300, 301
 Martyrs, Christian, 164, courage, 166
 Mary I, queen of England, Bloody, 253, Catholic, 253, Henry VIII's daughter, 252, II college in Va., 272; Stuart fled from Scotland, 256, left crown, 253, no right, 254, her son, 260
 Maryland Catholics, 269

Mason guilds, 190
 Massachusetts, pilgrims come, 265, settle, 266, Bay colony, 266, 267, 268, "we determine to die or be free," 289
 Mayflower, 264, 265, return, 266
 Maximilian, Mexican ruler, 352
 McKinley, 25th President, Spanish-American War, 362-363
 Mecca, capital of Arabia, 172
 Medea, wife of Jason, 105
 Medes, Cyrus visits, 83, laws of, 99, rules, 84
 Median Princess, Cyrus son of, 83
 Medicis, Florence, 226
 Mediterranean Nations, 62-83
 Mediterranean Sea, all parts of the, 228, below the, 55, bordered, 158, came to, 32, 36, entered, 170, fingers into, 31, Marseilles, 90, mistress, 142, Nile into, 30, sailed into, 74, sea ports, 126, setting sun, 29, taught, 94, through, 88, to, 184, tradition, 36, 45, way to the, 56
 Memnon, Egypt, 69, 72
 Mesopotamia, debt to, 44, end of, 87, from, 57, history of, 41, inhabitants of, 35, twin culture of, 31, wonders of, 24
 Mesopotamian-s, borrowed alphabet, 38, enamel, 251, 3 followed the Euphrates, 32, king, 55, man-fish visited, 25, river, 29, the sky, 54, trade, 326, travel, 36
 Messina, in Sicily, 77
 Mexico, City, 242, 251, printing press, 331
 Mexico, Aztecs in, 25, boundary guard, 368, colonies, 274, 323, conquered, 241, 242, enter, 331, excited trouble, 373, explorer, 243, land bought from, 333, possession, 243, throne of, 352, through, 335, war, 330
 Mexican, Utah under, 329, 330, war, 335
 Midas, king of Lydia, 93
 Middle Ages, 174-191
 Middle Ages, 163, beginning, 169, debt, 182, 185, 191, 200, dwelling, 320, life in, 183, convents and

monasteries in, 171, painting in the, 222, planters like lords in, 325
 Middle Land Dwellers, bricks, 29, characters, 27, coffins, 26, printing, 28, temples, 28
 Miletus, city in Asia Minor, 97, 126
 Minos, king of Crete, palace, 47, 48, throne room, 46
 Minotaur, Minos' bull, 45, 48, 65
 Minute Men, Revolutionary War, 287, 288, 289, 292
 Missions founded, 243, 333, 334
 Mississippi R., French claim, 279, deepened, 361, Eads Bridge, 359, extent, 315, forts along, 277, mouth of, 276, reached, 243, La Salle, 275, source of, 316, west of, 283
 Missouri, Compromise, 1820, 323, 324, State, 328
 Mohammed, life, 171, 172, 173, 190, religion, 220, 224
 Moluccas, Islands, 228, to Holland, 249
 Monitor, Ericsson's ship, 346
 Monmouth, Battle of, 296
 Montezuma, king of Mexico, 242, died, 243
 Monroe, James, 5th President, 322
 Monroe Doctrine, "Hands off!" 323, 324, 352
 Montgomery, First confederate capital, 343
 Moors, away, 230, Cid fought the, 202, crossed strait, 172, of Spain, 178
 Moorish, architect, 202, pirates, 320
 Morgan, hero in war, 298, 301
 Mormons, 328, 319, 331
 Morse, Samuel, inventor of telegraph, 330
 Moscow, founded in Russia, 202, to, 220
 Moses, Jewish lawgiver, 58, 59, died, 60, prophet, 172
 Moslem, architects, 190, 223, Bible, 172, caliphs, 173, hands of, 204, increase of, 198, rule of, 175, 205, ruler, 271
 Mount Vernon, Washington's home, 278, 305, 310, 312
 Mycenae, town in Greece, 64, 74

N

Naples, in Italy, 77, conquerors, 226
 Napoleon I, beaten at Waterloo, 321, born, 314, steamboat offered to, 319, soldiers of, 32, time of, 314, 352, to end, 318
 Napoleon III, 355
 Neapolis, Naples, 77
 Nebuchadnezzar, 85, 86, 87
 Negroes, charity, 329, 352, 353
 Nelson, admiral, English, 314
 Nero, Roman emperor, 161
 Nestor, hero in Iliad, 73
 Netherlands in America ruled by, 243, work in, 248
 New Amsterdam, New York, 270, 272
 New England Puritans, birth of, 339, colonies, 266, families, 267, from, 311, Indians, 269, land in, 264, more in, 270, parishes, 267, settlers, 268, welcome, 269
 New Jersey, 270, retreat, 293
 New Mexico, State, enter, 274, obtained, 331, Santa Fé, 251
 New Netherland, New York, colonies, 272, Manhattan in, 263, prosperity, 270
 New Orleans, battle of, 321, exposition of, 359, founded, 276, give up, 283, Italians in, 360, Lincoln twice in, 341, molasses, 4, ran to, 319
 Newton, Sir Isaac, 282, 286
 New World, colonies, 272, Columbus, 238, inquisition in the, 248, ruled by, 243, share of, 274, slavery, 240, treasures of, 243, visit the, 252, 262, 264, wealth of, 244
 New York, André to, 298, back to, 296, city of, 292, driven out of, 293, evacuated, 302, fair, 339, 341, fire, 326, forces from, 294, 302, largest city, 356, massacre, 285, New Amsterdam, 270, obelisk, 71, Riverside, 360, secure, 291, steamboat, 319, Washington arch, 360, way, 305
 Niagara, Falls, 244, fight, 293
 Nile, River, Egypt, banks of, 71,

- connects, 132, description, 29, 38,
destroyed fleet, 314, mouth of,
126, no tributaries, 30, papyrus
on, 33, rafts, 51, stones carried on,
35, to the, 143, Valley, 49, 52,
worship of, 32
- Nineveh, capital of Assyria, 41, cliff-
like walls, 43, end of, 83, fall of,
84, 85, 88, 89, not rebuilt, 42,
prophecy, 80, 10,000 Greeks
pass ruins, 110
- Normandy, given to Normans, 185,
ruler of, 195, seizes, 211
- Normans, appear, 185, conquest,
210, French, 197, in arms, 195, in
France, 194, landed, 186
- Norse-men, conquests, 192, dis-
covery, 192, French king gives,
178, pirates, 178, transplant, 197
- North America-n, 279, 291, 324, 325,
338, 345, 360, candidate, 240,
coast, 192, 258, explored, 233.
French culture, 244, introduced
slavery, 263, N. W. passage, 243-
244, 263, people, 329, reached, 251,
slavery, 339, surrender to, 296,
volunteers, 345, 348, west, 303
- North Carolina, 305
- Norway, chief, 170, conquered, 220,
prosperous, 218
- O
- Obelisks, from Egypt, 71
- Octavius, Caesar's nephew, emperor,
157, 158
- Odyssey, Homer's poem about
Ulysses, 75
- Œdipus, drama of, 65, 105
- Oglethorpe, founder of 13th colony,
273, 277
- Ohio, along, 277, Cincinnati, 117,
forts, 279, 4 Mormons, plant corn,
307, 6 railroads, 325, River, 275,
8 to the, 322
- Oklahoma, settled, 360
- Olympia, temple at, 103, race at,
120
- Olympian Jupiter, Phidias carved,
103
- Olympic Games, Alcibiades at, 109,
best athletes, 68, celebrated, 103,
every 4 years, games, 106, vic-
tory, 123
- Olympiads, 4 years, 68
- Oracle, the "blind," 88, destroyed,
95, the "king," 76, the "wooden
walls," 100
- Oregon, arrived, 327, Indian Mis-
sion, 326, ship, 363
- Orleans, France, 216
- Oriskany, Battle of, 249
- P
- Pacific Ocean, cables, 353, calm,
241, coast, 337, cross, 363, dis-
covered, 240, limit, 327, see the,
254, 315
- Palestine, 159, 161, 162, conquered,
172, quarreled, 204
- Palmer, 198, 199, room, 199
- Palos, harbor in Spain, 230, 231,
return, 233
- Panama, Isthmus of, Balboa at, 240,
treasure, 254, Canal at, 365-366,
debt, 368
- Pan-American Congress, 360
- Pan-German Scheme, 371
- Papyrus, paper plant in Egypt, 33,
34, 35, 59
- Parchment, skin, 33
- Paré, French doctor, 251
- Paris, France, Bastille in, 215, be-
siege, 185, capital, 71, 169, crown,
205, defend, 355-356, excite, 308,
in triumph, 356, near, 371, re-
covered, 218, 3 weeks to, 370
- Parliament, divorce of Henry VIII,
252, organize, 212, punish, 286,
represent, 284, Stamp Act, 285
- Paros, Island, 127
- Parthenon, built, 102, destroyed,
271
- Patricians, nobles, 113, rights of,
146
- Patrick, 174
- Paul, disciple of Christ, 156, 161
- Peasants, 188
- Peloponnesian War, 108
- Peloponnesus, in Greece, 101, fugi-
tives, 106, league, 142
- Pennsylvania, Dutch, 271, king
gives, 270, pioneers, 336

- Penn, William, colony, 271, obtained, 270, Quakers, 272
- Pergamus, Asia Minor, 142
- Pericles, age of, 105, 111, Athenian statesman, 101, died, 108, 115, family of, 107, friend of, 106, portrait of, 103, time of, 104
- Perry, admiral, Japan, 337
- Persepolis, Persia, burned, 128, city, 101
- Pershing, General, Great War, 373
- Persia, attack, 101, bridegroom, 227, conquered, 172, Darius, 96, king ruled, 95, ten thousand Greeks, 227, withdraw to, 101, Zoroaster, 90
- Persian and Spartan Wars, 97-112
- Persian-s, across, 40, ambassador, 97, army, 100, 107, 125, centers, 127, Chaldea nearest, 41, conquest, 97, contributed, 91, destroy Nineveh, 84-85, empire, 117, 143, gulf, 24, 25, inhabitants, 111, king, 95, 126, laws, 99, murdered by, 109, one people, 129, palace burned, 128, religion, 90, rule, 87, 96, soldiers, 95, south, 83, surprised Babylon, 87, ten thousand Greeks, 110
- Peru, South America, conquest of, 243, treasures of, 254
- Peter, Christ's disciple, 200, the Great, czar, 271, the hermit, 161, 200
- Pharaoh, afraid, 58, connects, 132, daughter of, 59, dynasty, 49, 69, explorers, 87, grows strong, 58, mummies, 53, pyramid, 51, 52, 12th dynasty, 57, 70
- Philadelphia, back to New York, 296, British in, 295, Carpenter's Hall, 287, centennial, 357, congress, 292, constitution, 304, Declaration of Independence, 297, flag, 294, Franklin, 280, near, 271, Washington at, 310
- Philip VI, king of France, 203, of Macedonia, 122, 123, 124, 142, of Spain, 253, 254, 256
- Philippi, Battle, 157
- Philippines, dies at, 364, Magellan, 241
- Phoenicia, Alexander, through, 126, king of, 79, land of palms, 36, sweeping through, 57
- Phoenician-s, alphabet, 38, at sea, 40, brought, 37, city, 63, founded, 136, gather murex, 39, race, 135, shore, 62, star, 39, story, 87, 88, trade, 195, traded, 45
- Picts, Scotland, 164, 167, 210
- Pike, General, explorer, 316, Pike's Peak, 316
- Pilgrims, Christian, 198, fathers, 264, land, 265, near by, 199
- Puritans, 264, settle, 268, starve, 299
- Pizarro, conquers Peru, 243
- Plague, 106, 107
- Plantagenet, English king, 202
- Plebeians, common people, 113, rebel, 114, 115, rights of, 146
- Plymouth, arrived, 257, found, 268, governed, 266, landed, 264
- Poitiers, battle, 215
- Poland, half of, 282, immigrants, 365, Ivan seizes, 226, king, 271
- Polo, Marco, book, 228
- Pompeii, Italy, 163, 164
- Pompey, Roman General, defeated, 154, fighting, 151, general, 148, pirates, 150, Romans want, 153, statue, 156
- Ponce de Leon, 240
- Pontiac, Indian, 283
- Popes, crusade, 246, divorce, 252, prisoner, 356
- Porto Rico, abandoned, 364, molasses, 4, started, 241
- Portugal, Columbus in, 229, first to reach, 233, fought in, 318, rejoiced, 238, slavery, 228, vain attempts to, 230
- Portuguese, debt, 232, discovery, 238, fleet, 238, navigator, 241, regret, 233, seamen, 228, trade, 274
- Prescott, General, 291
- President, 266, confederate, 343, U.S., Adams, 2d, 313, Coolidge, 30th, 374, Garfield, 20th, 359, Harding, 29th, 374, Jefferson, 3d, 316, Lincoln, 16th, 343, 345, 348, 350, Madison, 4th, 320, Van Buren, 8th, 326, Washington, 1st, 305, 314, 310, Wilson, 28th, 368

- Prince-s, Charles, 269, Henry the Navigator, 228, in the Tower, 222, of Wales, 213, 215
 Printing, 27, debt, 226, invention, 223
 Prometheus, gift of fire, 105
 Promised Land, Palestine, 55, 56, 57, 59, 60
 Protestants, Elizabeth a, 252, guardianship of, 256, hymns of, 247, persecuted Catholics, 254, sister of, 253, Spanish prevent, 251, worship of, 275
 Prussia, army, 282, empire, 369, important, 350, kaiser, 356, rise, 277
 Prussian-s, 295, beaten by, 318
 Ptolemies, debt, 133, descendants of, 130, last of, 158, lighthouse, 131, name, 132
 Punic Wars, and Caesar, 135-156, beginning of, 142, faith, 139, Hannibal over Alps, 136, Sicily, 135, Zama, 139
 Puritan-s, colonies, 273, Dutch against, 270, founded, 270, in England, 269, men, 264, women, 266, welcome, 269
 Putnam, Israel, general, 289
 Pyramids, 51, 53
 Pyrenees, Mountains, 92, 172, 178
 Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, 132, 133
- Q
- Quaker, Colonies, 270, 273
 Quebec, Canada, attack, 294, battle at, 283, founding, 244, 245, from, 293, stands, 244
 Queen, Boadicea of Britain, 160, England, 254, 327, 365, France, 210, Scotland, 253, 256, Spain, 230, 231, 233, 236, 238, 239
- R
- Railroads, 325, transcontinental, 355
 Raleigh, English Colonizer, 258, 259
 Rameses the Great, Egypt, 69, 70, 71, 72
 Reconstruction and Immigration, 352-361
 Reed, Major Walter, 365, 366
 Reform-ers, -ation, 246, 247, 248, 252
 Reign of Terror, France, 310
 Renaissance, New Birth, 226
 Representative, Congress member, 304
 Republic-an, of Confederate States of America, 343, England, 219, France, 335, 352, 355, Germany, 373, Mexico, 352, Roman, 113, 500 years, 114, spirit, 148, 323
 Revere, Paul, ride, 287, 292
 Revolutions, in England, 269, in France, 307, 335, Gen.'s wife of, 311; in U.S., 313
 Revolutionary War, 117, 296-307, 350, 357, 373
 Rheims, France, 169, Joan in, 217
 Rhine River, boundary, 151, converts, 164, crossed, 169, forts, 188
 Rhode Island, 267, 268, constitution, 305
 Rhodes, 132, 133
 Richard, Lion Heart, 203, 204, 211
 Richmond, Va., 343, 348
 Rio Grande River, 331
 Rocky Mountains, Rockies, bride over, 324, 327; across, 335, awful, 334, to the, 315, wagons, 327
 Roman Catholic Church, ceased to belong, 248, dissented with, 356, exactly as, 247, Luther defied, 246, not satisfied, 245, pope heads the, 185
 Roman-s, architecture, 163, army, 170, Catholic, 161, Christian, 161, circus, 163, citadel, 119, city, 113, citizenship, 133, 140, 146, civilization, 152, 164, culture, 143, 148, deprived, 160, dictionary, 303, empire, 165, 167, 169, 170, era, 81, example, 117, forts, 188, frontier, 166, galley, 135, 158, government, 153, head masters, 147, hands, 200, helped by allies, 139, highway, 184, home, 168, king, 155, in England, 160, last king, 113, laws, 115, 142, 155, leave England, 210, legions, 141, 167, liberty, 157, orator, 142, Pantheon, 143, pi-

- rates, 150, province, 139, 142,
 razed, 140, religion, 165, Rienzi,
 219, roads, 164, rule, 133, 150, 172,
 sacrifice, 114, slave markets, 174,
 soldier, 136, title, 159, tragedies,
 191, triumphs, 148, 149, world,
 151, year, 156, youth, 144
 Rome, Alfred visits, 186, alliance
 of, 142, branching from, 145,
 Caesar, 154, capital, 165, 356,
 church, 185, city, 113, conquer-
 ing, 113, crowned, 176, due to,
 117, education, 163, enter, 119,
 founding of, 80, 82, hated, 136,
 holiest, 199, in, 161, in common,
 157, obelisk, 71, Octavius, 158,
 patricians, 148, pope, 220, repub-
 lic, 154, ruled by, 144, splendor,
 160, spirit, 148, strangers to, 143,
 to, 166, triumph, 148, trouble
 upon, 147
 Rome and Macedonia, 113-134
 Romulus, founder of Rome, 81, 82,
 113
 Roosevelt, Theodore, President,
 26th, 365, travels, 367
 Rosetta Stone, 3 inscriptions, 32
 Ross, Betsy, flag maker, 294, 297
 Round Table, King Arthur's, 168
 Rubicon, crossing the, 153, 154
 Runic, Icelandic writing, 192
 Russia-ns, Alaska from, 352, bar-
 barians in, 117, force against, 371,
 helped, 370, in, 271, invaded, 220,
 Ivan master of, 224-225, kingdom,
 277, opposes Napoleon, 318, revo-
 lution, 373, seize, 185, settle, 166
 Tartars, 214, war with, 338, 366
 Russian Christians, army, 317, civil-
 ized, 271, converts, 199, immi-
 grants, 367, in check, 277
 Russo-Japanese War, 366, debt, 368
- S
- Sagas, Northern tales, 170, 192
 Samuel, a prophet in Palestine, 60
 Sandwich Islands, Hawaiian, 364
 Santiago Harbor, Cuba, battle, 363,
 364
 Scandinavian Peninsula, Norway
 and Sweden, 365
- Saint Augustine, 174, converted the
 English, 250, 253
 Saint Lawrence River, 244
 Saint Peter's Church, Rome, 176
 Salamis, battle in Greece, 100
 Santa Fé, New Mexico, 2d city, 251,
 253
 San Salvador, Columbus' landing
 place, 231
 Saracens, at bay, 202, of Spain, 178,
 out of Sardinia, 194
 Saratoga, battle and surrender, 296
 Sardinia Island, 194
 Sardinian force, Crimean War, 338
 Sardis, in Lydia, Asia Minor, burned,
 97, city, 93, road, 129
 Saul, king of Palestine, 78
 Savannah, Georgia, 273, 298
 Saviour of his country, 147
 Saxons, in England, arrival, 174,
 come, 167, compelled, 175, de-
 velop, 189, died, 195, Egbert, 186,
 great, 188, killed, 193, ruled by,
 168, sway, 187, under, 196, 197
 Scotch-men, colonies, 273, 336, debt,
 213, few, 365, history, 210, pil-
 grims, 199, rebellions, 256
 Scotland, boundary, 210, conquered,
 213, flee from, 256, king of, 260
 Scots, barbarians, 164, 210, inde-
 pendent, 213, queen, 256
 Scythians, 122, conquered, 124
 Second Continental Congress, 289,
 292, 293
 Senate, Greek, 92, Roman in Cham-
 ber, 156, in, 113, tributes at door
 of, 115, United States, 304
 Senator, 115, U.S., 304
 Separatists, Puritans, 264
 Serbia, king, 179, murder, 370,
 worst, 371
 Servian heroism, 220
 Seville, city in Spain, Columbus
 buried at, 239
 Seven Wonders of the World, 51, 53,
 85, 103, 123-124, 126, 131, 132,
 145
 Shepherd kings, 57, drive, 58, people,
 22
 Sherman, General, Civil War, 348
 Siberia, North of Asia, 271
 Sicilians rebelled, 206

- Sicily, crossed into, 172, debt to, 139, father reached, 46, food in, 135, France in, 206, in, 197, nearest, 80, Normans in, 194, reached, 74, Syracuse in, 77, 109, Vandalism in, 169
- Sidon, town in Phoenicia, 39, Alexander takes, 126
- Silesia, province north of Austria, 282
- Slave-ry, American continent, 263, ended, 339, negro in West Indies, 240, question of, 338, Roman, 147, West Indian, 234
- Slavs, population of Central Europe, 166
- Slovaks, population of Central Europe, 367
- Smith, Joseph, Mormon, found book, 328, killed, 329
- Sobieski, hero at Vienna, 271
- Socrates, death of, 111, 112, tutor of Alcibiades, 109, spoken of, 159
- Sodom, destroyed city, 55
- Solomon, king of Israel, 78, 79, 80, temple, 85
- Solon, about Atlantis in Egypt, 94, ancient world, 106, Athenian law-giver, 92, quotes, 159, with Croesus and Esop, 94
- Song of Roland, epic of France, 178, 179
- South-ern America, 325, coast, 243, colonies, 274, in the, 301, negroes, 353, rubber, 330, sail around, 244, shores, 238, South, 323, 339, 340, 343, 345, Southern, 323, 343, 344, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351
- Spanish Culture, 244
- Southern Europeans, 224, 365, Gaul, 151
- Southern Italy, colonies, 77, 78, Greek temples, 146
- Spain, anxious, 238, back, 233, barbarian, 166, behalf, 240, bought, 324, Carthaginians, 139, coast, 142, conquered, 136, 172, converts, 164, copper, 37, desire, 234, enter, 172, fought, 318, 331, freed from, 248, Gibraltar, 277, gives, 283, 364, goes to, 229, 230, king of, 231, independence of, 363, in wealth, 236, Moors, 178, national hero, 202, no land, 323, part of, 175, planned, 365, Pompey, 148, powerless, 257, 323, reached, 239, riches, 242, Roman in, 153, treatment of, 143, war with, 254, wealth, 244, work, 248
- Spanish, Armada, 257, 258, colonies, 239, discoveries, 243, enter, 274, epic, 202, flag, 231, forces, 264, galleons, 256, missions, 336, peninsula, 178, priests, 333, Saint James, 199, ships, 254, 363, slave market, 234, warriors, 243, women, 140, yoke, 323
- Spanish-American War, 362, 363, 364
- Spaniard-s, by, 323, colonists, 274, Cortez, 242, discovered, 240, epic, 202, free, 248, friends, 140, murdered, 250, Pizarro a, 243, rebel, 139, ruled, 257, taunted, 239, trinkets, 234
- Sparta, example of, 111, except, 98, five principal, 65, glory of, 109, jealousy of, 108, 2 kings, 142, Syracuse colony of, 66
- Spartacus, northern slave, 147, 148
- Spartan-s, Alcibiades with the, 109, answer, 98, athletes, 68, died, 100, joined, 110, punish, 97, training, 66, treaty, 111, warriors, 100
- Spice Islands, Magellan's lieutenant, 241, spices, 228, 234, 236, trade with the, 248
- Stamp Act, 285, Civil Service, 359
- Stanley, seeks and finds Livingstone, 356, 357, 358
- Stark, General at Bennington, 249
- Star Spangled Banner, Key's song, 321
- States General, France, 307-308
- Steuben, Prussian General, trained, 295
- Stone age, 90, 312, blocks, 35, 44, tools, 9
- Stony Point, battle, 296
- Strait of Magellan, 241, 254
- Stuart, king, 270, 272
- Suez, canal, 365, pay, 366, Isthmus of, 29
- Sulla, Roman general, 147

Sullivan, General, 296
 Sumter, Fort, 344, 349
 Supreme Court, U.S.A., 305
 Sweden, independent, 202, prosperous, 218, 220, tribes in, 118
 Swedish, colony, 270, 272, 273
 Swiss, colonies, 273, inventor, 362, murder Gessler, 209, obey, 208, reformer, 246
 Switzerland, all, 175, Geneva in, 247, Huguenots in, 275, immigrants, 365, independent, 207, 208, 209, leave, 151, through, 146
 Sybaris, S. Italy, city of, 77
 Syracuse, Sicily, attack, 109, debt, 139, founded, 77
 Syria, Asia Minor, conquered, 172, fertile, 32, Timur in, 220

T

Tarrytown, on Hudson, 298
 Taft, 27th President, 367
 Taurus Mountains, Asia Minor, 24, 57
 Sepulchre, 202, my Father's House, 159
 Texas, 276, independent, 330
 Thebans, 120, declare war, 122
 Thebes, 63, razed, 124, supremacy, 111, victory over, 123
 Themistocles, rebuilds Athens, 101, Salamis, 100
 Thermopylae, battle of Leonidas, 100
 Thesus, hero of Cretan adventure, 46, 65
 Third Estate, France, 308
 Thirteen Colonies, 258, 277, 287, 292, 294, 295, 304, 307, 324, Georgia, 273, 278
 Thirty Tyrants, Athens, 110, 111
 Thirty Years' War, Germany, 271
 Thrace, in S. Europe, 97
 Tiber, River, 82, cross the, 113, Horatius, 114
 Tiberius, emperor of Rome, 159
 Ticonderoga, Fort, 289, 290, 292
 Tigris River, length of, 24, northern, 220, on the, 41
 Tigris-Euphrates Rivers, 24, mouth of, 128, 129, valley, 45, 110

Timur, Asian conqueror, 220
 Titus, emperor of Rome, 161
 Tlemcen, capital N. Africa, 202
 Tories, king's adherents, 304
 Tours, battle in France, 172
 Trajan, Roman Emperor, 163
 Treaty, of Ghent, 321, Paris, 283, 302, 364, Versailles, 374
 Trenton, battle of, 293
 Tribunes, Roman magistrates, 115, 149, 219
 Trinidad Island, 236
 Triumvirate, 1st, 150, 151, 2d, 157
 Trojan War, 72, before, 94, prince, 81
 Troy, city in Asia Minor, 73, 74, 81, Alexander at, 125
 Truce of God, 197, 198
 Turkey, in Europe and Asia, 232, robbed, 367
 Turks, bomb in Parthenon, 271, fight, 201, 202, 338, held, 200, masters of, 224, 228, 272, pull down, 52, strong, 198, take Constantinople, 223, try, 220
 Tu-tan-kha-men's, tomb, 53
 Tutuila, Island in Pacific, 364
 Tyler, 10th President, 126
 Tyrants, governors, 77, 142
 Tyre, 38, 39, 80, 85, 126, 202

U

Ulysses, hero of Odyssey, 73, 74
 Underground Railroad, slaves in, 338
 Union, a Star, 205, Confederate, 345, in our, 356, joined the, 360, leave, 330, 343, saved from, 250, slave or free, 339, south in, 352-353, Texas, 330, troops, 350, uphold the, 345, 346, 348
 United States, arsenal, 339, birthday, 293, claim, 315, concerned, 362, Congress, 212, Constitution, 304, cost, 321, country, 243, end of slavery, 346, flag, 348, founded by 253, Germans to, 370, government, 305, guard, 367, help, 310, 363, history, 41, 345, inhabitants, 354, Lafayette revisits, 324, like, 308, limits of, 274, loyalty, 350,

Louisiana, 315, made, 307, nation, 320, obelisk, 71, president, 340, 374, religion, 328, seizure, 327, states of the, 344, war, 373
 United we Stand, 280
 University, of Alexandria, 130, 133; of Greece, 144; of Glasgow, 18; of Pennsylvania, 280
 Utah, 56, 329, 331

V

Valley Forge, Washington at, 295
 Van Buren, 8th President, 326
 Vasco da Gama, Portuguese, 88, 238
 Venetian, from Venice, 227, 228, the Parthenon, 271
 Venezuela, South America, arbitrate, 362, lake dwellers, 17, visits, 236
 Venice, Italy, Aldus at, 224, city, 194, crusade, 204, doge, 214, founded, 179, home to, 227, little, 236, vikings visit, 178
 Vercingetorix, French hero, 152
 Verdun Pass, 66
 Versailles, museum and palace near Paris, 275, 304, treaty, 356
 Vice President, Adams, 305, Coolidge, 374, four years, 304, plan to murder, 350, Tyler, 326
 Victoria, Queen of England, 327, 365
 Victoria Nyanza, lake in Africa, 357
 Victorian Age, 365
 Vienna, capital of Austria, 188, 271, 317
 Viking, dragons and snails, 195, pirates, 178, reach, 192
 Virginia, bays in, 273, claim of, 279, colonies, 274, Cornwallis at, 302, discover, 273, in, 269, 284, John Brown in, 339, not in, 264, slaves in, 258, 263
 Virginians, colonies, 272, cross Alleghanies, 277, freedom, 262, good, 351, raised, 279
 Visigoths, barbarians settle in Gaul, 166

W

Wales, Britons driven to, 168, first prince of, 213

War of 1812, 321, 322
 War of Roses, 222
 Warburg Castle, Luther kept there, 247
 Washington, George, 1st President, army, 292, Arnold, 298, cabinet, 306, caution, 281, Constitution, 304, death, 313, disapproved, 310, drove British, 291, exchange André, 300, flag, 294, General-in-chief, 289, Jonathan, 321, laid corner-stone, 311, letter to French, 279, life of, 278-313, Monmouth battle, 296, New Jersey, 293, president, 305, sons of Cincinnatus, 117, 303, surrender of Cornwallis, 302, train army, 282, Valley Forge, 295, youth, 278
 Washington, Martha, 313
 Washington D.C., named, 311, rebuilt, 322, reviewed, 350, successor, 312, telegraph, 330
 Waterloo, battle where Napoleon was conquered, 318, 321
 Wayne, General, 296, 307
 Webster, Daniel, orator, 323, 324, 325, 331, Noah, dictionary, 329
 West, African, 232, Indian, 239, 240, 252, Indies, 240, 267, 274, Japanese, 366, lore of the, 165, sailing, 229, to East India, 317
 Western Asia, conquer, 198, culture of, 129, masters of, 95, ruling, 97, Turks in, 228
 Western Europe, benefits, 206, Charlemagne rules, 176, Christians, 185, demand for space, 228, end of, 165, extend, 153, Huns, 168, language, 184, 185, sack of Athens, 224
 Western Hemisphere, 17, 360
 Western Roman Empire, 142, 169, 176, 177
 Westminster Abbey, 195, 196
 West Point, on Hudson, 296, 298, south, 345
 White House, Washington, D.C., 312, 321, 326
 Whitney, Eli, cotton-gin, 311
 Williams, Roger, founder of Rhode Island, 267, 268
 William II of Germany, 369

William and Mary University, 272
 William of Normandy, 195
 Whittington, Richard, 219, 220
 Wilson, 28th President, 367, war,
 373, 374
 Wyclif, preaching reform, 252,
 reformer, 246

X

Xerxes, crossed the Hellespont, 100,
 Esther and, 99, improved, 101,
 "remember the Athenians," 98
 X-rays, Roentgen, discovered, 362,
 364

Y

York, Duke of, takes New Amster-
 dam, 270
 Yorktown, Cornwallis surrenders,
 302, Fair, Centennial, 359
 Young, Brigham, Mormon leader,
 329

Z

Zama, battle of Hannibal, 139
 Zambesi River, 357
 Zoroaster, Persian, 90, 91
 Zwingli, Swiss reformer, 246

